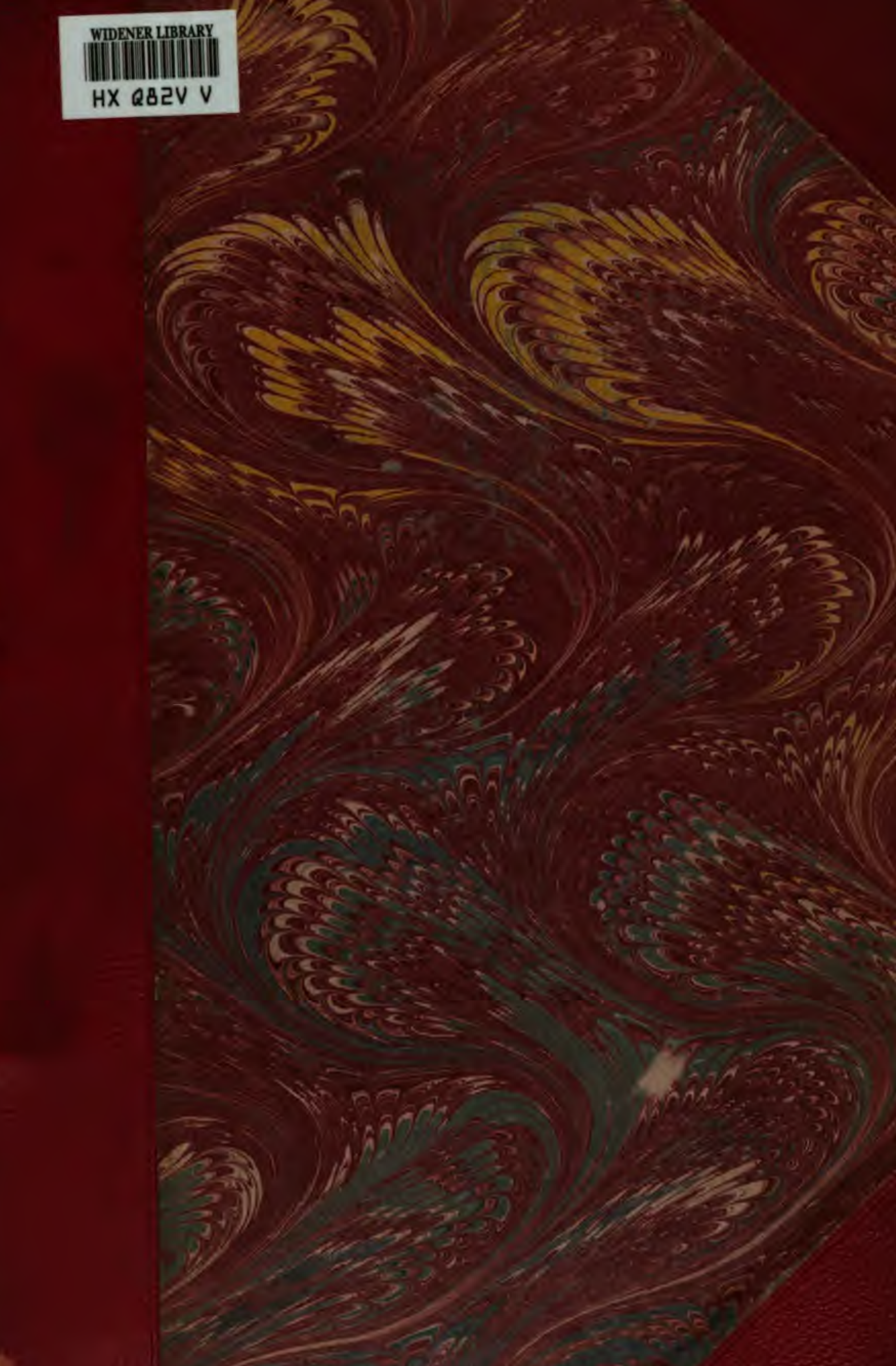

WIDENER LIBRARY
HX Q82V V


SIGILLVM ACADEMIAE HARVARDIANAE IN NOV ANG
CHRISTO ET ECCLESIAE
VE RI TAS

Cird B. p. 1.

THE

KANSAS UNIVERSITY

QUARTERLY.

DEVOTED TO THE PUBLICATION OF THE RESULTS OF RESEARCH
BY MEMBERS OF THE UNIVERSITY OF KANSAS.

VOL. VII.

January to December, 1898.

PUBLISHED BY THE UNIVERSITY
LAWRENCE, KANSAS
1898.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

INDEX.

A

B

C

I

K

L

M

N

O

P

R

S

T

U

W

X

Z

Vol. VII. JANUARY, 1898. No. 1.

THE KANSAS UNIVERSITY QUARTERLY.

SERIES A:—SCIENCE AND MATHEMATICS.

CONTENTS.

PUBLISHED BY THE UNIVERSITY

Lawrence, Kansas.

Price of this number, 50 cents.

Entered at the Post-Office in Lawrence as Second-class Matter.

ADVERTISEMENT.

THE KANSAS UNIVERSITY QUARTERLY is maintained by the University of Kansas as a medium for the publication of the results of original research by members of the University. Papers will be published only on recommendation of the Committee of Publication. Contributed articles should be in the hands of the Committee at least one month prior to the date of publication. A limited number of author's *separata* will be furnished free to contributors.

Beginning with Vol. VI the QUARTERLY will appear in two Series: A, Science and Mathematics; B, Philology and History.

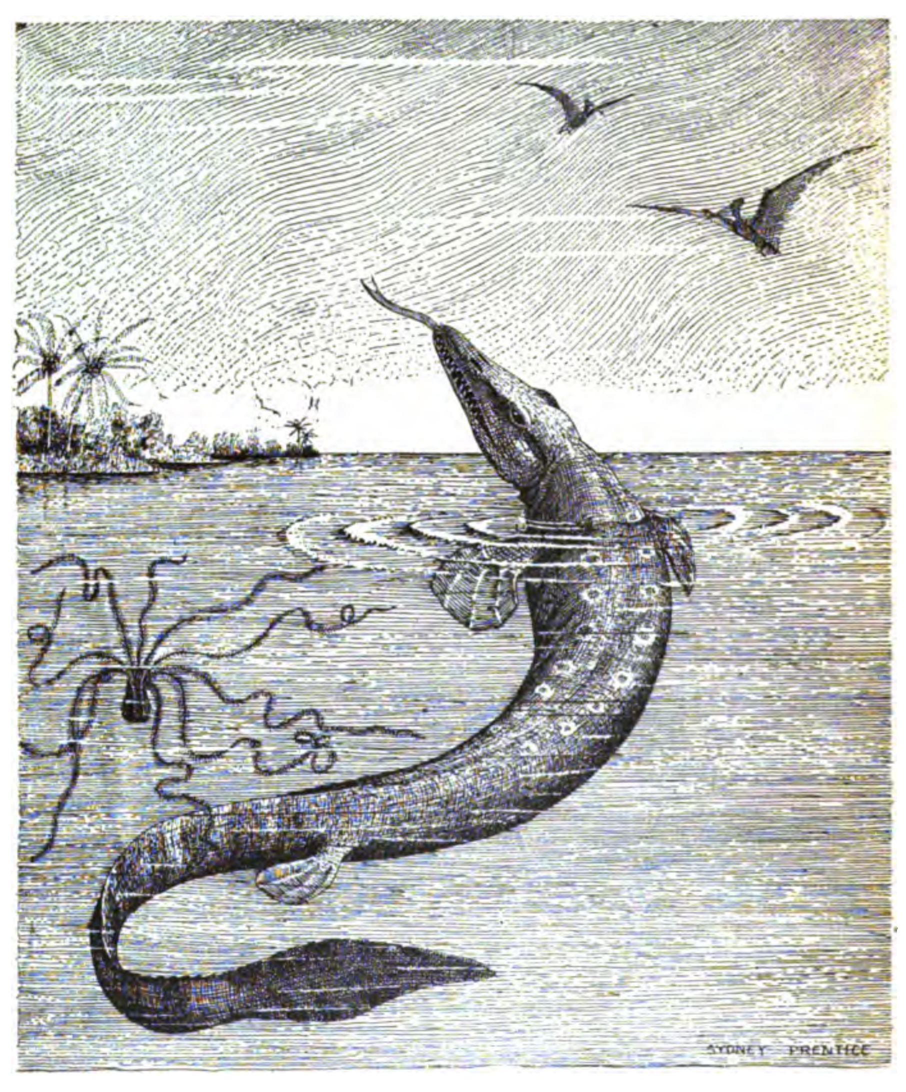
The QUARTERLY is issued regularly, as indicated by its title. Each number contains one hundred or more pages of reading matter, with necessary illustrations. The four numbers of each year constitute a volume. The price of subscription is two dollars a volume, single numbers varying in price with cost of publication Exchanges are solicited.

Communications should be addressed to

W. H. CARRUTH,
University of Kansas,
Lawrence.

This Journal is on file in the office of the *University Review*, New York City

JOURNAL PUBLISHING COMPANY
LAWRENCE, KANSAS



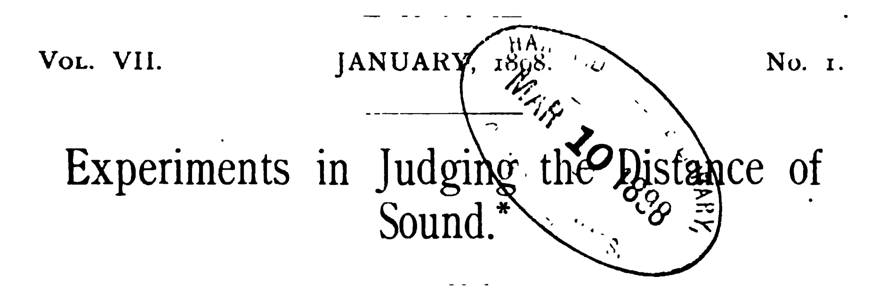
Uintacrinus. **Clidastes.** **Ornithostoma.**

RESTORATION OF KANSAS CRETACEOUS ANIMALS.

Drawn by Sydney Prentice, under the direction of S. W. Williston.

KANSAS UNIVERSITY QUARTERLY.

VOL. VII. JANUARY, 1898. No. 1.



Experiments in Judging the Distance of Sound.*

BY C. E. SHUTT.

The object of the experiments described in this paper was to determine how accurately the distance at which a sound is produced can be judged, and how much variation in judgment, if any, is caused by changing the position of the body relative to the direction from which the sound proceeds.

A chalk line fifty feet in length was drawn on the floor of a large room. This was marked off into distances of one foot. The person experimented upon sat blindfolded at one end of this line. In order to cover up the noise made by the movements of the person conducting the experiment, the subject kept striking the arm of the chair with a small block of wood, pausing at intervals to hear the sound whose distance he was to estimate.

The person performing the experiment moved back and forth along the line using a telegraph snapper and an A pitch pipe to make the sounds. No regular order was observed in selecting the distances for producing the sounds, nor was the subject aware of the distances at which his judgments were recorded. He was told, however, that no sound would be produced beyond fifty feet.

All subjects were tested in four positions. These were: (1) with the right side towards the sound; (2) with the left side towards the sound; (3) with the subject facing the sound; and (4) with the back towards the sound. Judgments were recorded every five feet. The telegraph snapper and pitch pipe were used with no

*Read before the Kansas Academy of Science at its annual session Oct. 29, 1897.

regular order of alternation until the record of judgments was complete in each case for both. Eighty readings were taken for each person, forty with each instrument used.

Twenty persons were tested. They were all students in the University of Kansas where the experiments were performed. Members of both sexes were included in the number.

In Table I are given the number of correct estimates, over-estimates and under-estimates made at each point in the line where judgments were recorded. The sum of each column is also expressed at the foot in terms of the percentage of all the readings taken in the position in which it stands.

Table I,

(a) Telegraph Snapper.

	Dis.	R.			L.			F.			B.			Av.		
	Ft.	C.	+		C.	+	−	C.	+	—	C.	+	−	C.	+	−
	5	8	12		6	12	2	1	17	2	4	14	2	4.0	13.7	1.5
	10	6	11	3	7	10	3	6	11	3	4	15	1	5.7	11.7	2.5
	15	8	8	4	3	12	5	2	15	3	6	12	2	4.7	11.7	3.5
	20	7	10	3	3	12	5	3	12	5	5	12	3	4.5	11.5	4.0
	25	4	8	8	7	7	6	3	12	5	5	12	3	4.7	9.7	5.4
	30	5	7	8	7	9	4	3	12	5	4	9	7	4.7	9.2	6.0
	35	3	9	8	3	8	9	6	8	6	2	10	8	3.5	8.7	10.2
	40	3	5	12	3	8	9	4	4	12	2	6	12	3.0	5.7	11.2
	45	4	4	12	4	6	10	5	4	11	4	2	14	4 2	4.0	11.7
	50	5		15	2		18	3		17	2		18	3 0		17.0
Total	....	53	74	73	45	84	81	36	95	69	38	92	70	42	85	73
Total in per ct.	...	26.5	37.0	36 5	22.5	42.0	40 5	18.0	47.5	34.5	19.	46.0	35.0	21.0	42.5	36.5

(b) Pitch Pipe.

Dis.	R.			L.			F.			B.			Av.			Gen. Av.		
Ft.	C.	+	—	C.	+	—	C.	+	−	C.	+	—	C.	+	—	C.	+	—
5	3	17	....	2	16	2	3	17	....	3	16	1	2.7	16.5	.7	3 3	15.1	1.1
10	1	18	1	2	17	1	1	18	1	2	17	1	1.5	17.5	1.0	3.6	14.6	1.7
15	3	15	2	3	14	3	....	19	1	....	19	1	1 5	14.2	1.7	3.1	12 9	2.6
20	2	17	1	....	17	3	1	18	1	4	15	1	1.7	16.7	1 5	3.1	14.1	2.7
25	3	14	3	3	14	3	1	18	1	2	15	3	2.5	15.2	2.5	3.6	12.4	3.9
30	5	11	4.	4	11	5	3	14	3	1	15	4	3.2	12.7	4.0	3.9	10.9	5.0
35	4	10	6	1	9	10	2	13	5	1	11	8	2.0	13.2	7.2	2.7	10.9	8.7
40	7	4	9	4	10	6	5	8	7	3	6	11	4 7	7.0	8 2	3.8	6.3	9.7
45	3	7	10	3	5	12	5	2	13	3	5	12	3.5	4.7	11.7	3.8	4 3	11.7
50	6		14	2	..	18	7	..	13	3	....	17	4.5	......	15.5	3 7	...	16.2
To.	37	113	50	24	113	63	28	127	45	22	119	59	27 8	117.7	54 0	34 6	101.5	63.3
PC.	18.5	56 5	25.0	12.0	56.5	31.5	14.0	63.5	22.5	11.0	59.5	29.5	13.9	58.8	27.0	17.3	50.7	31.6

The two parts of this table agree in their results. The distance was correctly judged the greatest number of times with the right side towards the sound, and under-estimated the oftenest with the left side in that position. The distance was over-estimated oftenest when the subject was sitting with his face towards the sound. The number of over-estimates exceeds that of both the correct

judgments and the under-estimates. In part (b) of the table it exceeds the sum of the other two, as it does also in the general average.

Table II shows the maximum and minimum errors made at each distance in the four positions.

TABLE II.

(a) Telegraph Snapper.

	Dis.	R.		L.		F.		B.		Av.	
	Ft.	+	—	+	—	+	—	+	—	+	—
	5	15	.....	11	1	10	1	13	1	12.2	.7
	10	15	3	10	3	12	4	10	2	11.7	3.0
	15	10	5	15	7	25	3	20	5	17.5	5.0
	20	15	5	15	10	15	10	15	5	15 0	7.5
	25	15	7	11	10	15	13	15	9	14.0	9.7
	30	15	12	25	10	20	16	13	10	15.7	12.0
	35	11	16	20	15	15	21	10	15	14 0	16.7
	40	8	20	18	17	10	23	10	22	11.5	20.5
	45	5	25	5	14	5	25	5	24	5.0	22.9
	50	......	30	......	26	......	29	...	20	.....	26.2
Total.		109	123	120	113	120	145	111	113	116 6	124.6

(b) Pitch Pipe.

	Dis.	R.		L.		F.		B.		Av.		Gen. Av.	
	Ft.	+	—	+	—	+	—	+	—	+	—	+	—
	5	23	...	40	2	35	..	45	..	35.7	.5	23.9	.6
	10	30	5	40	2	40	3	40	3	37.5	3.2	24 6	3.1
	15	30	10	35	7	35	7	35	5	33 7	7 2	25.6	6.1
	20	30	8	30	24	30	8	30	8	30.0	12.0	22.5	9.7
	25	25	5	20	13	20	10	25	13	22.5	10.2	18.2	9.9
	30	18	15	20	15	15	10	20	10	15.7	12.5	15.7	12.2
	35	15	20	15	10	10	15	15	15	13.7	15.0	13.8	15.8
	40	10	10	10	15	10	30	10	15	10.0	17.5	10.7	19.0
	45	10	30	5	20	5	15	5	25	6.2	22.5	5.6	22.2
	50	..	13	..	25	..	35	..	20	....	23 2	...	24 6
Total...........		191	116	215	133	200	133	225	114	205 0	123.5	160.6	123.2

In (a) the sum of the maximum errors is the same with the left side and the face towards the sound, and is greater in those positions than in the other two. The sum of the minimum errors is the greatest with the face towards the sound. In part (b) of the table the sum of the maximum errors is the greatest with the back towards the sound, and that of the minimum errors is the same and greatest when the left side and face were turned towards it. The sum of the averages of the maximum errors is greater in (b) than in (a). The sum of maximum errors exceeds that of the minimum errors in the general average.

The next table contains the sum of the judgments of each sub-

ject in the four positions. In the first column of figures is given the sum of the distances at which records were made.

TABLE III.

(a) Telegraph Snapper.

	Dis.	R.	L.	F.	B.	Av.
A	275	188	178	166	153	171.2
B	275	223	191	248	233	2[illegible]3.7
C	275	33[illegible]	295	348	345	331.2
D	275	296	234	252	278	265.0
E	275	302	224	308	2[illegible]5	302.2
F	275	360	330	281	328	324.7
G	275	253	273	387	242	288.7
H	275	216	287	280	266	262.2
I	275	295	295	285	305	295.0
J	275	272	311	318	324	306.2
K	275	283	261	320	280	286.0
L	275	266	320	286	280	2[illegible]5.5
M.	275	270	302	300	352	306.0
N .. .	275	265	291	285	290	282.7
O	275	295	258	294	281	282.0
P	275	349	295	209	309	290.5
Q	275	285	240	283	255	26[illegible].2
R	275	147	331	260	294	2[illegible]3.0
S ...	275	256	202	225	249	233.0
T	275	292	203	210	25[illegible]	242.3

(b) Pitch Pipe.

	Dis.	R.	L.	F.	B.	Av.	Gen. Av.
A	275	229	200	289	244	240.5	205.8
B	275	311	339	342	325	329.2	281.4
C	275	435	430	430	450	436.2	383.7
D	275	303	271	222	225	255.2	260.6
E	275	309	319	320	2[illegible]3	310.2	306.2
F	275	343	275	265	355	309.5	317.1
G ...	275	292	308	265	286	287.7	288.2
H	275	270	392	335	263	290.0	276.1
I	275	340	340	36[illegible]	290	332.5	313.7
J.	275	330	377	347	356	352.5	329.3
K . ..	275	230	370	327	286	303.2	294.6
L	275	398	490	445	519	463.0	374.2
M	275	281	295	344	334	313.2	319.6
N	275	331	365	328	311	333.7	308.2
O	276	215	190	164	220	197.2	239.1
P .	275	378	240	358	336	328.9	309.2
Q	275	295	315	358	[illegible]95	315.7	291.9
R	275	261	332	345	311	312.2	297.6
S	275	305	295	287	342	3[illegible]7.2	270.1
T	275	327	336	300	250	303.2	272.7

From this table we deduce the following, which shows the number of subjects who gave respectively correct estimates, over-estimates and under-estimates:

	R.			L.			F.			B.			Total.		
	C.	+	—	C.	+	—	C.	+	—	C.	+	—	C.	+	—
(a) Tel. Snapper...		10	10		11	9		14	6	1	12	7	1	47	32
(b) Pitch Pipe......		15	5	1	15	4		16	4		15	5	1	61	18

Two subjects – C and J—made a complete record of over-estimates. The two correct averages were made by different persons. Subject A made a record of under-estimates in (a), but made an over-estimate in (b). Subject F made no under-estimates, but made a correct average in (b). The number of persons making over-estimates was the greatest when sitting with the face toward the sound. The number making under-estimates was the greatest when the right side was toward the sound. The latter position also favored the equal division between those making under-estimates and over-estimates. The number who over-estimated the distance was greater in every position in (b) than in the corresponding positions in (a). In general the number who made over-estimates was much greater than that of those who made under-estimates.

The averages of the estimated distances are given in the following table:

TABLE IV.

	(a) Telegraph Snapper.						(b) Pitch Pipe.						
	Dis.	R.	L.	F.	B.	Av.	Dis.	R.	L.	F.	B.	Av.	Gen. Av.
	5	7.7	8.8	8.3	5.4	7.4	5	11.8	14.1	15 3	14 6	13.9	10.6
	10	13 3	12.2	18.5	14.6	13.4	10	20.3	22.6	22.7	21.0	21.6	17.5
	15	16.4	17.9	18.8	20 0	18.2	15	36.5	26.3	29.3	27.8	27.4	22.8
	20	22.8	21.8	22.0	23.9	22 6	20	30.5	29 9	30.7	29.7	30.2	26 4
	25	21.6	25.8	26.8	29 1	25.8	25	32.0	30.4	31.9	31.0	31 4	28.6
	30	27.5	30.1	32.0	31.1	30.1	30	33.0	34 5	33.9	34.6	34 0	32.0
	35	35.9	34.8	34.7	35.6	3 .2	35	37.7	36 2	37.3	37 6	37 2	36.2
	40	38.7	37.7	38.0	37.3	37 4	40	35 8	40 4	37.1	39.4	38.1	37.7
	45	41.2	40.4	40.3	40.2	40.5	45	41.3	39.7	41 6	41.0	40 9	40.7
	50	42.0	42.1	41 7	42.3	42.0	50	42 8	42 0	42 6	40.0	41.8	41.9
Total....	275	271.1	271.1	274.1	279.5	272.6	275	311.7	316.1	322.4	316.7	316.5	294.4

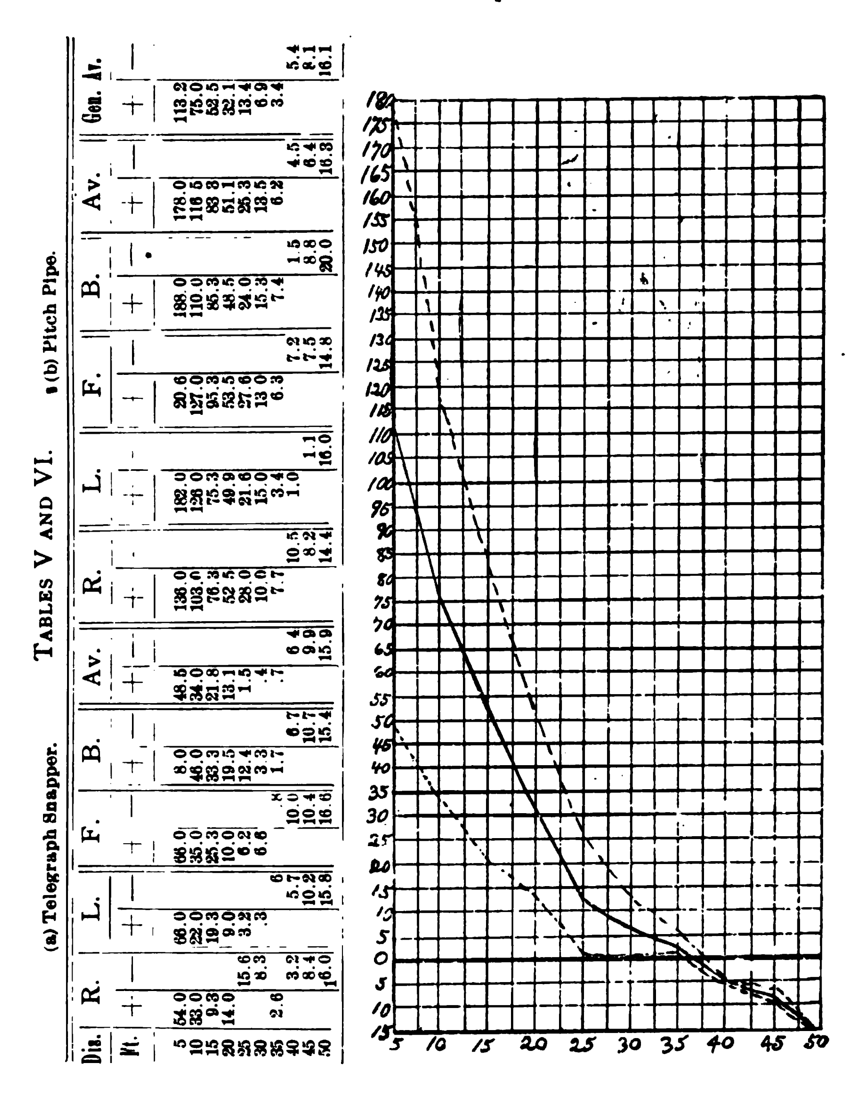
The sums of the averages in (a) are all fairly accurate, while those in (b) are much too large. The most favorable position in (a) for judging the distance was with the face toward the sound. In (b) the results obtained with the right side in that position are the nearest correct. The most unfavorable position in (a) was with the back toward the sound, and in (b) with the face toward it.

Table V gives the average errors stated in percentages of the distances at which the sounds were produced.

TABLES V AND VI.

(a) Telegraph Snapper. (b) Pitch Pipe.

Dis.	(a) R.		L.		F.		B.		Av.		(b) R.		L.		F.		B.		Av.		Gen. Av.	
Ft.	+	—	+	—	+	—	+	—	+	—	+	—	+	—	+	—	+	—	+	—	+	—
5	54.0		66.0		66.0		8.0		48.5		136.0		182.0		20.6		188.0		178.0		113.2	
10	33.0		22.0		35.0		46.0		34.0		103.0		126 0		127.0		110.0		116 5		75.0	
15	9.3		19.3		25.3		33.3		21.8		76.3		75.3		95.3		85.3		83 3		52.5	
20	14.0		9.0		10.0		19.5		13.1		52 5		49.9		53.5		48.5		51.1		32.1	
25		15.6	3.2		6.2		12.4		1.5		28.0		21.6		27.6		24.0		25.3		13.4	
30		8.3	.3		6.6		3.3		.4		10.0		15.0		13 0		15.3		13.5		6.9	
35	2.6			6		.8	1.7		.7		7.7		3.4		6.3		7.4		6.2		3.4	
40		3.2		5.7		10.0		6.7		6 4		10.5	1.0			7.2		1.5		4.5		5.4
45		8.4		10.2		10.4		10.7		9.9		8.2		1.1		7.5		8.8		6.4		8.1
50		16.0		15.8		16.6		15.4		15.9		14.4		16.0		14.8		20.0		16.3		16.1



There is a tendency in both (a) and (b) toward overestimation within thirty-five feet. Beyond that distance the opposite tendency prevails.

These facts are shown to better advantage in the direction of the following curves. The dotted line represents the average in (a), the broken line that in (b), and the unbroken line the general average. The figures on the left side above the line marked zero, represent percentages of overestimation, and those below it, per-

centages of underestimation. The figures at the bottom represent distances, at which judgments were recorded.

1. The distance of a sharp noise can be more accurately estimated than that of a smooth tune.

2. Judgment is the most accurate with the right side toward the sound and most inaccurate with the face toward it.

3. The tendency is to overestimate the distance of both a sharp noise and a smooth tone within thirty-five feet. Beyond that distance there is a tendency toward under-estimating.

4. Within thirty-five feet the tendency to overestimate the distance of a smooth tone is greater than it is to overestimate that of a sharp noise within the same distance.

Experiments in Judging the Direction of Sound.*

BY L. D. IKENBERRY AND C. E. SHUTT.

The experiments herein described were made for the purpose of determining the accuracy with which the direction of a sound can be determined.

A circle ten feet in diameter was drawn on the floor of a large room. From one end of a diameter marked zero, the right and left semi-circumferences of the circle were marked off into fifty equal parts. The subject was seated in the center of the circle facing the zero point. Besides being blindfolded, his head was bound to a support on the back of the chair in order to keep him from turning it during the experiments. Sounds were produced directly over certain points in the circle on a level with the subject's head. Immediately after the production of each sound the subject named the point in the circle over which he judged it to be located. No regular order was observed in selecting the points for producing the sounds.

The instruments used in making the sounds were a telegraph snapper and a common harmonicon. The telegraph snapper was used to make a sharp, piercing noise and the harmonicon to produce a smooth tone. Two sets of readings were taken with each instrument. In the first set both ears were open, but in the second his left ear was effectually closed.

Efficient means were employed whereby the subjects were made wholly dependent upon the sound itself in locating it. Ten persons were tested. Both sexes were included in the number.

In table I are given the judgments. The figures at the head of the columns indicate the points in their respective semi-circles over which the sounds were made. The other figures show where the subjects thought they were located. The letters on the first column represent the subjects. At the foot of each column are

*Read before the Kansas Academy of Science, at its annual session, Oct. 20, 1897.

given the average of the judgments, and the average error. Figures marked with a star were located in the wrong semi-circle.

TABLE I.

(a) Harmonicon.

BOTH EARS OPEN.

	Right. 8	Right. 15	Right. 25	Right. 35	Right. 42	Left. 8	Left. 15	Left. 25	Left. 35	Left. 42
A	15	24	23	27	23	12	17	25	36	39
B	18	22	30	40	48	15	10	30	35	45
C	16	25	25	42	30	10	25	30	33	40
D	12	20	32	38	35	10	25	30	20	45
E	18	21	24	28	35	8	20	25	37	40
F	20	19	28	27	35	11	25	25	37	44
G	12.5	20	13	40	45	5	25	25	33	45
H	12.5	23	25	37.5	30	12.5	15	30	32.5	37.5
I	15	18	20	20	35	15	15	25	30	40
J	17	21	20	28	34	5	13	12	40	50
Average	15.6	21.8	24	32.75	34.2	9.4	19	25.7	33.35	42.55
Too small	.....	.....	1	2.25	7.8	.....	.....	.....	1.65	.55
Too large	7.6	6.3	.....	.....	.....	1.4	4	.7	.....	

LEFT EAR CLOSED.

	Right. 8	Right. 15	Right. 25	Right. 35	Right. 42	Left. 8	Left. 15	Left. 25	Left. 35	Left. 42
A	25	19	19	25	19	14	33	30	36	46
B	17	15	23	20	40	10	12	30	40	50
C	25	45	32	30	26	30	17	14	34	42
D	20	15	20	37	37	*40	15	45	25	*20
E	25	20	4	2	* 2	3	35	35	40	*30
F	45	19	30	32	32	32	40	50	35	37
G	12.5	12.5	50	25	40	45	35	*45	50	45
H	35	12.5	25	37.5	25	10	30	17.5	37.5	25
I	25	20	23	35	25	5	25	25	25	0
J	20	25	25	25	18	3	35	37.5	0	0
Average	24.9	20.3	25.1	26.8	36.7	22.2	28.7	35.4	32.3	39.5
Too small	.....	.....	.....	8.2	5.3	.....	.....	.....	2.7	2.5
Too large	6.9	5.3	.1	.....	.....	14.2	18.7	10.4		

(b) Telegraph Snapper.

BOTH EARS OPEN.

	Right. 8	Right. 15	Right. 25	Right. 35	Right. 42	Left. 8	Left. 15	Left. 25	Left. 35	Left. 42
A	18	16	22	22	30	18	23	26	30	42
B	18	22	30	30	45	15	28	27	35	40
C	12	36	24	30	46	6	17	18	30	43
D	10	20	30	37	40	35	20	35	40	40
E	13	20	19	30	38	8	18	17	33	35
F	15	20	26	40	30	18	20	20	33	40
G	12.5	20	18	30	45	13	20	20	35	40
H	12.5	20	25	37.5	40	12.5	25	25	32.5	48
I	12	15	25	35	40	15	30	30	30	40
J	9	15	23	12	10	5	20	37	48	41
Average	13.2	20.4	24.2	30.3	36.4	14.1	22.1	26.5	35.2	40.9
Too small	.....	.....	.8	4.7	5.6	.	.....	.....	.....	1.1
Too large	5.2	5.4	.....	.....	.	6.1	7.1	1.5	.2	

LEFT EAR CLOSED.										
	RIGHT.					LEFT.				
	8	15	25	35	42	8	15	25	35	42
A	13	15	22	24	44	15	28	12	13	16
B..........	30	*30	27	20	30	50	10	30	35	45
C	15	10	20	20	42	2	10	17	8	43
D....	10	25	35	38	40	50	15	30	30	48
E...	21	24	18	33	45	3	32	18	40	13
F.....	25	25	25	28	25	0	8	20	22	20
G.	48	20	20	12.5	20	45	33	38	35	25
H....... ...	12.5	37.5	23	25	12.5	0	12 5	37.5	37.5	50
I	35	30	20	25	35	20	25	30	35	35
J	10	11	21	24	21	2	5	25	37	0
Average...	21.9	21.4	23.3	24.9	31.4	18.7	17.7	29.8	28.3	28.5
Too small.	.....	.....	1.7	11.1	10.5	......	......	......	6.7	13.5
Too large.	13.9	6.4	......	.....	.....	10 7	2.7	4.8		

The averages at points 8 and 15 on the right side were all too large, while the same is true of the points 8, 15 and 25 on the left side.

The following table shows the number of correct judgments, as well as the erroneous ones made by each subject. c, b. and f at the head of the columns stand respectively for correct judgments, those too far back, and those too far in front.

TABLE II.

	HARMONICON.												TELEGRAPH SNAPPER.												TOTAL.		
	Both ears open.						Left ear closed.						Both ears open.						Left ear closed.								
	R.			L.			R.			L.			R.			L.			R.			L.					
	c	b	f	c	b	f	c	b	f	c	b	f	c	b	f	c	b	f	c	b	f	c	b	f	c	b	f
A..	..	2	3	1	3	1	..	2	3	..	5	..	..	2	3	1	3	1	1	2	2	..	2	3	3	21	16
B..	..	5	..	1	3	1	1	1	3	..	4	1	..	4	1	1	3	1	..	3	2	1	3	1	4	26	10
C..	1	3	1	..	3	2	..	3	2	1	2	2	..	3	2	..	2	3	1	1	3	..	1	4	3	18	19
D..	..	4	1	..	4	1	1	2	2	1	2	2	..	4	1	..	4	1	..	4	1	1	3	1	3	27	10
E..	..	2	3	2	2	1	..	2	3	..	3	2	..	2	3	1	1	3	..	3	2	..	2	3	3	17	20
F..	..	3	2	1	4	..	..	3	2	1	3	1	..	4	1	..	3	2	1	2	2	..	..	5	3	22	15
G..	..	4	1	1	2	2	..	2	3	..	5	..	..	3	2	1	2	2	..	2	3	1	3	1	3	23	14
H..	1	3	1	1	2	2	1	2	2	..	3	2	1	3	1	1	3	1	..	2	3	..	3	2	5	21	14
I...	..	2	3	2	1	2	1	2	2	1	1	3	3	1	1	..	3	2	..	2	3	1	3	1	8	15	17
J...	..	2	3	..	2	3	1	2	2	..	2	3	1	2	3	..	3	2	..	1	4	1	1	3	3	15	23

Six subjects—A, B, D, F, G, and H, located the sounds too far back as a rule. Four—C, E, I, and J, had the opposite tendency.

Table III contains the number of correct judgments, those too far back, and those too far in front at each point where sounds were produced in each semi-circle.

TABLE III.

	HARMONICON.												TELEGRAPH SNAPPER.												TOTAL.		
	Both ears open.						Left ear closed.						Both ears open.						Left ear closed.								
	R.			L.			R.			L.			R.			L.			R.			L.					
Dis.	c	f	b	c	f	b	c	f	b	c	f	b	c	f	b	c	f	b	c	f	b	c	f	b	c	f	b
8	..	10	..	1	7	2	..	10	..	..	7	3	..	10	..	1	7	2	..	10	..	.	5	5	2	66	12
15	..	10	..	2	6	2	2	6	2	1	8	1	2	8	..	..	10	..	1	7	2	1	4	5	9	59	12
25	2	3	5	5	4	1	2	3	5	1	7	2	2	3	5	1	5	4	1	2	7	1	5	4	15	32	33
35	..	5	5	1	4	5	1	2	7	1	5	4	1	3	6	2	3	5		1	9	3	3	4	9	26	45
41	..	2	8	..	5	5	..	..	10	1	3	6	..	3	7	1	2	7	1	2	7	..	4	6	3	21	56
	2	30	18	9	26	15	5	21	24	4	30	16	5	27	18	5	27	18	3	22	25	5	21	24	38	204	158

The greatest number of correct judgments was made at the point 25, where the sound was at one side of the subject. The largest number of those too far back was made at point 8, and of those too far in front at 42. These points were respectively the greatest distances in front and behind the subject at which sounds were produced. The right side exceeds the left in the number of underestimates.

The totals in Table III may be managed as follows:

	Both ears open.						Left ear closed.						TOTAL.		
	R.			L.			R.			L.					
	c	f	b	c	f	b	c	f	b	c	f	b	c	f	b
Harmonicon..	2	30	18	9	26	15	5	21	24	4	30	16	20	107	73
Tel. Snapper..	5	27	18	5	27	18	3	22	25	5	21	24	18	97	85

The number of correct judgments and judgments locating the sounds too far back was larger when the harmonicon was used than when the sounds were made with the telegraph snapper. The number of judgments in which the sounds were located to far in front was greater with the use of the latter instrument.

Arranging the same figures differently we obtain the following result:

	HARMONICON.						TELEGRAPH SNAPPER.						TOTAL.		
	R.			L.			R.			L.					
	c	f	b	c	f	b	c	f	b	c	f	b	c	f	b
Both ears open...	2	30	18	9	26	15	5	27	18	5	27	18	21	110	69
Left ear closed ..	5	21	24	4	30	16	3	22	25	5	21	24	17	94	89

Correct judgments and judgments locating the sounds too far back were favored when the subjects used both ears. But the

number of judgments locating the sound too far in front was greater when one ear was closed than when both were open. In both cases, however, the tendency was to locate the sounds too far back.

By arranging the judgments recorded in front and back of point 25 we have this set of figures:

	Harmonicon.												Telegraph Snapper.												Total.		
	Both ears open.						Left ear closed.						Both ears open.						Left ear closed.								
	R.			L.			R.			L.			R.			L.			R.			L.					
	c	f	b	c	f	b	c	f	b	c	f	b	c	f	b	c	f	b	c	f	b	c	f	b	c	f	b
Front.	..	20	..	3	13	4	2	16	2	1	16	3	2	18	..	1	17	2	1	17	2	1	9	10	11	136	23
Rear..	...	7	13	1	9	10	1	2	17	2	8	10	1	6	13	3	5	12	1	8	16	8	7	10	12	47	101

The number of correct judgments was nearly the same in both positions. That of those locating the sound too far back was the larger when the experimenter was in front of the subject. Judgments locating it too far in front prevailed when the experimenter was back of him. The whole number of judgments locating the sound back of the point 25, is larger than that of those locating it in front of that point. This fact indicates a general tendency to locate sounds too far back.

The supposed location of the sounds made at points 0 and 50 varied so much that a separate arrangement of them is required. The table below gives a summary of the supposed locations, The columns marked C contain the correct judgments. Those marked with an interrogation point show how often the subjects were in doubt whether the sound was in front of or behind them. Columns with an X at the top indicate the number of times sounds located in front of the subject were supposed to be behind him and *vice versa*. R and L mean that errors were made respectively toward the right and left.

TABLE IV.

	Harmonicon.										Telegraph Snapper.										Total.				
	0					50					0					50									
	C	?	X	R	L	C	?	X	R	L	C	?	X	R	L	C	?	X	R	L	C	?	X	R	L
Both ears open.	5	3	..		2	..	..	3	4	3	4	4	..	1	1	5	..	..	2	3	14	7	3	7	9
Left ear closed.	2	3	..	3	2	2	1	2	4	1	1	4	..	3	2	8	..	2	2	3	8	8	4	12	8
	7	6	..	3	4	2	1	5	8	4	5	8	..	4	3	8	..	2	4	6	22	15	7	19	17

More errors were made at these points when the left ear was closed than when both were open. The same number of errors in the aggregate was made with the two instruments, and nearly the same at the two points o and 50. Upon the whole there was a slight inclination to err towards the right.

The following diagrams show the points at which each sound was located. The Roman numerals indicate the points where the sounds were produced. The figures at the end of the heavy lines

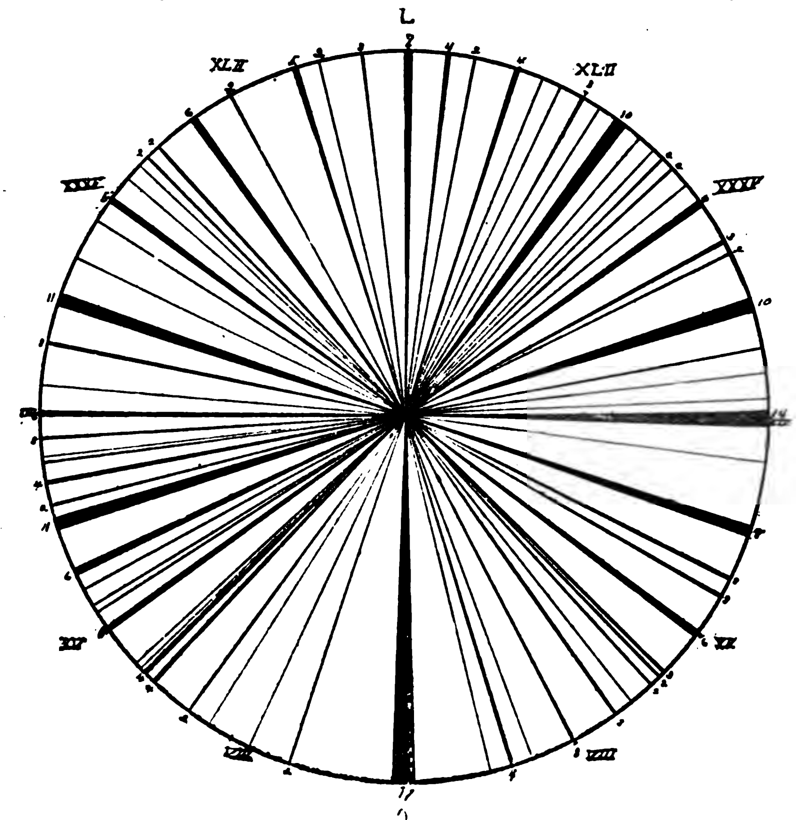


Fig. (a).

represent the number of sounds supposed by the subjects to be located at those points. (A) represents the supposed locations of the sounds when the subjects used both ears, and (b) when they used only the right ear. As there are two hundred and forty lines in each diagram and twelve points where sounds were made, twenty lines would terminate at each point, if all the sounds had been correctly located by the subjects. The tendency in the diagrams to vary from this regular arrangement shows the general trend of errors in locating the sounds.

The right semi-circle in (a) contains eighteen more lines than the corresponding semi-circle in (b). Between the other corresponding semi-circles there is very little difference in the number of lines. In the right front quadrant in both diagrams there is a point between forty-five and ninety degrees where a considerable number of lines congregate. The zero point in (a) gathers to it all the lines for a considerable distance on both sides of it. In the rest of the circle the lines are more or less scattered. The rear semi-circle in both diagrams has a larger number of congregated lines than the semi-circle in front. The lines in both diagrams also

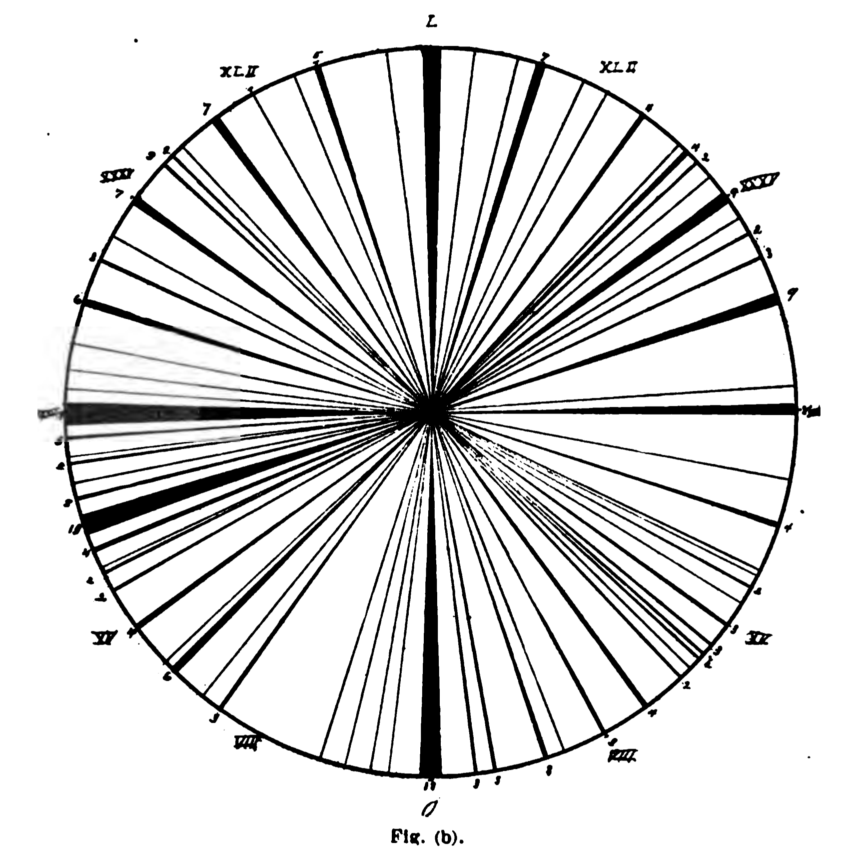


Fig. (b).

show an inclination to collect about the two points marked XXV. They have an evident preference to group together about certain points.

GENERAL CONCLUSIONS.

1. A sound can be the most accurately located when it is at one side of the person.

2. A sound produced back of a person is likely to be judged too far towards the front, and one in front too far back.

3. The direction of a smooth tone can be more accurately determined than that of a short, piercing one. The greatest error in both cases is that of locating the sounds too far back.

4. The direction of a sound can be determined with greater accuracy when both ears are used than when one is closed.

5. The position in which the direction of a sound can be most accurately determined is with the sound at the left with both ears open. That in which the greatest errors are likely to be made is with the sound at the left with the left ear closed.

6. There is an inclination upon the whole to locate sounds too far back.

New Corals from the Kansas Carboniferous.*

BY J. W. BEEDE.

Amplexus westii, n. sp.

Corallum simple, sub-cylindrical or attennuate conical, curved or geniculated, longitudinal striæ prominent, concentric lines of growth distinct, epitheca thin; septa extending one-half distance to center, eighteen to twenty-four or more in number; counterseptum somewhat longer than the others, which are about equal; indications of secondary septa visible, but not more than ½ mm. in length as seen in transverse section. Tabulæ well developed, 1½ to 3 mm. distant, reaching from wall to wall; on leaving the wall they are directed obliquely upward a short distance then slightly arching and undulating cross the center; occasionally branched at or near the bend. Length of specimen about 47 mm. diameter, in larger part, 9 mm.

Carboniferous, Upper Coal Measures, Kansas City. Collected by Judge E. P. West.

Cladochonus bennetti n. sp.

Corallum loosely fasciculate; corallites one to two or more diameters distant, erect coralites larger than basal branches, often five times as high as thick, upper portion budding and sending off branches as at base; epitheca strongly wrinkled, upper portion of wall of calyx thin, opening circular, deep, funnel-shaped by thickening of wall of corallite interiorly, in the lower portion of which is only a small capillary opening through the center. Average diameter of corallite 2 mm.; length, 6 to 18 mm.

This specimen resembles *Romingeria* (*Quenstedtia* Rom.) *umbellifera* Rom., but the absence of tabulæ removes it from that genus. It agrees with *Cladochonus* McCoy (*Pyrgia* E. and H.) save that the corallites are only funnel-shaped when young. The corallites are long and very stout, resembling *Syringopora* in outward appearance.

So far as I am aware this is the first time the genus has been reported from the United States. Carboniferous, Lower Coal Measures, Fort Scott. Presented by Rev. John Bennett.

*Published by permission of the Paleontologist of the University Geological Survey.

Aulopora? anna, n. sp.

Corallum prostrate, diffusely branched, branches interlacing, anastomosing at every contact, walls thin save at base of corallite, tubes very short, slightly sub-conical, immediate openings slightly flaring, circular to oval; no tabulæ distinguishable; septa occasionally represented by a faint ridge in best preserved corallites; diameter of calyx opening 2 mm., contiguous to one or two diameters distant. Corallites moderately low, larger at upper extremity than at base.

This species is profusely branched baso-laterally and anastomoses to such an extent as to often form solid mats of coral. It differs from *Aulopora* in having no tabulæ, in which respect it agrees with *Cladochonus*, but it is prostrate, and does not reproduce by lateral gemmation as does the latter, hence it is referred provisionally to *Aulopora*. Carboniferous, Upper Coal Measures Morehead, Kansas.

Aulopora prosseri, n. sp.

Corallum large, prostrate, bifurcating, calyces rising vertically or obliquely from 3 to 7 mm.; average diameter 2 mm. or less, average diameter of prostrate position slightly less. Calyces not campanulate, cylindrical, openings nearly circular; corallites wrinkled, weathered specimens show longitudinal striæ indicating rudimentary septa; distance of corallites, 1 to 3 diameters; in lower portion the cavity is nearly closed by internal thickening of wall. Tabulæ very remote or wanting, depressed when present.

Another specimen, apparently of this species, has a transverse weathered surface in which the corallites seem to be nearly closed by annular deposits within, there being merely a capillary opening in the center—a longititudinal section shows calyces 3½ to 5 mm. deep, thin walled to near base, where the walls rapidly thicken. One corallite in the section measures 15 mm. in length.

Carboniferous, Upper Coal Measures, Lyndon, Osage Co., Kansas.

A Geological Map of Logan and Gove Counties.

BY GEO. I. ADAMS.

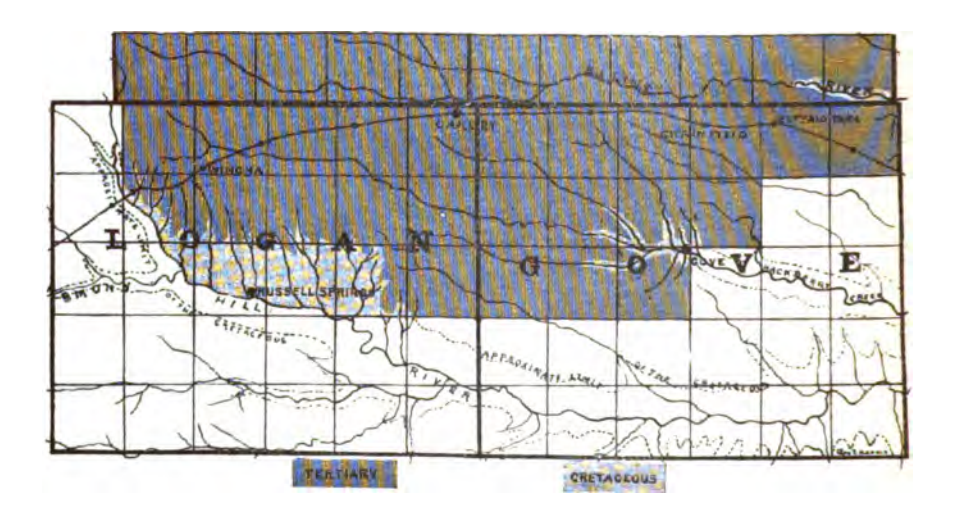
The accompanying map is published as a record of field work done in the summer 1896, while the writer was engaged in investigating the water supply of the area around Oakley, (see Report of Kansas State Board of Irrigation 1896-7, p. 113) and is here presented, with the hope, that it may assist in the further mapping of the geological formations. The shaded portions of the map are as accurate as the scale will permit, the field mapping having been referred to section lines or streams. Logan and Gove counties are here shown, also the southern row of townships of Sheridan and Thomas counties.

The level plain around Oakley, is a portion of the Tertiary formation of the western portion of the state. In this area it has a thickness of not over 200 feet. The formation consists of clays and sand, more or less cemented and mixed with some gravel. It has been eroded along the principal streams exposing the underlying formation which is the Cretaceous.

Northeast of Buffalo Park, in Sec. 22, T. 10, R. 27, is the western limit at which the Niobrara is exposed along the Saline. There it occupies the immediate valley of the stream. The area gradually widens to the east. In the vicinity of Gove the Niobrara is shown on the map by the light shading. The outcrops become more important to the east, as is indicated by the dotted lines. The Niobrara is easily recognized, being the "chalk" formation.

The area, shown in light shading north of the Smoky Hill river, at Russell Springs, is for the most part Fort Pierre. The Niobrara is seen in the valley as far west as the vicinity of Russell Springs, but occupies a limited belt. The line between the two fermations was not traced. The Fort Pierre shales erode quite easily thus

producing a bluff several miles back from the river. The formation may be recognized by the blue shales and the concretions or septaria which they contain. It is typically exposed at McAlister.



A Contribution to the Knowledge of the Ichthyic Fauna of the Kansas Cretaceous.*

BY ALBAN STEWART.

With Plates I and II.

Since the publication of Prof. Cope's Cretaceous Vertebrata in 1875, very little work has been done upon the Teleost fishes from the Kansas Cretaceous. During the time intervening since then four papers have appeared upon this Subclass, two in America by Cope†, ‡, and two in Europe by Felix||, and Crook§, The last two have thrown much light upon the osteology of the forms treated, but only one new species was described, *Ichthyodectes polymicrodus* Crook, which Cope thought to be a synonym of his *I. arcuatus***, although this fact cannot be determined until a more complete description and a figure are made of the type of this species. The object of the present paper is to describe five new species from the Cretaceous of this state, with a few remarks upon the classification of the Saurodontidae, which I think are justifiable in the light of some new characters shown by the material in the Kansas University Museum.

Family Saurodontidæ Cope

Saurocephalidæ Zittel

Ichthyodectidæ Crook.

Cope characterizes this family as embracing carnivorous fishes, many of large size, and as being the predominant type of fishes during the Cretaceous period of North America. He gives the following synopsis††:

---

*Published by permission of the Paleontologist of the Kansas University Geological Survey.

†Bull U. S. Geol. Surv. Terr., Vol. III. No. 4, p. 821.

‡Proc. Am. Phil. Soc., Vol XVII. p. 176-181. It might be well to mention Cope's description of *Syllæmus latifrons* in this connection: Rep. U. S. Geo. Surv., West One Hundreth Mer., Part II. Vol. IV. p. 27.

||Zeit. d. Deut. Geol. Ges. Band XLII. p. 278-302.

§Paleontographica 1892, p. 107-124.

**Am. Nat., Vol. XXVI, p. 941.

††Cret Vert., p. 198.

I. Jaws without foramina on the inner face below the alveolar margin:

a. Teeth cylindric:

Teeth of unequal lengths; some of them greatly developed . . . . *Portheus.*
Teeth of equal length . . . . *Ichthyodectes*

aa. Teeth compressed, knife like:

Teeth of unequal length; some of the anterior greatly developed . . . . *Erisicthe.**
Teeth equal . . . . *Daptinus.*

II. Dentary bones pierced by foramina below the alveolar border:
Teeth with sub-cylindric crowns . . . . *Saurodon.*
Teeth with short, compressed crowns . . . . . . *Saurocephalus.*

Prof. Cope also says†: "There are some other forms to be referred to this family, whose characters are not yet fully determined. Thus *Hypsodon* Agass., from the European Chalk, is related to the two genera first above named, but, as left by its author in the 'Poissons Fossiles,' includes apparently two generic forms. The first figured and described has the mandibular teeth of equal length. In the second, they are unequal, as in *Portheus,* to which genus this specimen ought, perhaps, to be referred. Retaining the name *Hypsodon* for the genus with equal mandibular teeth, its relations to *Ichthyodectes* remain to be determined by further study of *H. lewesiensis.* The view of the superior walls of the cranium given by Professor Agassiz presents characters quite distinct from what I have observed in *Portheus.*"

In the light of the above and having compared Agassiz's type specimens with remains of *Portheus* and *Ichthyodectes,* Mr. E. T. Newton says‡: "I am convinced of the necessity of dividing *Hypsodon lewesiensis* as suggested by Prof. Cope; and it is proposed to retain this name for the specimen first described by Agassiz, and upon which the species and genus are really founded (Poiss. Foss., Vol. V, pl 25a, figs, 1, 2, and 4), and to remove Dr. Mantell's specimens and certain others (Poiss. Foss., pl. 25a, fig. 3, and 25b, figs. 1a, 1b, 2, and 3), to the genus *Portheus* of Cope."

*The name *Erisicthe* Cope, 1872, has been shown to be a synonym of *Protosphyræna* Leidy, 1856. Newton, Q. J. G. S., 1878, p. 787, and has been placed in a new family, *Protosphyrænidae* Woodward. Cope's objection to *Protosphyræna* was that Dr. Leidy did not sufficiently characterize his genus, and for this reason it should be ignored If such objections are deemed valid by naturalists, very many of the genera and species of early paleontologist would cease to be recognized, not only among the fishes, but in every other class of the animal kingdom.

†l. c, 189.

‡Q. J. G. S., Vol. XXIII, p. 507

Further in his modified description of *H. lewesiensis* Agass., Mr. Newton says*:

"I am far from being convinced of the propriety of placing it (*H. lewesiensis*) in the group of the *Saurodontidæ*."

From the above it would seem that there is some doubt as to the exact systematic position of *Hypsodon*, but until more complete specimens are found, showing the other cranial characters not known at present, it will have to remain in the *Saurodontidæ*.

After having made a careful study of the Saurodont material in the Kansas University Museum, and in view of some new characters which have been brought to light since Prof. Cope made his synopsis, I deem it advisable to divide this family into two groups which I will characterize as follows:

GROUP I.

Carnivorous fishes, many of large size. Jaws without foramina below the alveolar border internally. Teeth cylindric, no predentary. Supra-occipital produced upward into a crest. New crown rises within the pulp cavity of the functional tooth in the succession of the teeth. Embracing the genera, *Portheus*, *Ichthyodectes* and *Hypsodon*, of which *Portheus* should be the type.

GROUP II.

Carnivorous fishes not attaining as large a size as in the first group. Jaws with foramina or deep notches below the alveolar border internally. Teeth compressed, knife-like, or sub-cylindric. Predentary present. Supra-occipital not raised into a crest. Succeeding crown developed outside of the functional tooth as in many *Lacertilia* including the *Mosasaurs*. In this Group are *Daptinus*, *Saurodon*, and *Saurocephalus* of which *Daptinus* should be the type.

Below we give a revised synopsis of the family:

I. Predentary not present, no foramina below the alveolar border internally; teeth cylindric.

Teeth of unequal length, some of them are greatly developed .... *Portheus*.

Teeth of equal length .... *Ichthyodectes*.

II. Predentary present.

a. Foramina occurring below the alevolar border internally.

Teeth with short, compressed crowns ...... *Saurocephalus*.

Teeth with sub-cylindric crowns .... *Saurodon*.

aa. Deep notches occurring below the alveolar border internally .... *Daptinus*.

*l. c. 508.

Portheus Lowii sp. nov.

This species is based upon the dentary bones of a single individual. They were found at Fairbury, Nebraska, in the same horizon of the Fort Benton, with *Desmatochelys lowii* Williston and were sent to the museum by Mr. M. A. Low of Topeka in whose honor the species is named. Special interest is attached to this species as it is the first time the genus *Portheus* has been reported from so low a horizon as the Fort Benton.

The dentary is short with a symphysis more oblique than in any other species of *Portheus* which I have examined. It is also not so roughly marked for the attachment of the ligaments binding the jaws together as in *Portheus molossus*. The alveolar border is shorter and not so thick proportionally as in this species. The groove for Meckel's cartilage is very shallow and the swelling of the alveolar border just back of the symphysis is but slightly developed. The posterior extremity of the alveolar border is projected upward into a short coronoid process, which is but slightly bent outward. The teeth are slightly oval in cross section, and non-striate. At the extremities the crowns are acutely pointed and curved slightly backward. The arrangement of the teeth is as follows: one large, two small, one large, and ten or eleven medium large and small.

Measurements are as follows:

	MM.
Length of alveolar border	177
Length of symphysis	79.5
Depth of dentary at middle	64.5
Depth of dentary just back of symphysis	65

Daptinus broadheadi, sp. nov.

Established on the left superior maxillary and one of the predentaries. The remains were found in Wallace county, Kansas, by Mr. Geo. W. Cooper. Named in honor of Prof. G. C. Broadhead of Columbia, Mo.

The maxillary is less elongate and ends more abruptly than in *Saurocephalus*. The anterior border slopes forward more obliquely than in *Portheus*. The premaxillary surface is continuous with the outer surface of the maxillary, which surface is provided with small tubercular protuberances probably fitting into corresponding depressions on the premaxillary. It is seen from the above that the premaxillary is not so immovably fixed as in *Portheus*, where the premaxillary fits into a deep depression of the maxillary and has a thin lamina of bone extending forward nearly to the extremity supporting it. The ramus is thin above and thickens but slightly at the alveolar border. The bone does not materially thicken

below the palatine condyles as in *Portheus*. The two superior condyles are situated much nearer each other than in the form just mentioned; the anterior is elevated upon a pedicel and is rather tubercular. The palatine is elongate, narrow and nearly flat, it does not have the prominent internal notch which I have observed in *D. phlebotomus*. The teeth are closely set, with compressed knife-like crowns and smooth enamel surface, appearing very slightly striate under the microscope. One deep notch occurs to each tooth; as in the form just mentioned above, alveola for thirty-one are found. A single predentary was found on the same slab with the above, and no doubt belongs to this specimen. It is a small, triangular element, the posterior surface of which is very irregular for cartilage, binding it to the dentary. The upper border is edentulous, the lower thin and sharp; the two borders meet at an acute point anteriorly.

MEASUREMENTS.	MM.
Length of maxillary*	122
Length of palatine condyle	18
Depth of maxillary at the centre	37
Depth of bone at palatine condyle	44
Number of teeth in 1 cm.	3.5
Length of crown measured externally	3.5
Anterior-posterior breadth of crown	2.75
Depth of predentary	28.5
Length of predentary, approximally	30

Saurocephalus dentatus, sp. nov.

Established upon the left maxillary, premaxillary, and mandible of one individual and the left mandible of another. The specimen is from the Niobrara Cretaceous of Wallace county, and was found by Mr. E. P. West.

The maxillary is larger and more elongate than in *Daptinus broadheadi* just described. The superior border is very thin and more elevated just back of the palatine condyle than in *Daptinus*. The palatine condyle is strongly convex from before backward. Anterior to the palatine there seem to have been two condyles which were probably for the ethmoid and vomer, the most posterior of these is broken away but from the base it appears to have been elevated as in *D. broadheadi*. The anterior of these condyles is rather large and triangular in outline and is bounded in front by a shallow pit not found in *Daptinus*. The teeth are similar to those described by Cope.† They decrease in size toward the posterior extremity. Alveola for thirty-eight are found.

*Estimated.
†Cret. Vert., 216.

The premaxillary is more or less plate-like, externally it is convex from before backward. The anterior border is quite oblique and forms an acute angle with the alveolar border. There is probably no close connection with its fellow on the opposite side. The upper portion of the bone is covered with fine lines radiating upward and backward from the tip. The teeth seem to be somewhat smaller than those on the maxillary; alveola for nine are found.

The ramus of the mandible decreases more in depth toward the symphysis than in either *Ichthyodectes* or *Portheus*, the lower portion is very thin, becoming gradually thicker towards the alveolar border but does not attain the robustness of this portion in *Portheus*. Just back of the predental surface and below the line of foramina occurring opposite the roots of the teeth there is a prominent swelling more strongly marked than in *Daptinus*. The predental surface is almost vertical and is very irregular for cartilage attaching it to the predentary. Just back of this and below the swelling mentioned above, internally, there is an elongated ovoid pit near the point of the Mento-Meckelian ossicle of *Amia* The posterior portion of the dentary is well elevated above the articular. The groove for Meckel's cartilage is not so deep as in *Portheus*. From the center to the anterior extremity the teeth decrease in size, on the posterior portion they are about twice as large as those on the superior maxillary: the crowns are compressed and appear minutely striate under the microscope. Just beneath the dentary there is a long, thin element extending nearly its whole length, which appears to be joined to it by a suture. If this be true it may represent a new element in the jaw, although more material will have to be brought to light before this point can be determined.

The predentary is a triangular element joined to the dentary by a very irregular surface broader above than below. The superior borderis finely rugose and edentulous. The tip is acute. The two rami were probably united by ligaments at the symphysis, as in the *Mosasaurs*.

The articular sends a long dagger-like element forward internally nearly to the ovoid pit mentioned above. Externally it is soon covered by the dentary. The cotyloid cavity has its surface more vertically directed than in either *Portheus* or *Ichthyodectes*; it is narrower laterally and slightly concave from above downward. Externally a lamina of bone extends backward probably articulating with the angular below.

MEASUREMENTS.

	MM.
Length of maxillary and premaxillary	161.5
Depth of bone posterior to palatine condyle	44.5
Height of palatine condyle above the alveolar border	48.5
Length of premaxillary, inferior	31.5
Average height of crown	3.9
Average anterior posterior length of crown	3.3

MANDIBLE.

Length of mandible from cotyloid cavity	161
Length of alveolar border	140
Average height of crown, posterior	6
Average anterior posterior length of crown, posterior	4.4
Depth of predental surface*	33
Vertical depth of condyle	13
Predentary, length	29.5
Predentary, depth	34

Protosphyræna bentonia, sp. nov.

Established upon the rostrum, and numerous fragments of bones whose identity cannot be determined. These were found by Dr. S. W. Williston in the Lincoln Marble on Rock creek in southern Mitchell county. The low horizon from which the specimen was obtained attaches special interest to it as it is the first species described from below the Niobrara Cretaceous.

The proximal portion bearing the larger ethmoidal teeth is not preserved. The base is broad, becoming more narrow toward the distal extremity, where it suddenly contracts, forming a rather blunt apex. In *P. penetrans* the bone gradually contracts to an acute point. The anterior portion is oval in outline instead of semicircular as in the above, nor does it have the flat superior surface of this species as described by Cope.† The lower surface contracts more rapidly than the upper, causing the apex to be above the center of the shaft. The inferior and superior surfaces gradually grade into each other laterally and are not separated by the obtuse angular ridge found in *P. xiphoides*. The outer surface, where preserved, shows the rostrum to be covered with irregular longitudinal ridges which send out branches to each other, and giving the outer surface of the bone the appearance of net work. The other bones are too fragmentary to identify.

*Estimated.
†Bull. U. S. Geol. Surv. Terr., Vol. III, No. 4, p. 822.

MEASUREMENTS.

	MM
Length of rostrum, fragment	199
Transverse diameter 136 mm. from anterior extremity	34
Transverse diameter 22 mm. from anterior extremity	22

Protosphyræna, sp. nov,

Established upon a right premaxillary from the Niobrara Cretaceous, the exact locality not known. The material upon which this species is based is too scanty I think to justify a specific name being given to it until more complete specimens are found. It may prove to be a synonym of *P. penetrans* or *P. xiphoides* when specimens of these are found with the premaxillary attached, but for the present at least it will have to regarded as a new species.

When viewed from the side, the bone is triangular in outline with a thin superior and posterior border. The anterior extremity is broken away but was probably acutely pointed as in *P. nitida.* The difference which characterizes this form from *P. nitida* are the size and arrangement of the teeth. Near the center of the bone there are alveola for four large teeth, the three anterior of which are preserved nearly complete, the posterior of these is broken off at the base but it and the anterior one seem to be the smallest of the four. The two in the center are of about the same size; they are all directed forward, the anterior slightly more than the rest. These teeth all have broad lanciform crowns with sharp anterior and posterior cutting edges and slightly striate enameled surfaces. Just back of the most posterior of these there is a row of small teeth, the anterior of which are hardly more than bony tubercles but posteriorly they assume definite dental characters; ten of these are present in the specimen. There are other teeth like these present on the anterior portion of the border, the exact number of which cannot be determined, owing to the tip of the bone being broken away. The maxillary surface contracts toward the anterior, and is bounded below by a narrow shelf of bone extending inward.

MEASUREMENTS.

Approximate length of the alveolar border	82
Depth just back of last large tooth	27
Height of first large tooth	15
Height of second large tooth	19
Length of first large tooth	8
Length of second large tooth	9

The species of *Protosphyræna* now known are as follows:

	Niobrara Cretaceous.	Fort Benton Cretaceous.
American Cretaceous:	*P. nitida* Cope (*P. angulatus* Cope)..	*P. bentoniana* Stewart.
	P. penetrans Cope.	
	P. species, Stewart.	

English Cretaceous: *P. ferox* Leidy (*Erisichthe dixoni* Cope, *Xiphias dixoni* Leidy).

Additional treatment will probably be given to this subject in the report on the Cretaceous Fishes of Kansas now in course of preparation by the author.

Alternating Currents in Wheatstone's Bridge.

BY M. E. RICE.

For the solution of problems involving continuous currents in a net work of conductors, two general laws suffice, viz. Kirchhoff's Laws which are, (1) In any net work of conductors the algebraic sum of all the currents flowing to or from a junction is zero. (2) The sum of all the E. M. F.'s in a closed circuit equals zero if the E. M. F. consumed by resistance, IR, is also considered as a counter E. M. F., and all the E. M. F.'s are taken in their proper direction.

But when the corresponding problem involving alternating currents is met with, these laws do not apply except to the instantaneous values. Hence, in general, the solution of such problems requires the solving of several differential equations more or less involved; these equations often being too complicated for solution except in special cases.

This lack of generality in the application of Kirchhoff's laws has been overcome by Mr. C. P. Steinmetz who has shown *that if the algebra of the plane instead of that of the straight line be employed, the laws are entirely general.

In this method, electromotive forces, currents, and impedances, (corresponding to resistances for continuous currents), are all expressed as complex quantities, e. g.; $a+jb$, where $j=\sqrt{-1}$. Thus the absolute value of the quantity, its modulus, is $\sqrt{a^2+b^2}$ and its phase angle, its amplitude, is $\tan^{-1}\frac{b}{a}$.

Kirchhoff's laws may accordingly be written:

(1) At a junction point $\Sigma I=0$.

(2) In a closed circuit $\Sigma IZ=\Sigma E$,

$$\text{where } E=e+je',\ |E|=\sqrt{e^2+e'^2}$$

$$I=i+ji',\ |I|=\sqrt{i^2+i'^2}$$

$$Z=r-jx,\ |Z|=\sqrt{r^2+x^2}$$

*See Proceedings of the International Electrical Congress at Chicago, 1893, pp 33-75; also "Alternating Current Phenomena," Steinmetz, issued in 1897.

The large letters represent complex quantities or vectors and the small letters denote real or scalar quantities: r denotes the resistance and x the reactance of a branch, i. e. $x = L\omega - \frac{1}{C\omega}$ where ω is 2 times the frequency of alternation.

It is the purpose of this paper to apply the method outlined above to the solution of problems involving alternating currents in the branches of a Wheatstone's Bridge.

Let the branches of a Wheatstone's Bridge be represented in Fig. 1, where the branches are numbered (1), (2), ... (6), and the arrows indicate assumed instantaneous directions of currents and electromotive forces. Branch (5) contains the galvanometer or telephone, and (6) the impressed E. M. F; a battery, to be closed after the galvanometer circuit is closed; or the secondary of an induction coil, with telephone in (5).

Kirchhoff's laws give the six equations:

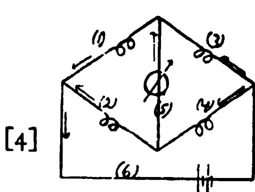
$$\begin{aligned} I_1 + I_2 - I_6 &= 0 \\ I_1 - I_3 - I_5 &= 0 \\ I_3 + I_4 - I_6 &= 0 \\ Z_3 I_3 - Z_4 I_4 - Z_5 I_5 &= 0 \\ Z_1 I_1 - Z_2 I_2 + Z_5 I_5 &= 0 \\ Z_2 I_2 + Z_4 I_4 + Z_6 I_6 &= E_6 \end{aligned} \qquad [1]$$

The condition for no current in the galvanometer is $I_5 = 0$, which gives

$$I_5 = \frac{\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & z_3 & -z_4 & 0 & 0 \\ z_1 & -z_2 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & z_2 & 0 & z_4 & E_6 & z_6 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 & -1 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & z_3 & -z_4 & -z_5 & 0 \\ z_1 & -z_2 & 0 & 0 & z_5 & 0 \\ 0 & z_2 & 0 & z_4 & 0 & z_6 \end{vmatrix}} = \frac{E_6(z_2 z_3 - z_1 z_4)}{} = 0 \qquad [2]$$

This reduces at once to the very simple equation.

$$z_2 z_3 = z_1 z_4 \qquad [3]$$



Suppose first that the arms of the bridge contain only resistances. Then

$$z_1 = r_1 \quad z_3 = r_3$$

$$z_2 = r_2 \quad z_4 = r_4$$

and equation [3] becomes $r_2 r_3 = r_1 r_4$, [4]

the same as for continuous currents.

Suppose next that each arm of the bridge contains a resistance and an inductance, then $z_1 = r_1 - jx_1$, $z_2 = r_2 - jx_2$, $z_3 = r_3 - jx_3$, $z_4 = r_4 - jx_4$, and equation [3] becomes

$$r_2 r_3 - x_2 x_3 - j(r_3 x_2 + r_2 x_3) = r_1 r_4 - x_1 x_4 - j(r_1 x_4 + r_4 x_1) \qquad [5]$$

Transposing, and equating the reals to zero and the imaginaries to zero, gives the two equations of condition

$$r_2 r_3 - r_1 r_4 = x_2 x_3 - x_1 x_4 \qquad [6]$$

$$r_1 x_4 + r_4 x_1 = r_3 x_2 + r_2 x_3 \qquad [7]$$

Hence, in general, if any six of the constants of the bridge be given, the other two may be obtained from equations [6] and [7]. For example, if the resistances of three arms be given, the necessary resistance and inductance of the fourth arm my be calculated. Or, if the four resistances and two of the inductances are known, the other two inductances may be calculated.

It is evident from equation [6] that the bridge need not be balanced for continuous currents in order to be balanced for alternating currents. But if the bridge is first balanced for continuous currents, equations [6] and [7] reduce to

$$x_1 x_4 = x_2 x_3 \qquad [8]$$

$$\frac{x_4}{r_4} + \frac{x_1}{r_1} = \frac{x_3}{r_3} + \frac{x_2}{r_2} \qquad [6]$$

In this case also, if two of the inductances, say x_1 and x_2, are given, one and only one pair of values of x_3 and x_4 can be obtained that will balance the bridge. But if $\frac{x_1}{x_2} = \frac{r_1}{r_2}$, equation [9] reduces to $\frac{x_3}{x_4} = \frac{r_3}{r_4} = \frac{r_1}{r_2}$ which is the same as [8]; consequently in this case the ratio $\frac{x_3}{x_4}$ only can be determined from [8] and [9], and

there is an indefinite number of pairs of valves of x_3 and x_4 that will balance the bridge, and if one inductance, say x_3, is known, the other is readily found.

To compare two self-inductances make $x_3 = x_4 = 0$ in equations [6] and [7], giving

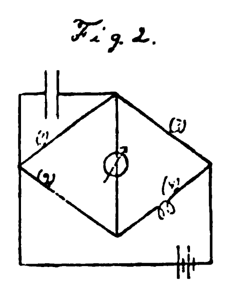
$$r_2 r_3 = r_1 r_4 \qquad [10]$$

$$r_4 x_1 = r_3 x_2 \qquad [11]$$

That is, the bridge is first balanced for continuous currents, then $\frac{x_1}{x_2} = \frac{r_3}{r_4}$ and the comparison is at once made. This is Maxwell's method.

To compare a self-inductance with an electrostatic capacity, arrange the bridge as in Fig. 2. In this case the impedances of equation [3] are

$$z_4 = r_4 - jx_4$$
$$z_3 = r_3$$
$$z_2 = r_2$$
$$z_1 = \frac{x_c r_1}{x_c - jr_1}.$$



Z_1 is obtained thus:

$$\frac{1}{z_1} = \frac{1}{r_1} + \frac{1}{jx_c} = \frac{x_c - jr_1}{x_c r_1}$$

Where $x_c = \frac{1}{C\omega}$ C being the capacity of the condenser connected in parallel with branch (1).

Substituting these values in [3] gives

$$\frac{(r_4 - jx_4)x_c r_1}{x_c - jr_1} = r_2 r_3$$

which gives the two equations

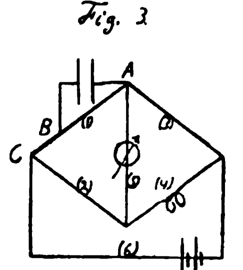
$$r_1 r_4 = r_2 r_3 \qquad [12]$$

$$x_4 x_c = r_2 r_3 \qquad [13]$$

Here $x_4 = L\omega$ and $x_c = \frac{1}{C\omega}$ and [13] reduces to $L = Cr_1 r_4$, the form given by Maxwell.

A better practical arrangement of parts is shown in Fig. 3, where

the condenser is shunted around only a part of the resistance in branch (1). If the resistance A to C$=r_1$ and A to B$=r'_1$ then



$$z_4 = r_4 - jx_4$$

$$z_3 = r_3$$

$$z_2 = r_2$$

$$z_1 = r_1 - r'_1 + \frac{x_c r'_1}{x_c - jr'_1} = \frac{x_c r_1 - jr'_1(r_1 - r'_1)}{x_c - jr'_1}.$$

Substituting these values in equation [3] gives the two conditions

$$x_c(r_2 r_3 - r_1 r_4) = x_4(r'^2_1 - r_1 r'_1) \qquad [14]$$

$$r_1 x_4 x_c = r_1(r_2 r_3 - r_1 r_4) + r'^2_1 r_4 \qquad [15]$$

And if the bridge is first balanced for continuous currents, equation [15] reduces to

$$x_4 = \frac{r'^2_1 r_4}{x_c r_1},$$

or putting in the values of x_4 and x_c the relation becomes

$$L = \frac{Cr'^2_1 r_4}{r_1},$$

the one given by Rimington. In this case the bridge is first balanced for steady currents and then the point B is found so as to balance for variable currents, without repeated adjustments of resistances.

To compare the mutual inductance of two coils, C and D, with the self-inductance of one of them, D, consider the arrangement indicated in Fig. 4, a Wheatstone's bridge with an extra conductor from A to B. Kirchhoff's laws give the seven equations:

$$\begin{aligned}
&I_1 + I_2 - I_6 + I_7 = 0 \\
&I_1 - I_3 - I_5 = 0 \\
&I_3 + I_4 - I_6 + I_7 = 0 \\
&Z_3 I_3 - Z_4 I_5 - Z_5 I_5 = 0 \\
&Z_1 I_1 - Z_2 I_2 + Z_5 I_5 = jx_m I_6 \\
&Z_2 I_2 + Z_4 I_4 + Z_6 I_6 = E + jx_m I_1 \\
&Z_2 I_2 + Z_4 I_4 - Z_7 I_7 = 0
\end{aligned} \qquad [16]$$

The condition for $I_5=0$, derived as in the preceding problems, is

$$(z_2z_3 - z_1z_4)z_7 + jx_m(z_2z_3 + z_3z_4 + z_3z_7 + z_4z_7) = 0. \qquad [17]$$

The values of the various impedances in this case are:

$$z_1 = r_1 - jx_1 \qquad z_5 = r_5 - jx_5$$
$$z_2 = r_2 \qquad z_6 = r_6 - jx_6$$
$$z_3 = r_3 \qquad z_7 = r_7$$
$$z_4 = r_4$$

which substituted in equation [17] reduce it to

$$(r_2r_3 - (r_1 - jx_1)r_4)r_7 + jx_m(r_2r_3 + r_3r_4 + r_3r_7 + r_4r_7) = 0.$$

Equating the reals to zero and the imaginaries to zero gives

(1) $$r_2r_3 = r_1r_4$$

(2) $$x_1r_4r_7 + x_m(r_2r_3 + r_3r_4 + r_3r_7 + r_4r_7) = 0$$

or, combining (2) with the first condition,

$$x_1 = -x_m\left(1 + \frac{r_1}{r_2} + \frac{r_1 + r_3}{r_7}\right), \qquad [18]$$

where $x_1 = L_1\omega$ and $x_m = M\omega$.

If the branch [7] is omitted, [18] reduces to the simpler form

$$x_1 = -x_m\left(1 + \frac{r_1}{r_2}\right). \qquad [19]$$

Both [18] and [19] are given by Maxwell, the latter being the simpler case theoretically, the former the easier of practical application.

The above are only a few of the problems that can profitably be attacked by this method; but they are sufficient to show its great generality and ease of application.

Adulterations of Buckwheat Flour Sold in the Lawrence Market.

BY MARSHALL A. BARBER.

With Plates III and IV.

Seven samples of buckwheat flour were purchased of grocers in Lawrence, Kansas. No two samples were obtained of any one dealer, and the purpose for which they were bought was not given. One variety was said to come from Michigan, one from New York, and one from Tennessee; while the other four were from different mills in Douglas and Leavenworth counties. Inquiry was made in nearly every case as to the purity of the flour, and the purchaser was always assured that the sample was "pure buckwheat."

The examination was made with the compound microscope, and the results are best explained by the photomicrographs illustrating this article. In these the objects are magnified about 265 diameters.

Fig. 1 is from a photomicrograph of pure buckwheat. The sample was obtained by grinding in the laboratory buckwheat free from all other grains, so that a flour, known to be genuine, was at hand for comparison. The two fragments shown fairly represent the masses of starch grains seen in buckwheat flour. These grains vary comparatively little in size, they are closely compacted in the masses, and the individual grains are somewhat angular in outline and show few concentric lines.

Fig. 2 represents a mass of starch of wheat obtained from shorts. In the wheat flour fragments the starch grains vary much in form, and the larger ones far exceed in size the largest of the buckwheat starch grains. Their outline is more regular than that of the buckwheat grains, and the prevailing forms are round and elliptical. With comparatively little magnification the wheat starch grain is shown to have well marked concentric lines, and to differ from the buckwheat in the form of its center. These two points are not clearly shown in the reproductions of the photomicrographs; but the comparative uniformity in size of the buckwheat starch grains and their smallness and irregularity of form make the fragments of this flour easily distinguishable from those of wheat.

Fig. 3 represents a sample of a "pure buckwheat" of the "instantaneous rising" kind. Two masses of buckwheat starch are shown, and with them a somewhat larger amount of another starch very much like the kind seen in shorts. The proportion between the buckwheat and the other starch in this flour is fairly well represented by this figure, and no more than half of the sample examined was buckwheat.

Figs. 4, 5 and 6 are of samples, each from a different mill, and all were adulterated. The proportion of buckwheat in each was two-thirds or more; so that the photomicrographs give, in some cases, too great, in others, too little buckwheat in proportion.

The samples from Michigan, New York and Tennessee were pure, or practically pure; and, since they were essentially like the sample represented by Fig. 1, no illustrations of them are given. In the Michigan sample a few grains of wheat starch were found, but so few that it is not likely that they were intentionally added. The adulterated samples all came from mills in Douglas and Leavenworth counties. In three of them there was, as stated above, one-third or less of the adulterant; in one the flour added formed nearly one-half of the mixture.

In every case a second sample taken from a different part of the package purchased was examined, and the results of the first examination were confirmed. The adulterant in these samples closely resembles wheat starch. Certain grades of shorts are said to be often used to adulterate buckwheat, and this is possibly the source of the starch in this adulterant. Kaffir corn flour is also said to be used in some parts of this state as an adulterant of buckwheat; neither this, nor, besides wheat, any other flour likely to be used for mixing with buckwheat was found in these samples, though a comparison with various starches was made. So the evidence is good that wheat starch of some grade was the adulterant used here.

It is doubtless true that buckwheat flour is made more wholesome and palatable by the addition of a certain proportion of some other flour; but it would seem fairer to the purchaser to let him know how much other flour is mixed in, rather than to label the package "Pure Buckwheat," or otherwise represent it as such. Some, perhaps, might not like so large a quantity of wheat flour in their buckwheat as that found in the sample represented in Fig. 3; and all, probably, would prefer that the price of the article diminish as the proportion of cheaper flour increases.

Editorial Notes.

Dr. George I. Adams has published in the American Journal of Science for 1897 a short article on Extinct Felidæ.

Mr. Paul Wilkinson has published in the Transactions of the American Institute of Mining Engineers an article on The Technology of Cement Plaster.

Professor H. B. Newson has in a recent Bulletin of the American Mathematical Society, December, 1897, an article on Continuous Groups of Circular Transformations.

The *Industrialist*, from the Kansas State Agricultural College, appears in magazine form with the first issue of the year 1898. While retaining something of its former character as a local bulletin and reporter for the college, the *Industrialist* will henceforth serve in the Agricultural College the same function as the QUARTERLY in the State University. The institution is to be congratulated on the achievement and its promise.

Dr. George O. Virtue has in the U. S Bulletin of the Department of Labor for November an article on The Anthracite Mine Laborers. Dr. Virtue has made a study of the whole anthracite industry.

Ueber den Hermite'schen Fall der Lamischen Differentialgleichung. Inaugural-Dissertation zur Erlangung der Doktorwuerde der hohen Philosophischen Facultaet der Georg-Augusts Universitaet zu Goettingen, vorgelegt von Mary Frances Winston aus Chicago. Goettingen, 1897, pp. 84 and 32 plates.

This publication by Miss Winston, the new professor of Mathematics in the Kansas State Agricultural College, is in all respects worthy of that lady's reputation as a mathematician. It contains a detailed and exhaustive study of one of the most important differential equations arising in mathematical physics and it is thus a substantial contribution to the world's stock of useful knowledge. This thesis contains besides a theoretical discussion of the equation an application of the results to the mechanics of the spherical pendulum and to the theory of the top.

Lame's differential equation

$$\frac{d^2y}{dt^2}=\{Ap(t)+B\}y \text{ where } A=n(n+1); (n \text{ is any integer) and } P(t)=x.$$

is linear of the second order and first appears in connection with the problem of heat conduction in a solid body. The integration of this equation has taxed the ingenuity of a generation of mathematicians. In 1874 the now venerable Hermite of Paris published his solution by means of elliptic functions. Hermite's results are complicated formulae which render it possible to compute the values of y for any given value of x. In order to grasp the significance of Hermite's solution it is necessary to have a geometrical representation of the results reached. Miss Winston has plotted the real curves representing the integrals for many special cases and these curves are here reproduced in 32 costly plates.

The application to the theory of the top is most interesting. When Prof. Klein of Goettingen visited Princeton University in October, 1896, he was asked to

delivered a course of lectures before the American Mathematical Society; he chose for his subject the Theory of the Top. One of the most recent works from the press of B. G. Tuebner of Leipsic is the first part of a treatise on the same subject by Prof. Klein. This dissertation was suggested by Klein and developed under his guiding hand. This is sufficient assurance that the work is up to date. That it possesses real merit is also vouched for by the fact that this thesis won for its author from the University of Goettingen the degree of Doctor of Philosophy, *magna cum laude*.

Although this work was written before its author became a Kansan, it reflects credit upon the state and the state institution which she represents.--H. B. N.

PLATE I.

Plate I. Figs. 1a, and b, Premaxillary of *Protosphyræna* sp. nov. natural size:

Figs. 2a, and b, Outline and external markings of rostrum of *Protosphyræna bentoniana* Stewart. The first natural size, the second reduced to one-fourth.

Figs. 3a, and b, Maxillary, mandible, and end view of predentary of *Saurocephalus dentatus* Stewart. One-half natural size.

Figs. 4a, and 4b, Internal view of maxillary and mandible of the same.

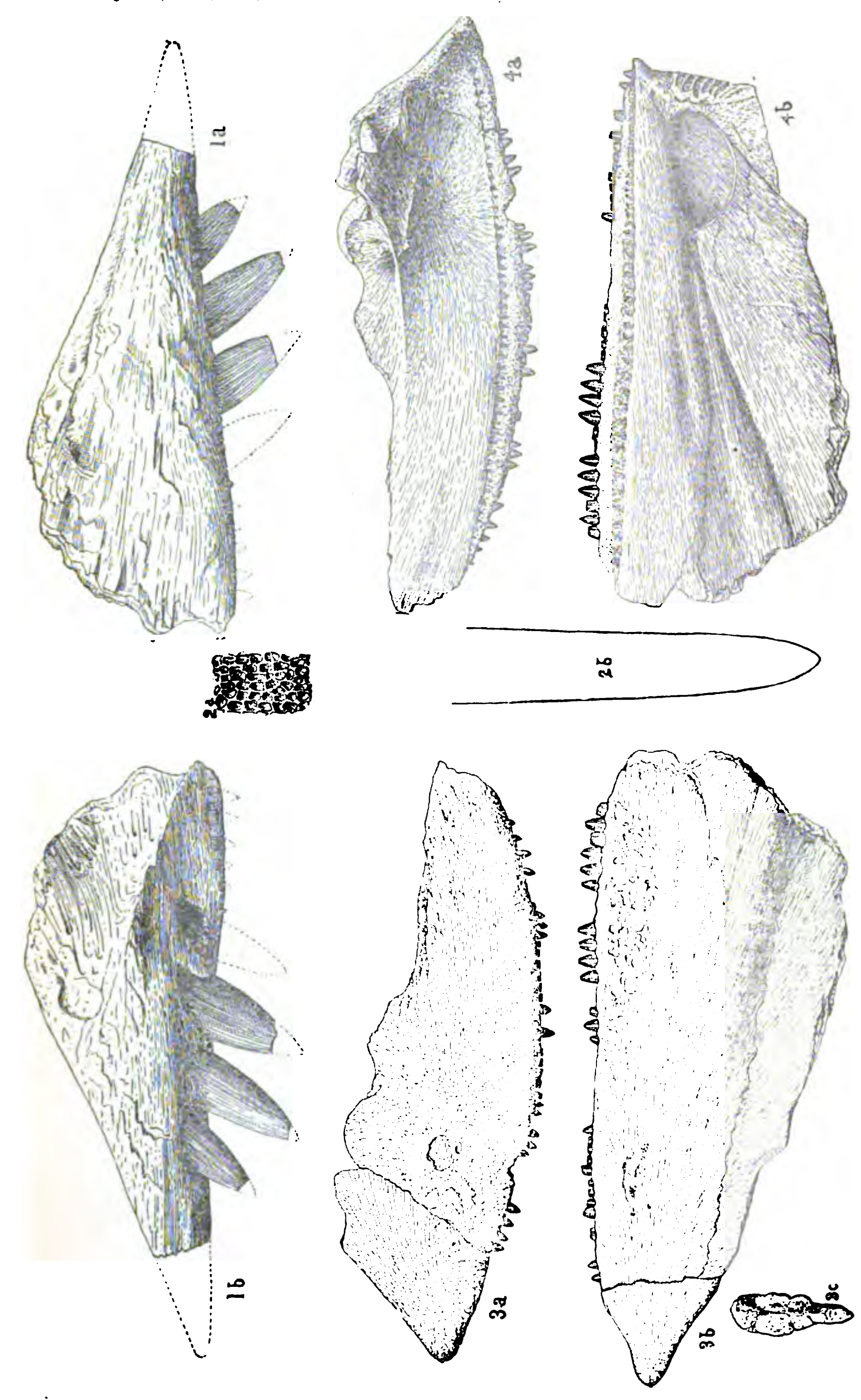

1a
4a
4b
2b
1b
3a
3b
3c

PLATE II.

Plate II. Figs. 1a, b, and c, External and internal views of maxillary, and external view of predentary of *Daptinus broadheadi* Stewart. Two-thirds natural size.

Fig. 2, Dentary of *Portheus lowii* Stewart. Two-thirds natural size.

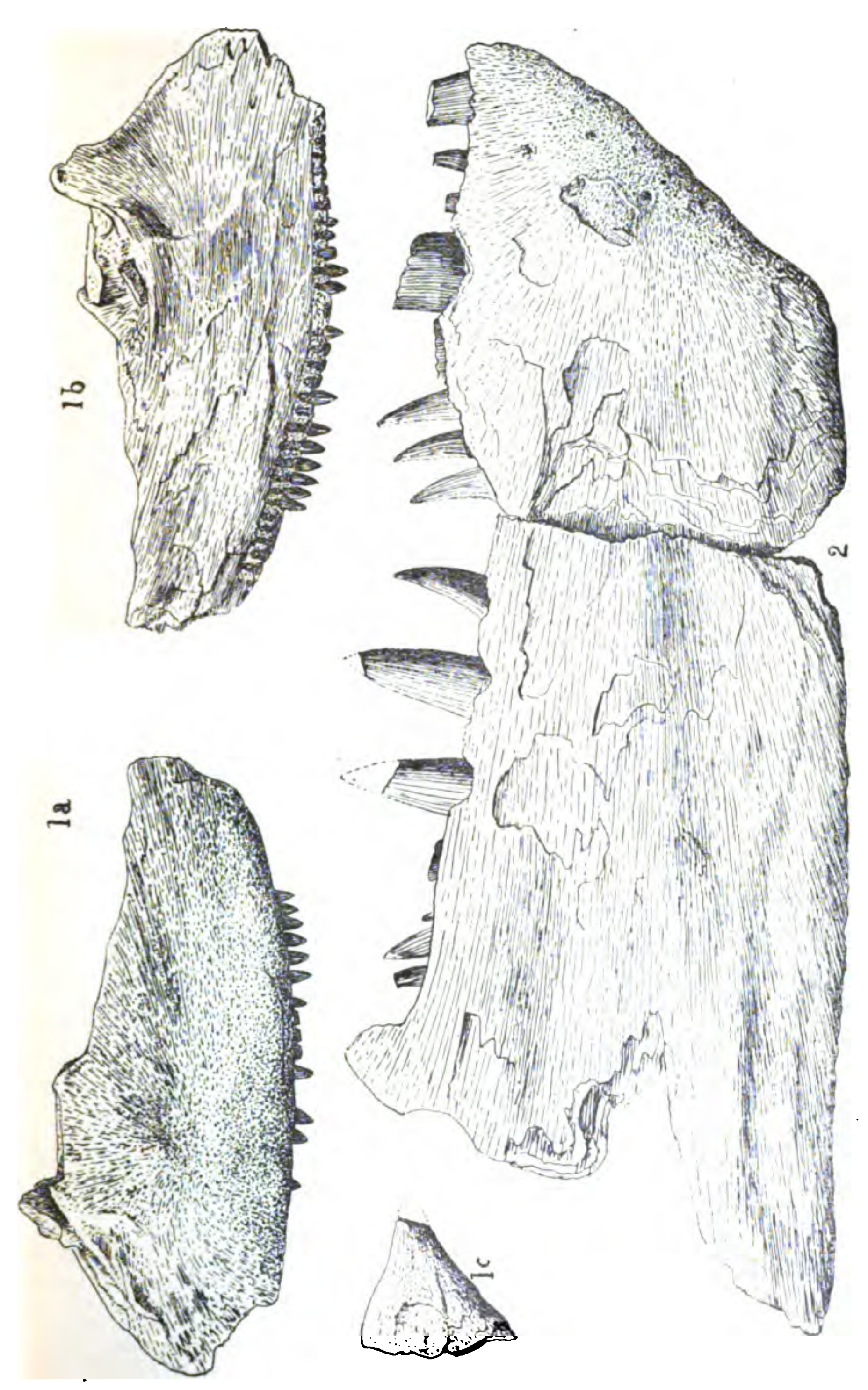

1b
1a
1c
2



Fig. 1.

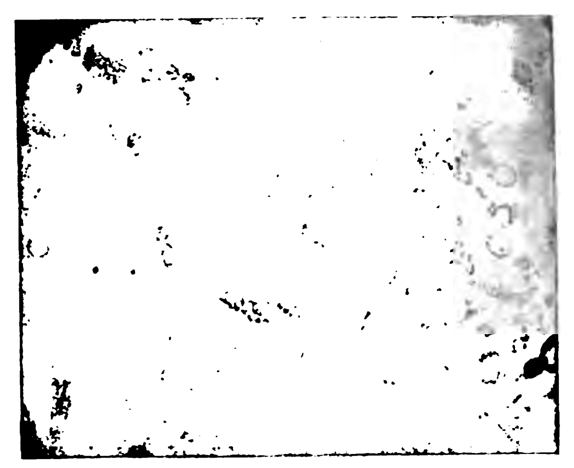


Fig. 2.

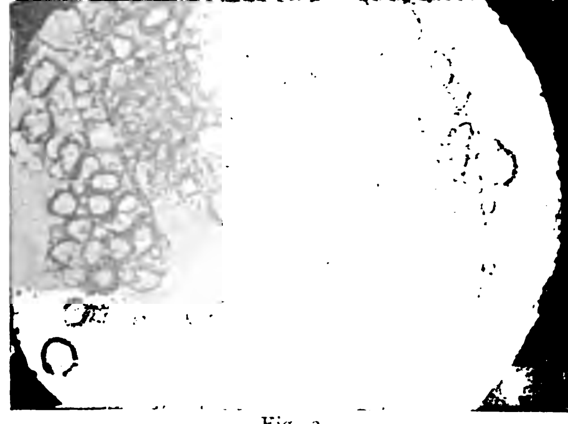


Fig. 3.

ADULTERATIONS OF BUCKWHEAT FLOUR.

Photomicrographs by C. E. McClung and M. A. Barber.

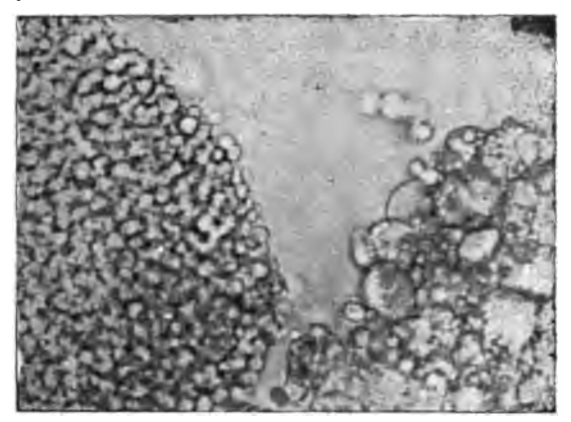


Fig. 4.

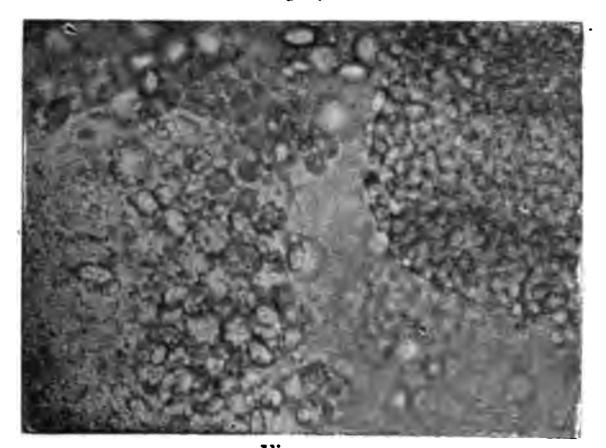


Fig. 5.

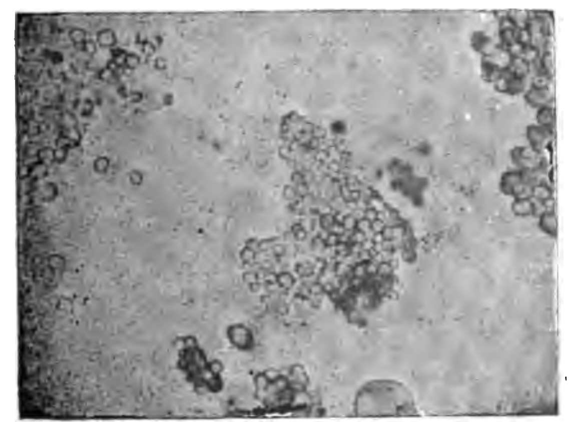


Fig. 6.

ADULTERATIONS OF BUCKWHEAT FLOUR.

Photomicrographs by C. E. McClung and M. A. Barber.

Vol. VII. APRIL, 1898. No. 2.

THE KANSAS UNIVERSITY QUARTERLY.

SERIES A:—SCIENCE AND MATHEMATICS.

CONTENTS.

PUBLISHED BY THE UNIVERSITY

Lawrence, Kansas.

Price of this number, 50 cents.

Entered at the Post Office in Lawrence as Second-class Matter.

ADVERTISEMENT.

THE KANSAS UNIVERSITY QUARTERLY is maintained by the University of Kansas as a medium for the publication of the results of original research by members of the University. Papers will be published only on recommendation of the Committee of Publication. Contributed articles should be in the hands of the Committee at least one month prior to the date of publication. A limited number of author's *separata* will be furnished free to contributors.

Beginning with Vol. VI the QUARTERLY will appear in two Series: A, Science and Mathematics; B, Philology and History.

The QUARTERLY is issued regularly, as indicated by its title. Each number contains one hundred or more pages of reading matter, with necessary illustrations. The four numbers of each year constitute a volume. The price of subscription is two dollars a volume, single numbers varying in price with cost of publication Exchanges are solicited.

Communications should be addressed to

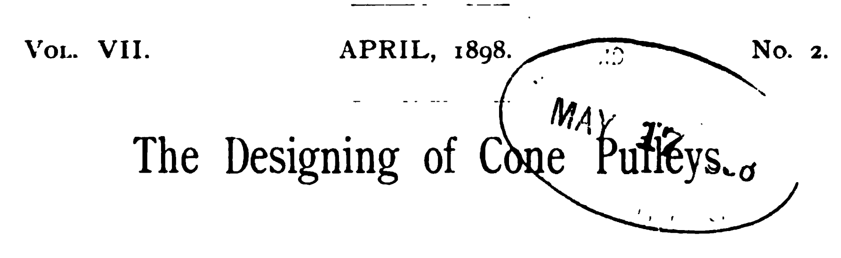
W. H. CARRUTH,
University of Kansas,
Lawrence.

This Journal is on file in the office of the *University Review*, New York City

JOURNAL PUBLISHING COMPANY
LAWRENCE, KANSAS

KANSAS UNIVERSITY QUARTERLY.

VOL. VII. APRIL, 1898. No. 2.



The Designing of Cone Pulleys.

BY WALTER K. PALMER.

INTRODUCTION.

Probably no other minor operation of machine designing involves such a complex mathematical analysis as the apparently simple one of proportioning a pair of cone pulleys.

The question of determining a single pair of pulleys to give a desired velocity ratio for their shafts, is so elementary and so easily solved by the simplest application of arithmetic, that it is difficult at first to realize that there can be anything at all to make impossible an equally simple treatment of the problem of a series of pulleys on one shaft, paired to run with a corresponding series on another, which constitute what are commonly called "cone," or "step cone" pulleys—the several pulleys of each being the "steps."

But the one condition which must be observed when proportioning the series of steps of a cone pulley, and which is not imposed in the case of a series of independent pairs of pulleys—that the *same belt* must fit with an equal degree of tension on each one of the pairs of the series—introduces complications which make the problem a most difficult one for exact solution; and one which, it is believed, has not yet been treated in full by an exact method, either analytical or graphical. At least no method, not involving some kind of an approximation, or tentative process, has been offered, which is of a satisfactory form to use in the course of every day practice.

A purely analytical solution is not to be expected, owing to the form of the equations, as will appear. And such a solution is not

so much to be desired as just the right kind of a graphical construction. The form of this construction should be so simple that it can be drawn at once from memory for any particular case in hand, and with the simple drafting instruments, without the use of the irregular curve or any special appliance. And this construction must be so complete as to give *all* of the desirable features of a solution for every possible case of the problem, directly and with exactness. And it should be based on a non-approximate analysis.

These requirements are rigid ones, and ones which the general equation for the problem would seem to offer little promise of ever fulfilling. But it has seemed so highly desirable that there should be a solution conforming exactly to each of the restrictions named, that the question has been studied from every point of view in the determination to find a treatment which would not be a compromise in any particular, if such a treatment were in any way possible.

As the result, the present discussion of the problem is offered, with the deduction of a practical method, which, it is believed, embodies all of the desirable features at first determined upon.

THE PROBLEM.

The following is the problem: We should be able,

I. To assume any distance between centers of the shafts;

II. To choose the radius of a step on one shaft, and to get the radius of the corresponding step on the other, the two radii to be in a predetermined ratio. This can be done arithmetically, but should be included in the graphic process.

III. From this pair we should be able to have, at once, the length of belt required for the two cones. This length of belt is now a constant quantity, and must fit all the other pairs of steps about to be determined.

IV. Dependent upon this length of belt, we should now be able to obtain readily an indefinite number of pairs of radii, which will "run" to this determined length of belt with the same degree of tension.

V. From all these possible pairs which run to this length of belt, we should be able to select a certain pair of radii, which shall bear a definite ratio to each other.

In addition, we have from practical considerations that the series of speeds should form a geometrical progression, except in cases where particular reasons exist for having a certain definite speed at each step. This geometrical series of speeds is readily obtained if condition V is fulfilled.

Bearing in mind these five specific conditions, and the requirements as to the character of the solution desired, as already discussed, we may proceed to analyze the problem and derive a satisfactory treatment.

GENERAL ANALYSIS.

There are two general cases of the problem: I. Open Belts; II. Crossed Belts.

CASE I—OPEN BELTS.

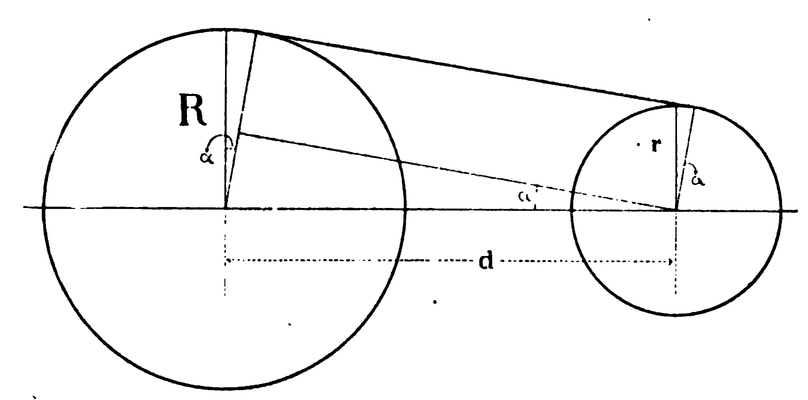


Fig. 1.

Let l=half length of belt.
d=distance between centers of shafts.
R=radius of pulley on one shaft.
r=radius of pulley on the other.
a="angle of the belt," as shown in Fig. 1.

From the geometry of the figure we have

$$l=\frac{\pi}{2}R+aR+d\cos a+\frac{\pi}{2}r-ar,$$

from which

$$l=d\cos a+\frac{\pi}{2}(R+r)+a(R-r). \qquad (1)$$

And

$$a=\frac{l-d\cos a-\frac{\pi}{2}(R+r)}{R-r}.$$

From the figure

$$\sin a=\frac{R-r}{d}$$

and

$$\cos a=\frac{\sqrt{d^2-(R-r)^2}}{d}.$$

$$\therefore \quad \frac{R-r}{d} = \sin\alpha = \sin\left(\frac{l - \sqrt{d^2-(R-r)^2} - \frac{\pi}{2}(R+r)}{R-r}\right) \qquad (2)$$

This is the equation for the relation between the two radii, length of belt, and distance between the centers of the shafts. It is transcendental, and plainly of such a form as to be of no value for direct use in working to the desired result. It serves merely to show the relation existing between these quantities, and the difficulty of attaining the desired form of solution.

CASE II—CROSSED BELTS.

Fig. 2 shows the other general case, that of crossed belts.

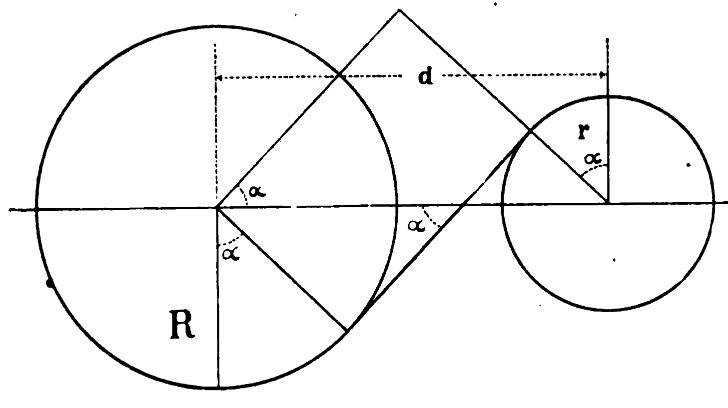


Fig. 2.

Treating this in the same way as the other case, we have for the half length of belt:

$$l = \frac{\pi}{2} R + \alpha R + d\cos\alpha + \frac{\pi}{2} r + \alpha r,$$

the sign of the last term being positive instead of negative as before. And, here,

$$\sin\alpha = \frac{R+r}{d}$$

and

$$\cos\alpha = \frac{1}{d}\sqrt{d^2-(R+r)^2}.$$

From which we have

$$l = d\cos\alpha + \left(\frac{\pi}{2} + \alpha\right)(R+r); \qquad (3)$$

$$\therefore \ \frac{\pi}{2}+\alpha=\frac{l-d\cos\alpha}{(R+r)},$$

and

$$\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2}+\alpha\right)=\cos\left(\frac{l-d\cos\alpha}{R+r}\right);$$

$$\therefore \ \sin\alpha=\cos\left(\frac{l-d\cos\alpha}{R+r}\right)=\frac{R+r}{d},$$

$$\therefore \ \frac{R+r}{d}=\cos\left(\frac{l-\sqrt{d^2-(R+r)^2}}{R+r}\right). \qquad (4)$$

An inspection of equations (3) and (4), and Fig. 2, shows that this case of crossed belts does not present the difficulties of the other, and far more important case of open belts. For, if $(R+r)$ be kept constant, α, and hence l, will be constant. This means that we may proportion the first pair of steps of the cones by the simple arithmetical rule, and then any other pair of radii whose sum is equal to that of the first pair will serve for the radii of another pair of steps which the same belt will fit.

The length of belt is not thus given, but as this is of minor importance the proceeding just outlined would answer sufficiently well for all practical purposes. If neither case presented greater difficulties, there would be no occasion for an extended treatment of the problem. But as the case of open belts necessitates a special graphical process, the simpler case of crossed belts will be included in the same method, and a useful diagram analogous to that required for the first case presented.

COMPARISON OF EXISTING METHODS.

As the general relation of equation (2) for the case of open belts offered no possibility of a direct solution of the character required, a comparative investigation was made of the various ways in which the problem has been attacked, and of the character of the methods proposed by leading authorities.

The following is a reference list of some of the best methods heretofore used for treating the problem, with a brief note as to the character of each:

Unwin's "Elements of Machine Design" (new edition), page 373, calls for tedious calculations with approximate formulæ.

Rose's "Modern Machine Shop Practice," gives tables for finding the radii of the steps. Unsatisfactory to use.

Rose's "Complete Practical Machinist," gives a rule for the radius of a circle arc upon which the middle of the steps of the cone will lie, in terms of the length of belt. This necessitates calculating the length of belt for the first, or assumed radii, which is difficult except for cones just alike, with an odd number of steps each. Then when this is done there is no means of obtaining another pair of radii for the same belt, which shall be in predetermined ratio, except tentatively.

Rankine's "Applied Mechanics," page 457, uses approximate equations. Wholly unsatisfactory.

Weisbach, Vol. III, page 262; approximate equations.

Kent's "Mechanical Engineer's Pocket Book," page 874, gives an approximate graphical diagram. Not satisfactory in view of the five requirements discussed. Also gives approximate analytical treatment.

Robinson's "Principles of Mechanism," page 247, an approximate graphical method. Diagram inconvenient in use.

Reuleaux's "Constructor," H. H. Suplee translator, page 189. A *non-approximate* graphical treatment of great interest. The final figure, offered as a permanent working diagram for all cases of cone pulleys, approaches very nearly to an entirely satisfactory form. It, however, embodies two objections: 1st. A permanent diagram, with an irregular curve, does not appear to be as desirable as a simple construction which can be performed at any time from memory for any particular case; 2d. Unless the cones are to be alike, and have an odd number of steps, so that the radii of the middle pair of steps may be the assumed radii, with ratio 1 : 1, it is impossible to find the position of the reference line from which the other radii are to be determined for this length of belt, except tentatively.

Of all the methods examined, however, the graphical treatment of Reuleaux presents by far the greatest possibilities. Following this very closely, with all the desirable features of a complete treatment constantly in mind, it developes that by a slight yet very essential modification at the close of the discussion the desired method may be had in full.

It will be necessary, therefore, to follow the Reuleaux analysis, with no deviation whatever, up to the final step, where, by a special modification of the last figure, the clue to the new method is found.

THE REULEAUX ANALYSIS.

THE DISCUSSION.

The following is the discussion found in the translation of Reuleaux's "Constructor," page 189, essentially as given there, merely amplified somewhat for the sake of clearness. It is remarkable in that instead of attempting to eliminate the "angle of the belt" in some way, as is usually done, this angle is carried on through the discussion and used to a point where it easily disappears. The entire Reuleaux solution shows a wonderful insight into the relations of the problem and extreme ingenuity in dealing with them.

CASE I—OPEN BELTS.

Referring again to Fig. 1 we have for this case equation (1):

$$l = d \cos \alpha + \frac{\pi}{2}(R + r) + \alpha(R - r)$$

and the equation, $d \sin \alpha = R - r$.

Combining these we have the two equations for R and r, respectively:

$$R = \frac{l}{\pi} - \frac{d}{\pi}(\alpha \sin \alpha + \cos \alpha) + \frac{d}{2} \sin \alpha \qquad (5)$$

$$r = \frac{l}{\pi} - \frac{d}{\pi}(\alpha \sin \alpha + \cos \alpha) - \frac{d}{2} \sin \alpha, \qquad (6)$$

which differ from each other only in the sign of the last term.

In Fig. 3 draw AD and BC parallel and at a distance AB apart, equal d of the above equations. Draw AB, leaving the length of the rectangle undetermined as yet. Then draw the quadrant BE, with radius AB=d. Now, within the limits of this arc BE will lie all values of angle α, of equations (5) and (6), which can occur. For, from a physical consideration of the matter with the aid of Fig. 1, it is readily seen that α is limited by 0° and 90°. That is, at the limiting case in one direction, when the two pulleys are equal, or diminish to mere points, $\alpha = 0$; and when one decreases to $r = 0$ while the other increases to $R = d$, then $\alpha = 90°$. Now let α have any value, as ∠ EAP, Fig. 3. Draw PN perpendicular to AP at P, i. e. tangent to the arc BE at P. And make PN=arc PE. That is for any value of α, N is to lie on the involute EF, of the arc BE. Drop the perpendicular PM to AD, and draw NK perpendicular to PM. Draw RQ through N; perpendicular to AD.

Then from the geometry of the figure we have

$$AQ = AM + MQ = d(\alpha \sin \alpha + \cos \alpha), \qquad (7)$$

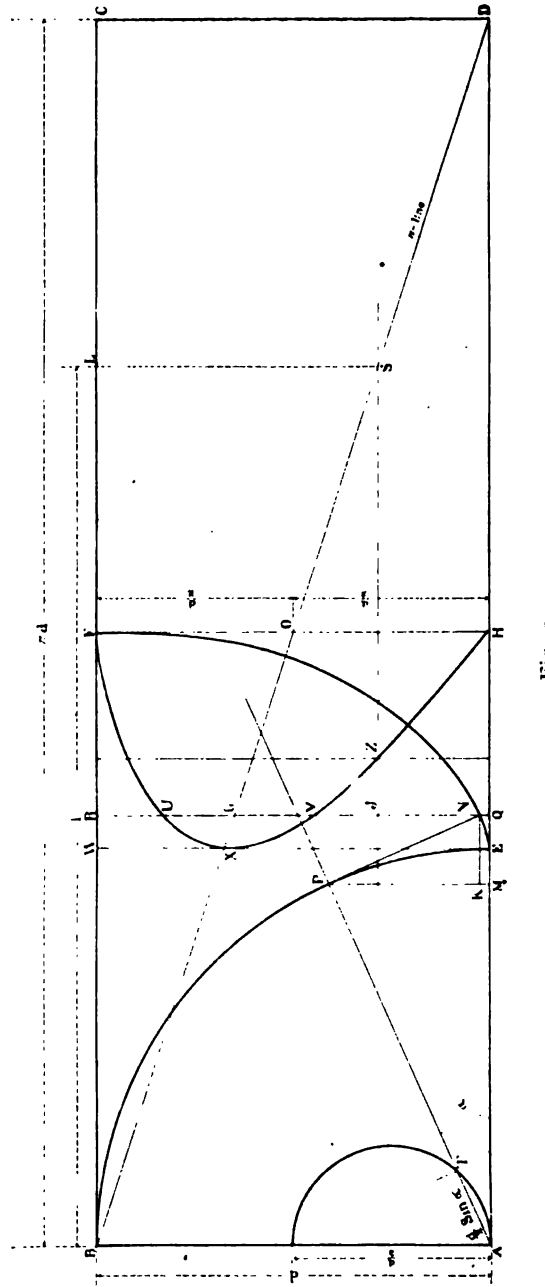


Fig. 3.

which is the middle term of each of the equations, except *not* divided by π.

For, $AM = d \cos \alpha,$

$MQ = KN = PN \sin \alpha = d\alpha \sin \alpha,$

$\therefore AQ = d(\alpha \sin \alpha + \cos \alpha).$

We have, then, all the values of this middle term (except π times too large) readily obtainable from this involute by varying α. We can now arrange to divide this expression by π for any value α may have, and thus secure the middle terms of equations (5) and (6) complete, as follows:

Take the point F where the involute cuts BC, and drop a perpendicular FH to AD. Assume the middle point O of FH and draw BO, producing it on to its intersection with AD. This line BO cuts RQ, already drawn, in a point G, and GR is equal the desired term

$$\frac{d}{\pi}(\alpha \sin \alpha + \cos \alpha).$$

For $BF = \frac{\pi}{2}.d$, by the property of the involute, and $FO = \frac{d}{2}$ by construction. Then

$$\frac{FO}{BF} = \frac{\frac{d}{2}}{\frac{\pi}{2}.d} = \frac{1}{\pi}.$$

Then by similar triangles

$$\frac{RG}{BR} = \frac{FO}{BF} = \frac{1}{\pi}. \qquad \therefore RG = \frac{1}{\pi}.BR.$$

$$\text{But } BR = AQ = d(\alpha \sin \alpha + \cos \alpha).$$

$$\therefore RG = \frac{d}{\pi}(\alpha \sin \alpha + \cos \alpha).$$

We notice, now, that the line BO is inclined so that any ordinate drawn down from BC to it is the $\frac{1}{\pi}$ part of the corresponding abscissa, as $GR = \frac{1}{\pi}.BR$. So, then, it is very easy to get the first term of each of the equations (5) and (6) by laying off $BL = l$, the half length of belt, when $LS = \frac{l}{\pi}$, and we have, at once

$$JG=JR-GR=LS-GR$$

$$=\frac{l}{\pi}-\frac{d}{\pi}(\alpha \sin \alpha+\cos \alpha).$$

This is assuming l to be known, when, in reality, it is involved in the other quantities, but this may be done while establishing the relations.

We now have the first two terms of the expression for R and r, shown in the length JG. So if now we add $\frac{d}{2}\sin\alpha$ to JG, and then subtract it, we have then the lengths of two lines representing R and r, respectively. This term $\frac{d}{2}.\sin\alpha$ may be had at once for any value of α by simply drawing a semicircle upon $\frac{1}{2}$ $\bar{AB}$ as diameter, as shown in Fig. 3. The intercept AT of the radius AP, at any position is then $\frac{d}{2}\sin\alpha$.

[This step differs from the corresponding one in Reuleaux's work, the result being the same. The semicircle is more satisfactory, giving at once $\frac{d}{2}\sin\alpha$ without drawing any additional lines.]

Lay off $AT=\frac{d}{2}\sin\alpha$ upward from G, and downward from G, thus determining points U and V, when we have

$$JU=R,$$

and

$$JV=r,$$

l being the correct half length of belt for these radii.

Now similar points may be gotten in just the same way for other values of α. And when all values possible have been used the result will be the smooth curve FUXVH, tangent to WE at X, which gives all possible pairs of radii which run together for any length of belt, the distance between centers of shafts being known or assumed equal d.

THE COMPLETE SOLUTION.

We now have in Fig. 3 a complete solution of the general problem for the cases of open belts, perfectly correct and complete in every detail in so far as the analysis is concerned, though as may be seen not yet of a form suitable for actual use.

Any length of belt as l, in the figure, may be assumed, and the reference line JS quickly found, when the pair of co-ordinates to

this curve FUXVZH give all the possible pairs of radii which will run correctly to this length of belt. For this particular length of belt only the portion of the curve between verticals through X and Z is useful, evidently. This portion gives all possible pairs of radii for this l, while for any other value of l more or less of the curve would be brought into service.

The entire curve would, plainly, come into use only for the theoretical limiting case of one step, R=d, and the other, r=o, when $l=\pi d$, or the length of the rectangle of Fig. 3. πd is the theoretical maximum half length of belt for any distance between centers.

Having l assumed, as shown, and the reference line JS, fixed, R and r can vary from the limit

$$\begin{cases} R=0 \\ r=\frac{l}{\pi} \end{cases} \text{ at Z to X, where } R=r, \text{ back to Z again where } \begin{cases} R=\frac{l}{\pi} \\ r=0 \end{cases}$$

including all possible values for this l.

Or if we have a given first pair of radii the reference line JS can be determined from them for their length of belt, and all other pairs of radii suitable for this length of belt will be at once shown. It is only necessary to take the difference of these radii and find the position of a vertical through the curve, such that the intercept VU equals this difference, Then measuring R downward from U, or r from V, the reference line JS is determined, and the length of belt can be shown at once by projecting the intersection S, up to L.

PRACTICAL DIFFICULTIES.

Now, while this diagram is remarkably complete in showing all of the intricate relations existing between the quantities of the problem, very clearly and perfectly, there are numerous objections to it, at once apparent from the standpoint of the draftsman who must deal with the problem.

Recalling the five requirements to which the desired solution must conform, which were determined upon in the beginning, page 42, we see that this diagram does not meet them fully. Investigating it closely in view of these requirements we have the following particulars in which each of them is, or is not, fully met by this diagram as now determined.

I. Any distance between centers may be assumed, but this would require plotting the irregular curve FXH, each time the method is used. Or else the scale each time would have to be

chosen to conform to the value of d on a permanent plotting, which would be inconvenient.

II. We cannot choose the first pair of radii in predetermined ratio conveniently on the diagram. This must be done aside arithmetically, or by a separate figure.

III. Having this first pair of radii, we can find the reference line and the length of belt, but only by a tentative operation, as has been explained. The difference of the radii (R—r), must be taken in the dividers and tried at various positions, till the location of a vertical is found such that this (R—r) laid off on it will just fit the two branches of the curve, as VU, Fig. 3.

IV. This condition is fully met. We have all the possible pairs of radii for the length l, found, easily attainable.

V. But this, the most important of the conditions, cannot be met at all except by many trials each time, and herein is the chief objection to the use of this figure. It is very necessary to be able to find succeeding pairs which shall be in definite ratio.

To overcome as many of these objections as possible, Fig. 3 is transformed, in the Reuleaux discussion, by replotting in such a way as to make it possible to obtain any number of successive pairs of radii, which shall be in predetermined ratio when once the reference line is fixed. But this transformed diagram embodies the two serious objections which have already been made to it, besides sacrificing the length of belt l, which, while not essential, it would be well to have retained: (1) It requires an irregular curve plotting, which necessitates either a permanent diagram, with the inconvenience of finding R and r in proportional parts, of d, or else a replotting each time. (2) The reference line for sucessive pairs of radii cannot be determined from the first or given pair, except tentatively, unless the case happens to be that of cones alike, with an odd number of steps, so the middle pair, with ratio 1 : 1 may be that taken for finding the reference line.

Considering closely these points of objection, and bearing in mind clearly just what is desired, it is seen that the one feature which is essentially unsatisfactory in both Fig. 3 and the Reuleaux transformation, is that both the radii of the pair R and r are measured in the same direction, and along the same line.

This makes the finding of an R and an r of definite ratio impossible in Fig. 3, and not as convenient as might be in the transformed figure.

If only R were measured *horizontally*, and r *vertically*, then it would be a simple matter to attain a desired pair of radii in definite ratio. This gives the final clue to the satisfactory form of diagram.

THE FINAL DIAGRAM.

A glance at Fig. 3 shows that there is no reason why the curve FVXH may not be replotted with the R's as abscissas, the r's as ordinates, or the reverse.

Fig. 4 shows the result of replotting Fig. 3 in this way from A, as the origin; the curves BFE being the resulting curve, replacing FXH of Fig. 3.

Simply construct the rectangular as before, with AB=d, and AD=πd, and draw the diagonal "π-line," BD.

Then taking A for origin, and AB and AD for co-ordinate axes, lay off from A horizontally any value of R, from Fig. 3, as QU, to U, letting the reference line be AD, that for l maximum. Then from U, upward, lay off the corresponding r from Fig. 3, QV, when the result will be a point P of the desired curve. Plotting a large number of pairs of radii obtained from drawing a series of verticals through curve FXH, at small intervals, there will result a series of points which will determine the curve BFPE.

This curve BFPE now gives all the possible pairs of radii from the maximum l, just as curve FXH did in Fig. 3, but here R is an abscissa and r an ordinate.

It is at once seen that the curve must be symmetrical with respect to a 45°-line through A, from the fact of R and r, exchanging values as they do, as can be seen in Fig. 3. QU was taken as R, and QV as r. Now in passing through the entire range of values for R and r, eventually R will become QV, and r, QU. This means that while we are plotting R and r, Fig. 4, r may also be laid off on AD as an abscissa, and R upward from it as the corresponding ordinate, thus at the same time securing another point P′ of the curve BP′FPE, plainly making it symmetrical.

CURVE BFE A CIRCLE ARC.

Having actually plotted the points to determine curve BFE, and being ready to join them by a smooth curve, the general character of the curve is seen to possess every appearance of a circle arc, the center of which would of course be somewhere on AF, since the curve is symmetrical to the 45°-line, though not at A.

A careful trial proved that the very best curve with which these plottings could be fitted was an arc of a circle the center of which was at point O on AF, below A, located as shown on the figure at a distance AO equal the diagonal of a square the sides of which are *one-tenth of AB, or d.*

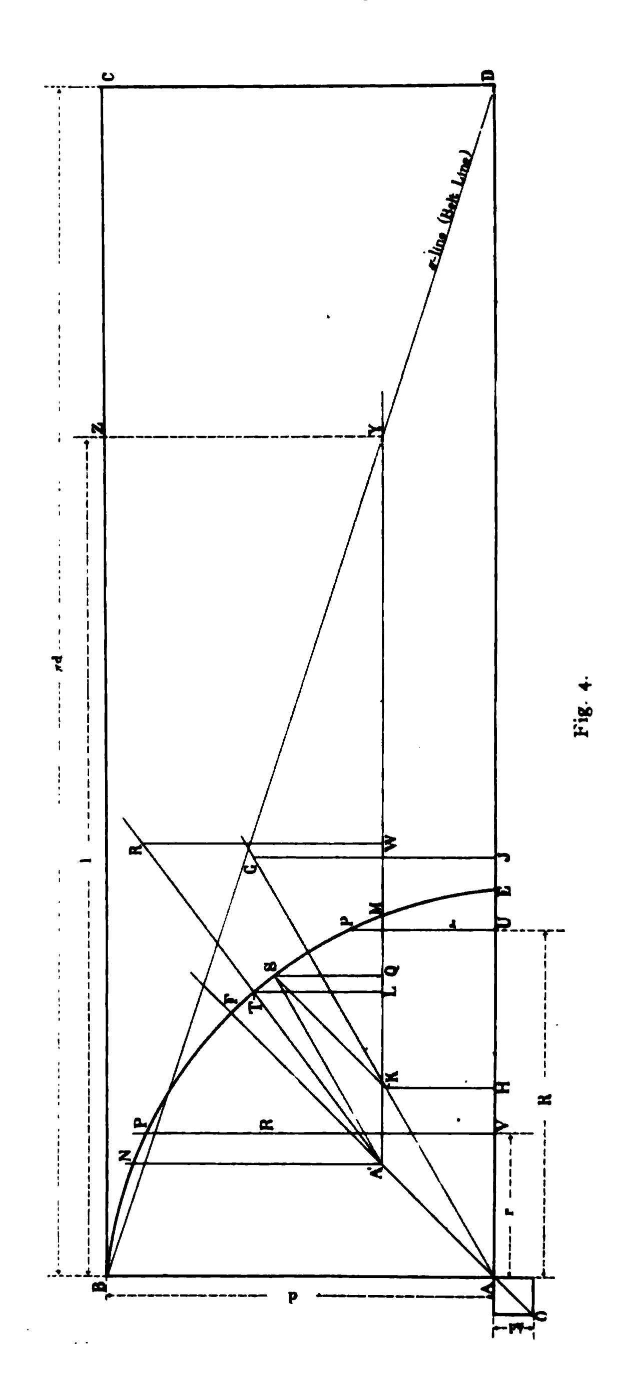


Fig. 4.

This discovery that this curve, giving all possible pairs of radii for the problem, can be so easily drawn by a simple circle arc, was of the utmost value, making it possible to attain completely the desired form of solution at first determined upon. Now this can be drawn for any distance between centers, d, to any suitable scale. And it remains a comparatively simple matter to bring in the relation of the length of belt and to locate the reference line for any case, and then to fulfil each of the five predetermined conditions, page 42.

APPLICATION OF NEW DIAGRAM.

If now we have a certain half length of a belt, l, it may be applied just as in Fig. 3, by laying off along BC, and projecting down to the π-line, drawn as in Fig. 3. Then A′ is the new origin, for R and r, and all the possible values of R and r for this l are given by the curve between N and M; this may be easily seen from comparison of the two figures. In Fig. 3 the application of l takes off a certain length QJ from the value of both R and r, for maximum l, leaving the correct values of R and r for this particular l. In the same way in Fig. 4 the same amount is taken from the values of R and the values of r, just as in Fig. 3, and the same amount as is there removed. And NM is the available part of the curve just as the portion in Fig. 3, contained between verticals, through Z and X, was there.

Now it remains to reverse this and from a pair of radii find the length of belt, and then to follow out the steps set forth in the five conditions, page 42.

If we have given a pair of radii, the new origin, A′, and hence the half length, l, can at once be determined for it by the following simple steps:

Lay off the R from A to H, and the r from H to K, and draw AK. Through K draw a 45°-line KS, finding S. Then through S draw back SA′, parallel to KA, thus locating A′, the new origin, and A′N and A′M the new axes. Producing A′M to the π-line, l is seen at once.

The reasons for this are plainly evident. The new origin A′ must be so located that this particular R and r will just fit the curve, when measured from it, that is be co-ordinates of a point S, of the curve, when A′ is the origin. We have simply located A′ so this will be true, having made triangle A′SQ = AKH.

Now with the new origin A′ determined, any other pair of radii suitable for this half length of belt l, can immediately be had from

the co-ordinates of the portion of the curve limited by the newly determined axes A'N and A'M.

And if a pair of a certain ratio be desired, it can be had at once by drawing a line radial from A', so that any ordinate of it, as RW, is to the corresponding abscissa, A'W, as the given ratio. Then the co-ordinates of the point T, where this line cuts the curve, are the desired pair of radii.

SOLUTION COMPLETE.

By way of summary, we may now review the five predetermined conditions to which the solution was to comply, and see that each is fully met.

I. We may deal with any distance between centers and use any desired scale; for the rectangle, Fig. 4, can be constructed with AB equal any value of d, and the curve BFE drawn at once, with a circle arc, the center of which is at C, AC being the diagonal of a square, the sides of which are $\frac{1}{10}$ AB.

II. To secure one radius, and to find another, corresponding for a given ratio, simply draw a line AK from A, inclined so that any ordinate GJ is to its abscissa AJ as the desired ratio. Lay off AH equal to the given or assumed radius, anu HK is the other of the pair.

III. Now to fix the length of the belt for this pair, and to determine the new origin, draw, as already fully explained, KS, a 45°-line, and SA' parallel to KA, when A' is the new origin, and l the half length of the belt for this pair.

IV. All other pairs of radii which will run to this l, are now shown by the co-ordinates of the points of the part of the curve included between N and M.

V. To choose a certain pair, having a definite desired ratio, simply draw from the new origin A', A'R inclined so that any ordinate RW is to its abscissa A'W as the desired ratio, when A'L and LF are the radii sought.

We see, then, that every condition to which the solution was to conform is completely and exactly met in a very simple manner, making a fairly ideal treatment of this, an unusually troublesome problem.

ANALYSIS FOR CROSSED BELTS.

THE DISCUSSION.

For this case we may now follow a discussion analogous to that presented for the case of Open Belts, and derive a simple diagram for use.

This case is not considered graphically at all in Reuleaux's treatment of the problem, it being considered of minor importance. But since an easily constructed and very useful diagram for the purpose can be had readily, it would seem well to make the treatment perfectly complete, and deal with the entire problem by one general method.

For this case we have, from Fig. 2, page 44, the equation (3):

$$l = d \cos \alpha + \left(\frac{\pi}{2} + \alpha \right) (R + r)$$

and also, from the figure,

$$(R + r) = d \sin \alpha;$$

Substituting this value for $(R + r)$ we have:

$$l = d \cos \pi + d \left(\frac{\pi}{2} + \alpha \right) \sin \alpha \ (8).$$

We see now, as before noticed, that l is constant so long as is constant, and α will be constant when $(R - r)$ is constant.

When α is o, then

$$l = d$$

and $(R + r) = o$, that is each pulley vanishes to a point.

When

$$\alpha = 90 = \frac{\pi}{2},$$

$$l = \pi d$$

and $(R + r) = d$, which means that the pulleys just touch.

And this shows, too, that the maximum l, is the same as for the case of open belts, πd.

So now we may proceed to draw a very simple diagram exactly analogous to that used for the other case.

Draw AB, AD and BC, as before, making AB=d.

Now since the sum of the radii is to be constant, and since this sum equals d, for l maximum, it is seen at once that a 45°-line through B, BE, will in this case give all the possible pairs of radii for the problem, in just the same manner as the circle arc BFE of Fig. 4, in the preceding case.

The new origin for any particular value of (R+r) may at once

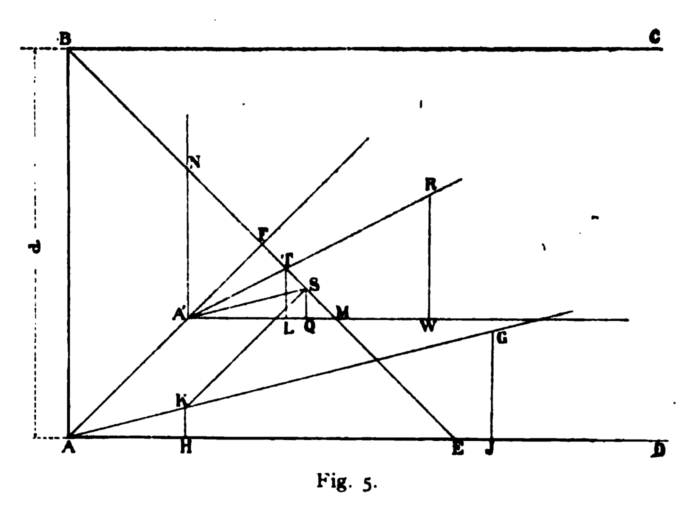


Fig. 5.

be found and any other pair of radii having any desired ratio, quickly obtained by just the same steps as in Fig. 4.

INTRODUCING LENGTH OF BELT.

This does not, as yet, take into account the length of belt. The length l, is virtually *fixed* when the new origin A' is located, but its value is not shown. As l is practically of minor importance the figure, thus far, would be sufficient. It is, however, convenient to have the belt length shown at once, and it should be shown for the sake of an entirely complete treatment. It is interesting, also, to note the form of the belt line in this case.

It will develop that here, just contrary to the other case, the line giving the radii, is a *straight line* while the *belt line* is a *curve* instead of the straight "π-line" of Fig. 4.

This curved belt line may be plotted for the purpose of studying its characteristics, in order to find if possible some simple equivalent for it.

To plot this belt curve we may proceed as follows:

Consider the expression for l, re-writing equation (8) we have:

$$l = d(a \sin a + \cos a) + d\frac{\pi}{2} \sin a \quad (9),$$

the terms of which may be obtained graphically in a way exactly similar to that employed in treating the case of open belts.

In Fig. 6, strike the arc BPE about the center, and draw the

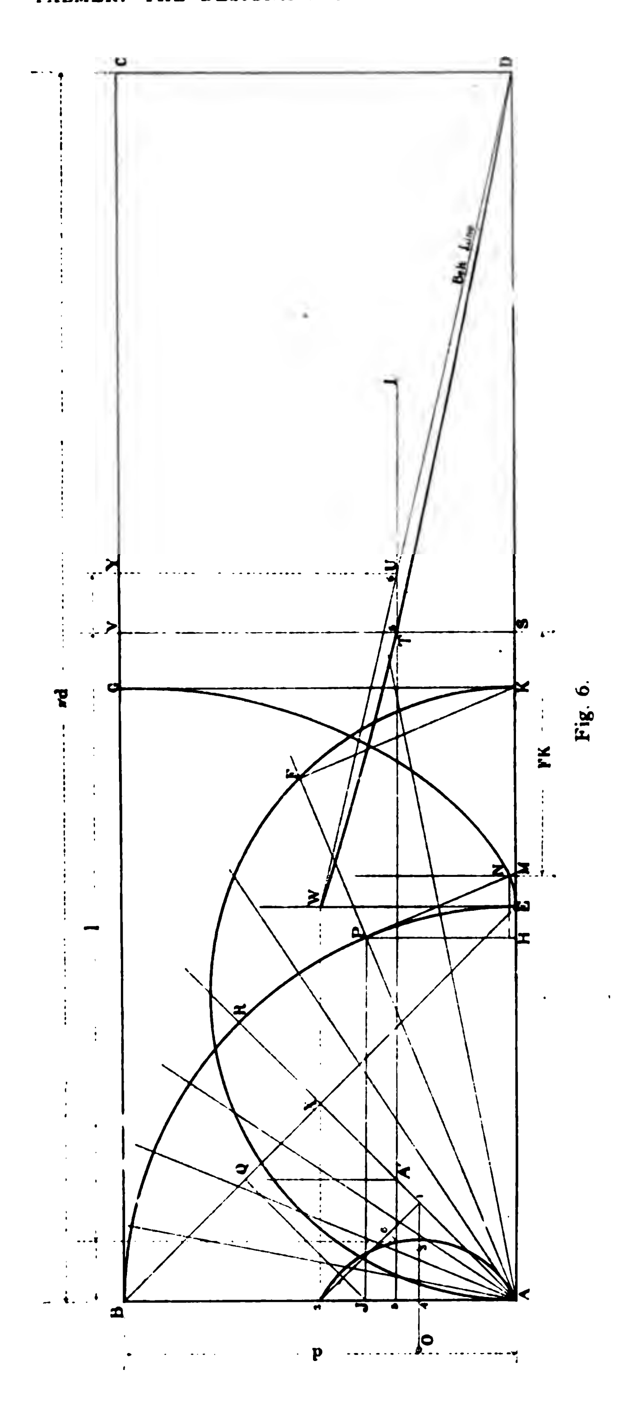


Fig. 6.

involute, ENG. Drop the perpendicular GK and on AK as diameter describe the semicircle AFC.

Now α, the angle of the belt, may be allowed to vary between its limits, 0 and 90°, and for each value of α taken, the new origin A′ and the value of the constant (R+r) can be seen at once. And then the constant length of belt for this new origin, and value of (R+r) can readily be had and plotted along the new horizontal reference line through A′ for the proper point on the belt line, as follows:

Consider any value of α, as $\angle$PAE. PH is now the value of (R+r), which must be constant. For PH=d sin α, and we know d sin α=(R+r) from Fig. 2.

Projecting P across to J, drawing JQ, or 45°-line, and dropping QA′, a vertical, down to the 45°-line AK, we have A′ for the new origin and A′L as the new reference line upon which it will be convenient to find the value for l, for this particular (R+r). PN, perpendicular to AF at P, gives the point N on the involute, through which drop the perpendicular NM. Then, as in the former case, AM=d(α sin α+cos α) which is the first term of equation (9) and FK is the other term, being

$$FK = d\frac{\pi}{2}\sin\alpha,$$

since $$AK = BG = d\frac{\pi}{2},$$

and $$FK = AK\sin\alpha;$$

$$\therefore FK = d\frac{\pi}{2}\sin\alpha.$$

Adding FK to AM we have point S, which gives T, a point on the belt line, from which the half length l is shown as BV.

Repeating this for succeeding values of α we have the curve WTD resulting, from which the length l can be obtained for any position of A′.

This curve is found to be of very gradual curvature, slightly convex downward. It is evidently limited by point W, vertically over E, and on a horizontal line through X, since the minimum value of l is d, when (R+r) vanishes, bringing A′ to X.

MODIFYING THE BELT LINE.

Examining the deviation of this curve from a straight line joining P and D, it was found after a series of trials that by the following slight addition to the diagram the straight line WD may replace the curve:

At the left of the figure draw the circle arc A62, the center of which is quickly located thus: Draw X2, horizontal; 21 a 45°-line; 14O a horizontal. Bisect 41 at 3, and mark O with O4=43. With O2 as radius draw the arc.

If, now, instead of beginning the measurement of each l from the vertical AB we measure from this circle arc, then the straight line WD gives the values of l and the curve may be abandoned. The length 6U will now be the value of l for the origin in position A'. And so for any position of A' the value of l is seen on the horizontal through the origin A', and is the part of this horizontal included between the arc A62 and the straight line WUD. Both this arc and the straight line are readily located and drawn, so that we now have for crossed belts a treatment exactly corresponding to that for the case of open belts, and equally as simple and complete.

THE FINAL DIAGRAM.

The essential portions of Fig. 6, constituting our useful working diagram, are shown in Fig. 7.

All lines can be easily and quickly drawn from memory with the simple drafting instruments. The rectangle is first constructed with AB equal the distance between centers, in any convenient scale, and the length BC=πd. Then with the T-square and 45°-triangle BE, AX, X2, 21, 1O, are at once drawn. Then point 3, the middle of 41 is marked, and O4 made equal 43, and the arc 26A struck. Then EW and XW are drawn, determining W, when WD may be drawn and the diagram is ready for use, just as the diagram for open belts is used, as already explained.

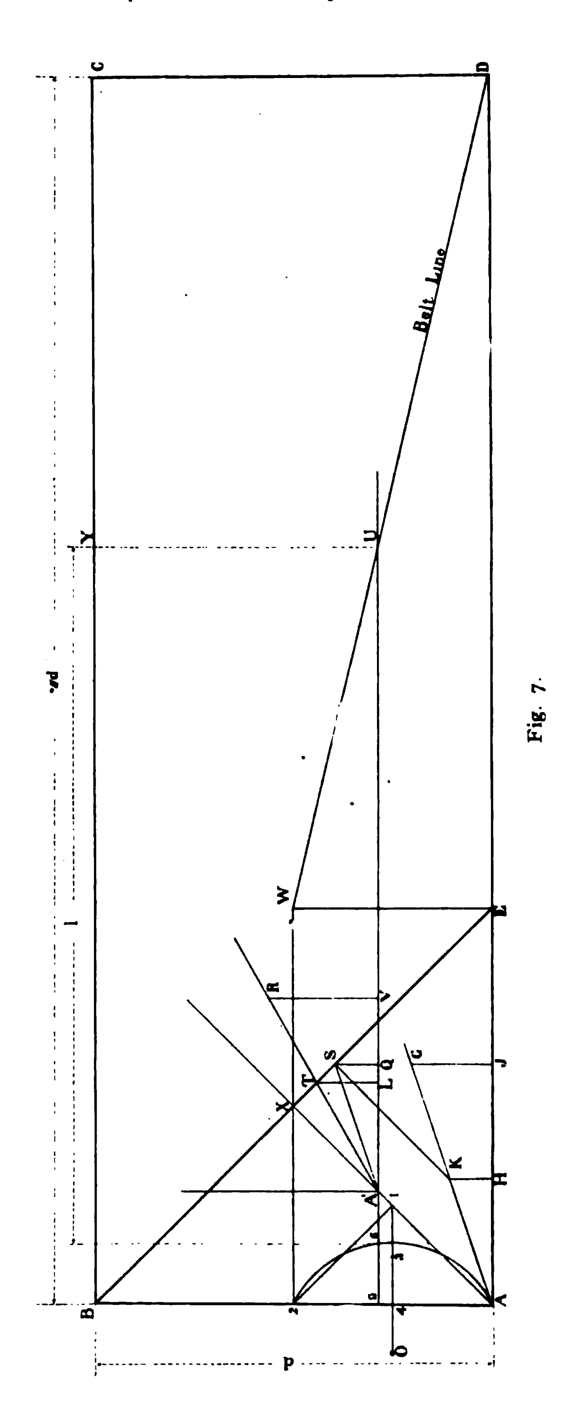


Fig. 7.

Rules for Proportioning the Steps of Cone Pulleys.

For ready reference, and for the use of those who may not care to follow the discussion presented in the preceding sections, the simple graphical method there deduced at length will now be taken as fully demonstrated and a brief rule given without proof, for each case of proportioning the steps of a pair of cone pulleys which may occur in practice.

REMARKS.

CONES ALIKE, OR UNLIKE.

Whenever the features of a design will admit it is always desirable to have the two pulleys of a pair just alike, so that the same pattern will serve for both. In such instances as a cone on a machine to run with another cone on the countershaft overhead, it is almost always possible to have the cones alike, and they should be made so. But, on the other hand, there are very many times when the nature of the machine on which the cones are to be used is such that it is impossible to make them alike.

SPEEDS IN GEOMETRIC SERIES.

In all cases, except when there is some very special reason why there should be a certain definite number of revolutions produced for the driven shaft, each time the belt is shifted from one pair of steps to the next the series of resulting speeds should form a *geometrical progression.*

That is, it is desirable that when the belt is shifted the number of revolutions of the driven shaft shall be a certain number of times (whole or fractional) the revolutions before; and that when it is shifted again to the next pair, the next number of revolutions will be the *same number of times* this speed.

This geometrical series is well established as always desirable, and should be attained whenever possible.

THE SIZE OE STEPS.

The relative size of the steps has no *apparent* relation, whatever, in general, to the proper series of speeds. If the steps of a cone are made with the same differences in diameter throughout the cones will, in general, be *wrong.* A pair of small three-step cones, with a large distance between centers, may have the same difference between the diameters of any two successive steps, but in no other case can this be true on both cones of the pair.

RELATIONS COMPLEX.

The relations of the problem are so intricate, made so by the fact that one belt must fit all pairs of steps with the same degree of tension, that it is impossible to figure correct diameters for cones, arithmetically; or to calculate them at all, except by rules and formulæ which are merely *approximately* correct.

FOLLOWING RULES, NON-APPROXIMATE.

The rules here given are the only ones which permit an entirely complete treatment of all cases, with resort to approximations. They are based upon a non-approximate demonstration and will be found to give full and satisfactory results under all conditions.

RULES TESTED.

To thoroughly test the reliability of these rules in practice the diameters for the cones of the foot lathe, shown in Fig. 10, were taken from the diagram carefully and a circular disc of heavy bristol card board was cut out accurately to the one one-hundreth of an inch for each step of each cone of the pair. Then the two discs of a pair were fastened to a large drafting board by means of a fine needle through the center of each, the needle points being accurately set a distance apart equal the distance between the centers of the cones on the machine. Then a length of very fine copper wire was placed around the two, representing the belt, and was drawn up to just enough tension to be straight between pulleys. Then each one of the pairs of discs, representing the pairs of steps, was substituted for the first, in turn, with the distance between centers exactly the same and the same fine wire representing the belt tried on each. The tension of the wire was tried in each case by "snapping" it between the pulleys. The result was that the tension of the wire was so nearly the same on each pair of steps that no appreciable difference could be detected whatever. And the length of the belt measured from the wire was the length shown by the diagram to within two one-hundredths of an inch.

For three years the rules here given have been used on designs of various characters with perfect satisfaction, both by the writer and others to whom they have been given.

OPEN OR CROSSED BELTS.

A design may call for a pair of cones with an "open" belt, which is usually the case; or a "crossed" or "twisted" belt may be required.

For open belts the diagram to be used is of one form and for crossed belts it is of another. But one is equally as simple as the other. And the one corresponds exactly to the other, so that if the use of one is understood the other may be used in just the same way. Both may be easily constructed with the ordinary drafting instruments, without the use of irregular curves or any special appliance. Being very simple both can be remembered easily after using a few times, so that they may be quickly drawn for any case in hand.

FORM OF DIAGRAMS.

The form of the diagram will be given for each of these two general conditions, and then the various cases of the problem will be taken up in turn and their treatment explained in reference to both diagrams, the two being so nearly alike and their use so similar.

NOTATION USED.

For convenience certain letters will be used to denote the quantities of the problem, and to avoid explaining them repeatedly they will be given here:

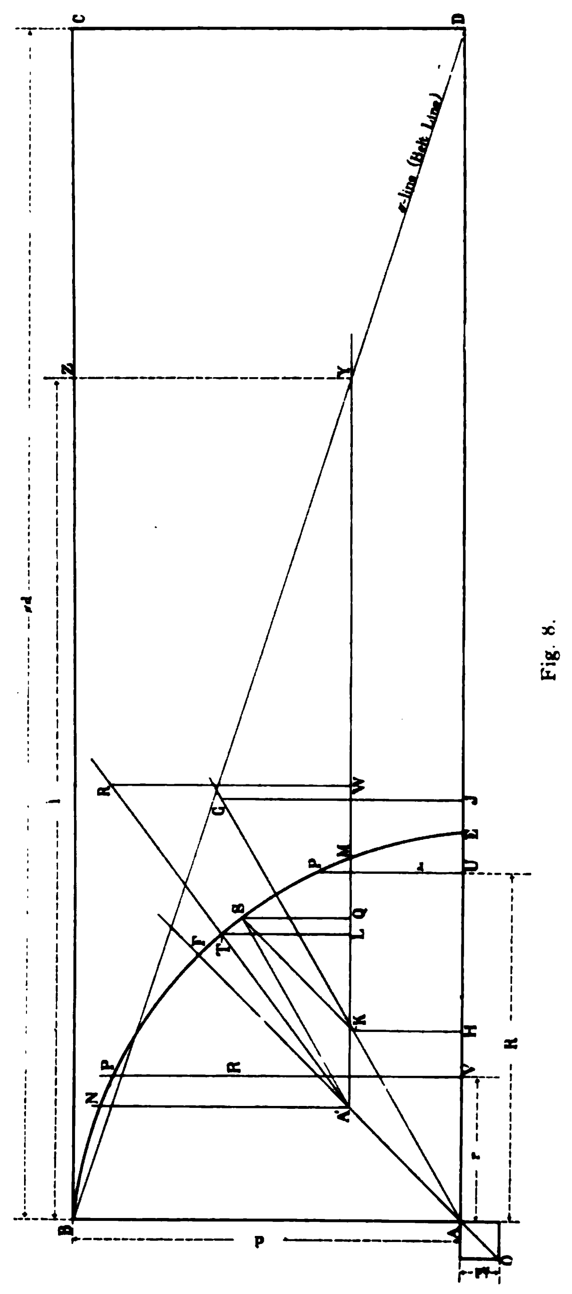
Let R be the radius of one step of the cone on the driving shaft;
and r the radius of the corresponding step on the driven shaft.
Let N be the number of revolutions the driving shaft makes;
and n the number which the driven shaft is to make when the belt is on this pair of steps.

Then let R_1, R_2, R_3, &c.,
r_1, r_2, r_3, r_4, &c.,
and n_1, n_2, n_3, n_4, &c., be corresponding values for the successive steps,
N being constant.

Let l be the half length of belt required,
and d the distance between centers, all in the same units and drawn to the same scale.

OPEN BELTS.

To design a pair of cones for an open belt draw first the rectangle ABCD, shown in Fig. 8, making AB=d the distance between centers of the shafts, using any scale most convenient. Make BC=πd, that is 3.1416 times the distance between centers. Then draw the "belt line" BD. Now draw the 45°-line FA, produced through C. Lay out the small square AC, shown, making the side of this square just $\frac{1}{10}$th of AB, the distance between centers. Then set


Fig. 8.

the center of the compass at C, and with the radius CB strike the arc BFE, and the diagram is ready to use.

CROSSED BELTS.

If dealing with a crossed belt draw the rectangle of Fig. 9, just

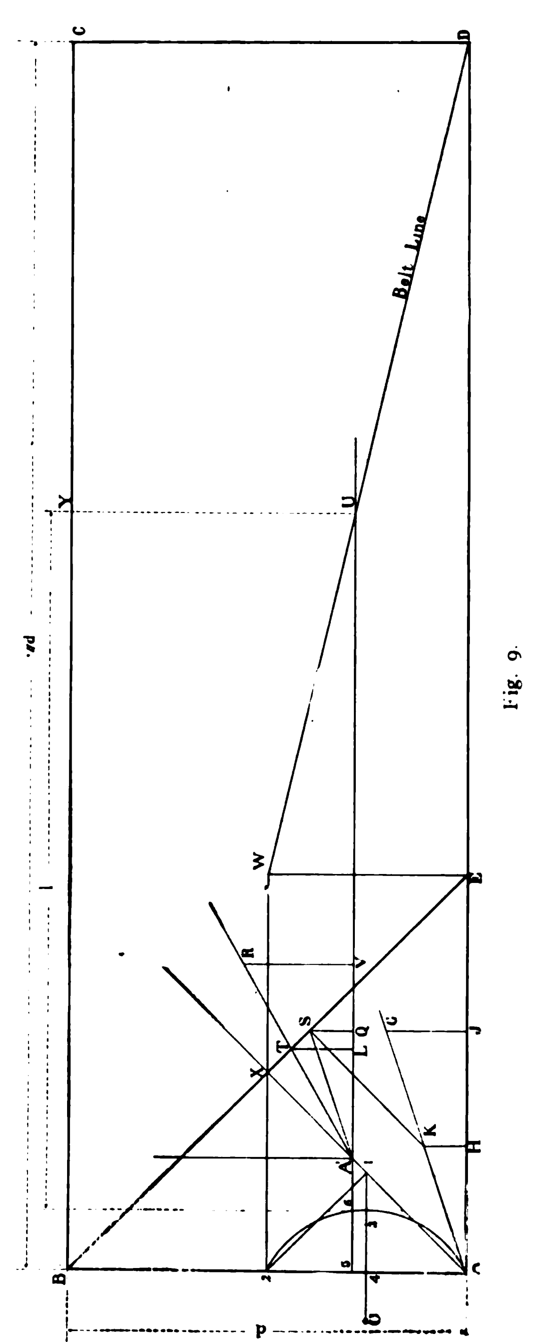


Fig. 9.

as for the case of open belts, making AB=d the distance between centers to any convenient scale, and BC=πd, that is 3,1416 times this distance between centers to the same scale. Draw a 45°-line, BE, from B, and a 45°-line, AX, from A, cutting BE at X. Draw a horizontal line through X and vertical from E, intersecting at W, and join W and D, thus obtaining the "belt line" WD.

Now from point 2, where WX produced cuts AB, draw the 45°-line 21. Through point 1 draw a horizontal line. Bisect 41 at 3, and with 43 mark off O from 4, making O4=43. Then with O as center and O2 as radius, draw the arc 26A, and the diagram is ready for use.

CASE I—Cones Unlike.

(a) SPEEDS ALL GIVEN.

When the speed of the driving shaft is given, and the speeds to be produced on the driven shaft are already determined by conditions of the design, and circumstances are such that cone pulleys of unequal size must be used, proceed as follows:

For illustration take the case of open belts. Construct the diagram as explained under the heading of "Open Belts," p. 65. (See Fig. 8.). From the nature of the design of the machine on which the cones are to be used determine what values are best to choose for the first pair of radii. If there are obstructions which the belt must pass, or the room for the cones is limited, this may require several trials. To do this draw a line from A, as AK, inclined so that any vertical to it as GJ, will be to its horizontal AJ, as $\frac{n_1}{N}$. That is, make AJ=N, and GJ=n_1 to any convenient scale. Then choose a size for R (or r may be chosen first) and lay it off from A to H with the scale used for AB. Then HK is the proper value for the other radius r, for this R, chosen. See if this meets the requirements of the machine. If not lay off another value for R and draw the vertical to the straight line for r. After a few trials a pair of radii will be found which will be of a suitable size for the requirements of the machine, and which will allow the belt to pass the obstructions, unless the design has in some way made this impossible.

This pair once found the other radii all depend on them. Suppose AH and HK to represent the pair R and r, found as just explained. Through K draw a 45°-line parallel to KA, and SA parallel to AK, finding A[1]. Now A[1] remains *fixed* for this particu-

lar pair of cones. Through A^1 draw a horizontal and produce it to its intersection with BD, when we have at once l, the half length of belt required for these cones, as shown.

Now having fixed A^1, the portion of the curve between N and M gives all the possible pairs of radii for steps which this length of belt will fit, horizontal measurements being the R's, and verticals the r's; and it only remains to pick out from all these possible pairs of radii those having the proper ratio to give the desired speeds.

This is quickly done thus: Take the next speed n^{11} and N the revolutions of the driving shaft. Lay off n^{11} from A^1 to W, and N up from W to R, using any convenient scale. Draw A^1R, and we have at once A^1Q for R^{11} and QS for r^{11} in the same scale as d and l, and the other radii. And so for each speed a pair of radii with which to draw the required pair of steps can be had at once from the curve BE.

If a case of crossed belts proceed in just the same way, using the straight line BE of Fig. 9 in place of the curve BE of Fig. 8 for the radii of the steps. The only difference is in finding the length of belt. Draw the horizontal through A^1 as before, and now the half length of belt, l, is the portion of this horizontal included between the intersection with the circle arc at point 6, and the point U on the "belt line" WD.

(b) SPEEDS TO BE IN GEOMETRICAL PROGRESSION.

Usually the speeds will have to be arranged to form a geometrical progression. Generally the end speeds will be given or determined upon independently, and the intermediate ones have to be adjusted to form this series. In this event if we are to have, say five, steps on the cones, we have known

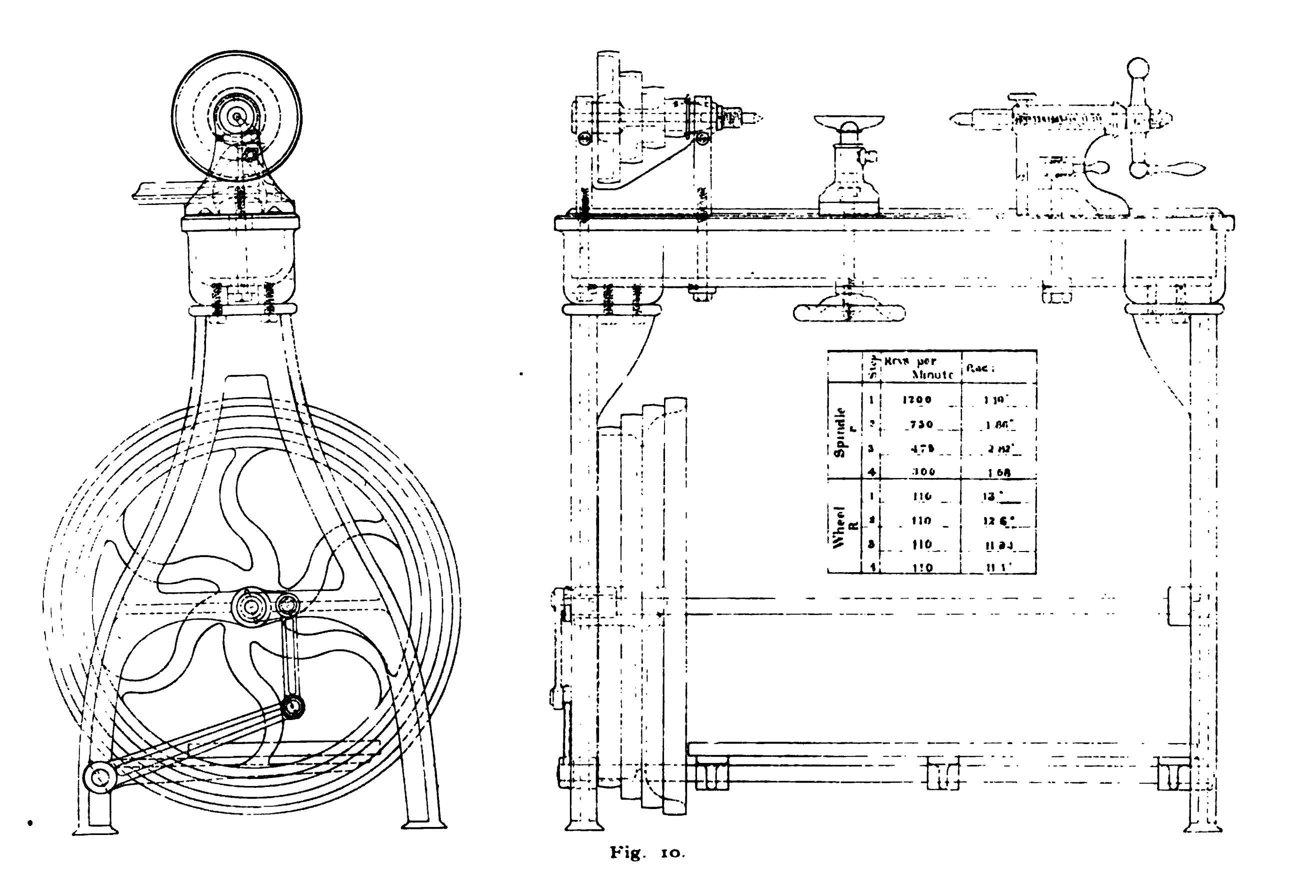
$$N, n_1 \text{ and } n_5.$$

And we know that the five speeds will be:

$$n_1, \; n_1a, \; n_1a^2, \; n_1a^3, \; n_1a^4 \; (=n_5),$$

if the series is to be a geometrical progression, 'a' being some multiplier. Then $a^4 = \frac{n_5}{n_1}$, and by use of a table of roots, 'a' can be found, and then each of the five speeds to the nearest convenient fraction of a revolution.

Now these values can be used as before, under (**a**), and the radii quickly found.



	Step	Revs per Minute	Rad.
Spindle r	1	1200	1.10"
	2	730	1.86"
	3	478	2.82"
	4	300	1.68
Wheel R	1	110	13"
	2	110	12.6"
	3	110	11.84
	4	110	11.1"

Fig. 10.

Fig. 10 shows two views of the assembly drawing of a foot lathe, the cones of which were designed just as explained. The fastest and slowest speeds were determined, and then the intermediate ones found as above.

With these values for n_1, n_2, n_3, n_4, and having determined independently what N should be the values of the radii were found by the means just explained in the preceding. It will be seen from the cut that it was necessary to proportion the cones in such a way that the belt would just miss the bed of the lathe. Several trials were made for the first pair of radii, just as under (a), in order to get the first pair of steps so that the belt would not conflict with the bed of the machine. Then the others came from the diagram readily, and the belt was found to just mill the bed when on any of the pairs of steps, the large driving wheel having been kept as small as possible.

CASE II—Cones Alike.

SPEEDS IN GEOMETRIC SERIES.

When the cones are to be alike,

$$R_1=r_4$$

$$R_2=r_3$$

$$R_3=r_2$$

$$R_4=r_1; \quad \text{(See Fig. 11.)}$$

and

$$\frac{R_1}{r_1}=\frac{n_1}{N}=\frac{r_4}{R_4}=\frac{N}{n_4},$$

$$\frac{R_2}{r_2}=\frac{n_2}{N}=\frac{r_3}{R_3}=\frac{N}{n_3},$$

$$\frac{R_3}{r_3}=\frac{n_3}{N}=\frac{r_2}{R_2}=\frac{N}{n_2},$$

$$\frac{R_4}{r_4}=\frac{n_4}{N}=\frac{r_1}{R_1}=\frac{N}{n_1};$$

From which

$$n_1 n_4=N^2,$$

$$n_2 n_3=N^2.$$

N is then the mean proportional between n_1 and n_4, the extreme speeds required for the driven pulley. If the pulleys are to have an odd number of steps the n at the middle pair would equal N. So now if the slowest and fastest speeds of the driven cone are

fixed by the conditions of the design, as is usually the case, N, the number of revolutions of the driving shaft or counter shaft, must be made the mean proportional between the extreme speeds. Simply multiply the extreme speeds together and extract the square root and the result is N.

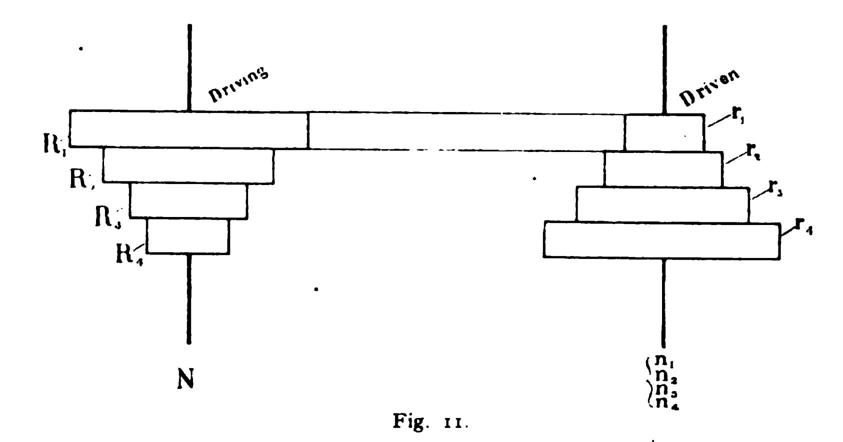


Fig. 11.

And besides this the speeds n_1, n_2, n_3, n_4 must form a geometrical series, so that

$$n_1 = n_1,$$

$$n_2 = n_1 a,$$

$$n_3 = n_1 a^2,$$

$$n_4 = n_1 a^3.$$

Then when n_1 and n_4 are the given extreme speeds

$$a^3 = \frac{n_1}{n_4},$$

from which 'a' can be found by use of a table of cubic roots, and then n_2 and n_3 figured.

Therefore, proceed as follows, there being four steps: Divide the fastest by the slowest speed and extract the cube root. If there are to be five steps extract the fourth root, if six steps fifth root, etc. With this result multipy the slowest speed. This will give the next highest. Multiply this now by the same multiplier and the result is the next speed in order. And so for all the intermediate speeds.

Now multiply the exteme speeds together and extract the square root, and this is the N, or number of revolutions the counter shaft should make.

Now construct the diagram for open or crossed belts. as the case may be. For illustration, take the diagram for open belts, Fig. 8. Lay off AJ = the number of revolutions n_1 and GJ=N, using any convenient scale. Then choose point K so that KH and AH will be of suitable size for the radii, r_1 and R_1, respectively.

Then $$AH=R_1=r_4,$$ $$KH=r_1=R_4,$$

so two pairs of steps can be drawn. Through K draw KS a 45°-line, and through S draw SA′ parallel to KA, thus locating A′. Produce a horizontal through A′ to the belt line, and l, the half length of belt required, is shown at once in the same scale.

Now from A′ lay off A′W=n_2 and WR=N, using any scale. Join R to A′ and point T gives TL=r_2 and A′L=R_2.

Then $$TL=r_2=\text{ also } R_3$$ $$A'L=R_2=\text{ also } r_3.$$

So now all the radii are determined and the steps may be drawn. If there were more steps the proceeding would be just the same. If there should be an odd number of steps one pair of steps would be equal, and their radii would be found given by point F. If the belt be crossed the operations are just the same, using the diagram of Fig. 9, where a straight line replaces the arc BE.

The only difference is in reading off the length of belt. In Fig. 9, for the position A′ the half length of belt is 6U, the position of a horizontal through A′, which is included between the arc and the straight belt line WD.

CASE III—Special Conditions.

SPECIAL RULES FOR SMALL THREE STEP CONES.

OPEN BELTS.

When the cones for an open belt are to have three steps each, with speeds in geometrical progression, and the distance between centers is to be great in proportion to the size of the cones then the steps may be figured by arithmetic, and this is the only case of cones for an open belt which can be. In general it is impossible to deal with cones for an open belt correctly in any way, except by the regular use of the diagram.

This one exception is due to the fact that when the distance between centers in Fig. 8 is great and the radii for the first pair of steps are small, we have a very large circle, BE, of which but a

small portion near point F is used. (Fig. 12 shows the conditions for this case.) This portion is so nearly a straight 45°-line, perpendicular to AF, that such a line may be used satisfactorily. This would mean an equal difference between the radii (or diameters) of the steps for a cone with three steps.

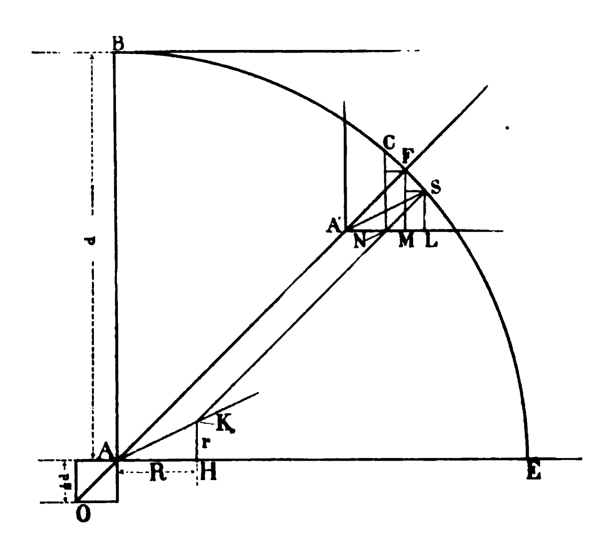


Fig. 12.

So it is only necessary to figure a pair of radii, R_1 and r_2, of a suitable size and so that $\frac{R_1}{r_1} = \frac{n_1}{N}$.

Then $R_1 =$ also r_3,

$r_1 =$ also R_3;

and $\frac{R_1 + R_3}{2} = R_2$, and $\frac{r_1 + r_2}{2} = r_2$.

CROSSED BELTS.

For a crossed belt any three step cone with speeds in regular progression may be figured thus, whether great or small in proportion to the distance between centers, for in the diagram for crossed belts a 45°-line replaces the circle arc. But only a three step cone can have a constant difference between the diameters of successive steps if the speeds are to be in geometrical progression.

Any pair of cones for crossed belts may be figured arithmetically, but for any case except that above explained for a pair of three

step cones it is not nearly so easy or satisfactory to do so as to use the diagram provided for the purpose.

LENGTH OF BELT.

According to these special rules for three step cones no attention is paid to the length of belt. It may be figured quickly for this particular case as follows:

Multiply the radius of the middle step by 3.1416 and add the distance between centers. This gives l the half length of belt.

CONCLUSION.

Any case of cone pulley designing will be found to fall directly under one or the other of the preceding cases and can be treated correctly by following the rules there given, even though the proofs are not known.

The rules can be used with more satisfaction, however, if the discussion which has been presented be followed first. With the full understanding of the intricacies of the problem and of the steps of the discussion leading up to the final conclusion, it will be much easier to appreciate the significance of the rules and to use them correctly. Hence it is urged that all who have to deal with the rules follow first through the full discussion, using, afterward, the rules for reference.

The Behavior of Kinoplasm and Nucleolus in the Division of the Pollen Mother Cells of Asclepias Cornuti.

BY WILLIAM C. STEVENS.

With Plate V.

In studying the development of the flower of Asclepias cornuti I was struck with certain pronounced characteristics of the kinoplasm and nucleolus in the pollen mother cell which seem to me to throw some light on the functions of those structures.

The functions of the nucleus as a whole have, to a certain extent, been made out with a fair degree of certainty. There is no doubt that the nucleus is the bearer of the inheritable qualities. The processes of fecundation and physiological experiment make this certain.[1] The nucleus also has important functions connected with processes which involve chemical changes, such as the formation of starch, the production of secretions[2] and possibly of proteids,[3] and the formation of plasma membrane and cell wall.[4] Regarding the specific functions of the different structures of the nucleus it seems clear that one purpose of the nuclear membrane is to enclose the nuclear sap so that it may not be lost to the nucleus by diffusion, and to keep the nuclear framework and nucleolus from being dissociated and drawn out through the cell by the movements of the protoplasm or during the translocation of the nucleus. By the action of reagents the nuclear wall may be made to shrink away from the surrounding cytoplasm, thus showing that the former may have a selective action in the passage of substances to and from the nucleus.[5]

It is possible, also, that the nuclear membrane is concerned in

1 O. und R. Hertwig, Die Zelle und die Gewebe.
2 Haberlandt, Ueber die Beziehungen zwischen Function und Lage des Zellkernes bei den Pflanzen pp 116-122.
3 Strasburger. Zellbildung und Zelltheilung, p 373.
4 Tangl, E., Zur Lehre von der Kontinuitaet des Protoplasmas im Pflanzengewebe. (Sitzungsber. d. Kgl. Akad. d. Wiss. zu Wien. Mathem.-Naturwiss. Klasse. Bd. 90. Abt. I. 1885. p. 10.) Also Haberlandt. l. c., and Klebs. Beitraege zur Physiologie der Pflanzenzelle. (Untersuch. aus dem botan. Institut in Tuebingen. Bd. 2, p. 489.
5 Guignard, Nouvelles recherches sur le noyau cellulaire. (Ann. d. sc. nat. Botan. Ser. VI. T. 20. p. 310.)

the reception and transmission of stimuli. The fact that it is necessary for the nuclear membrane to be dissolved away during mitosis is evidence of its efficiency in demarking the nucleus as a distinct organ of the cell. It is, therefore, not necessary in accounting for the action of the nuclear membrane during nuclear division to anticipate for it any special function at this time, and it is highly probable that it undergoes only enough change to render it soluble, and that the substance of it is put to immediate use in the formation of the membranes of the daughter nuclei. It is possible, however, that the substance of it may take part in the formation of the spindle[1] and later enter into the construction of the membrane of the daughter nuclei.

The nuclear framework, from which the nuclear thread and the chromosomes successively arise, is unquestionably that part of the nucleus upon which the important duty of bearing the inheritable qualities specifically devolves. This is shown by the extreme exactitude with which the substance of the nuclear thread is divided in the formation and division of the chromosomes.

The character and behavior of the nucleolus do not make its function so evident as the functions of the nuclear thread and membrane appear. Although the nucleolus is a structure which is very rarely absent in the resting nucleus there is no evidence that it has a function to perform at such a time other than possibly the nutritive one of contributing to the formation of cell walls and starch grains.[2]

The conception is a fairly well grounded one that the nucleolus is reserve material to be used in the formation of new structures which arise during mitotic cell division. If this is a fact the preservation of the nucleolus within the nuclear membrane points to the nucleolus as a substance of great importance for the processes of mitosis, requiring the resting nucleus for its formation, and therefore not capable of being provided after nuclear division begins. The major part of the evidence taken from plants seems to show that the nucleolus is a stimulant and nourishment in the formation of the kinoplasm. Strasburger gives the following data for this conclusion: The enclosure of the nucleoli in the daughter nuclei after cell division appears to result in a diminution of the kinoplasm. The formation of the kinoplasmic spindle and the solution of the nucleolus occur simultaneously. After the solution of the nucleolus that portion of its substance which is not used in the

1 Flemming. Neue Beitraege zur Kentniss der Zelle. II Teil. (Arch. f. mikr. Anat. Bd. 37. p. 685.)
2 Strasburger, Ueber Kern und Zelltheilung im Pflanzenreiche, pp. 195-200.

formation of the spindle is still seen to be attached to it as nucleolar substance, and this occurs not only in the connecting fibres but also in the kinoplasmic radiations throughout the cytoplasm. By the use of the safranin-gentiana violett-orange staining method the violet color of the kinoplasm begins to decrease at the time when the nucleolar substance reappears in the daughter nuclei. In the formation of the plasma membrane about ascospores the nucleus remains in kinoplasmic connection with the membrane until the latter is fully developed, and this Strasburger considers to be evidence that there is an intimate relation between the substance of the nucleus and the kinoplasmic membrane, the nucleolus being the structure of the nucleus which is particularly concerned. Strasburger gives his conclusion from the above evidence in the following words: "Zwischen Kern und Kinoplasma besteht also, allem Anscheine nach, ein sehr nahes Verhältniss, und ich gründe auf dasselbe die Ansicht dass die Nucleolarsubstanz einen Reservestoff repräsentirt, aus dem das Kinoplasma nach Bedarf schöpft und durch dessen Aufnahme seine Thätigkeit erhöht wird."[1]

The fact that the kinoplasm is seen to arise during nuclear division in all parts of the cytoplasm[2] is good evidence that it is distributed equally throughout the cytoplasm when nuclear division is not taking place, although kinoplasm and trophoplasm are indistinguishable during the resting stage of the nucleus, excepting when successive nuclear divisions rapidly follow each other.[3]

Trophoplasm and kinoplasm probably remain distinct from each other, although it is not impossible that one may increase at the cost of the other. Strasburger has summed up the evidence afforded by plants for and against this view.[4] He calls attention to the fact that in dividing cells large quantities of kinoplasm appear which can no longer be made out in the resting cell, while the very opposite frequently occurs with the trophoplasm; a fact which seems to point to the mutual interchangeability of these two structures. However he calls attention to considerations which point the other way. The uniformity with which the kinoplasm in cell division is apportioned between the daughter cells; the formation by the kinoplasm of the plasma membrane which demarks the spores of Erysiphe and Peziza from the ascoplasm, without any apparent participation of the trophoplasm; the apparent exclusion

1 Strasburger, Cytologische Studien, pp. 224-225.
2 Osterhout, Ueber Entstehung der karyokinetischen Spindel bei Equisetum. (Cytologische Studien, pp. 6-7.) And Mottier, Beitraege zur Kentniss der Kerntheilung in den Pollenmutterzellen einiger Dikotylen und Monokotylen. (l. c. pp. 22-30.)
3 Strasburger, Ueber Cytoplasmastructuren, Kern und Zelltheilung. (l. c. p. 222.)
4 l. c. pp. 224-229.

of the trophoplasm by the spindle fibres from taking any part in the formation of the cell plate—these are considerations which seem to exclude the probability of a mutual interchange between kinoplasm and trophoplasm.

Besides the dynamic role which the kinoplasm seems to play in the separation of the chromosomes of the dividing nucleus it, perhaps, exclusively enters into the formation of the cell plate and the plasma membrane which, in free cell formation, demarks the new cell from the general cytoplasm. A beautiful demonstration of this last process has been worked out by Prof. Harper.[1] He finds that in the ascus of Erysiphe the daughter nuclei of the last division which is to produce the ascospores remain attached to their centrospheres by means of a projection of the nuclear wall. The chromatin framework of the nucleus extends up into the neck produced by the extension of the nuclear membrane and comes into intimate contact with the centrosphere. The radiations of the aster appear to be formed under the immediate influence of the nucleus and seem to grow outward from the centrosphere through the cytoplasm. Finally the kinoplasmic radiations of the aster bend backward toward the nucleus and increase in length. The radiations continue to grow, and at length they bend inward below the nucleus where they fuse together and form a complete membrane which demarks the nucleus together with a certain amount of cytoplasm, from the general cytoplasm of the ascus. When this process is complete the projection from the nucleus which was united with the centrosphere draws back and leaves the nucleus suspended in the cytoplasm. The plasma membrane of the spore is thus seen unmistakably to be formed by the kinoplasm. The fact that it remains in contact with the kinoplasmic radiations throughout this process is evidence that the nucleus has an important function to fulfill, either in inciting the growth of the membrane and in directing the course which it shall take, or in contributing to the material for the growth of the new membrane. It has already been observed that Strasburger conceives the union of the nucleus with the kinoplasm to be for the purpose of establishing direct communication between the nuclear substance and the growing membrane. The fact that the chromatin of the nucleus also comes in direct contact with the centrosphere is an indication that the nucleus is also exerting a formative influence on the growing membrane. Harper points out that the processes just described are evidence that the kinoplasm is a specific part of the cell and

1 Kerntheilung und freie Zellbildung im Ascus (Cytologische Studien. pp. 95-130).

not simply radially arranged cytoplasm, and that in this instance the kinoplasm has a nuclear origin.[1]

My own studies of the development of the pollinium of Asclepias cornuti have brought out some evidence in regard to the kinoplasm and nucleolus which will now be given. The pollen mother cells are formed very early in the development of the flower. Figure 1, plate V, is a young pollen mother cell from a cross-section of a pollinium from a bud which was about 2 mm. in diameter. The mother cells, which extend in a radial direction across the entire pollen sac, remain in a resting state until the bud has attained a diameter of about 4 mm. Then the mother cells divide twice, producing a radial row of four pollen grains. After the mother cells have been differentiated from the archesporial cells they pass through a long period of growth before they undergo their first division. Thus the mother cell grows in length from .085 mm. to .180 mm. and the nucleus of the mother cell grows in diameter from .011 to .017 mm. At the same time the nucleolus of the mother cell increases from .006 to .008 mm. in diameter, or nearly 2.5 times in bulk. While the nucleoli are relatively very large the amount of the chromatin in the nucleus is very little, as shown in Fig. 2, plate V, which represents a portion of a mother cell shortly before division. At this time the plasma membrane is the only means of separation between the mother cells and the tapetal cells. The latter form a layer from two to three cells thick and are likewise richly supplied with nucleolar material. At the time of the division of the pollen mother cells their relatively enormous nuclei become dissolved and no trace of them, as a rule, is to be seen, either in the spindle or in the cytoplasm, and so far as my preparations show this takes place before the solution of the nuclear membrane. The chromatin, which before the division of the nucleus was, for the most part, applied to the nuclear wall in the form of a loose net-work, breaks up into twelve small chromosomes, which are so small, indeed, that the manner of their division cannot be made out with certainty. It can be observed, however, that there is a reduced number of chromosomes formed in this division, for it is easily seen in a pole view of the nuclear plate of the archesporial cells that the number of chomosomes there is twenty-four. The small nuclear spindle converges to a sharp point at the two poles, and there is no trace of centrospheres, centrosomes, or of a multipolar origin of the spindle (Figs. 3, 4 and 5, plate V). My preparations leave me in doubt as to the origin of the spindle, but I am of the opinion that in this in-

[1] l. c. pp. 120-121.

stance it is wholly of nuclear origin, and that the nucleolus has contributed the substance for its formation. The abundance of the nucleolar material and its early solution suggest this, and no evidence of a contribution from the cytoplasm is to be seen. But judging from the amount of the nucleolar substance originally present it is probable that only a fraction of it is used up when the spindle is first formed. After the daughter nuclei have gone into the resting state the spindle still persists and increases in size, as shown by Fig. 6, plate V. The cell plate is formed, as usual, at the equator of the spindle, and with the spindle it continues to grow in diameter until it has traversed the cell (Fig. 7, plate V. While the spindle has been broadening it has been decreasing in length, as if it were being drawn in to form the cell plate. After the cell plate is complete the remnants of the spindle lose their distinct thread-like character and appear to merge gradually into the honey-comb structure of the cytoplasm (Fig. 8, plate V). When the spindle is first formed it takes on a violet color with the safranin-gentiana violett-orange stain, but after the daughter nuclei have gone into the resting stage the spindle fibres assume the pale brown color of the cytoplasm; so that both as to construction and reaction to stains the kinoplasm in this instance appears to merge gradually into the cytoplasm, or, in other words, the differences between kinoplasm and trophoplasm slowly fade away, as if these structures were morphologically the same thing. It will be observed that the daughter nuclei enter into the resting state and lose all connection with the spindle at an early stage in the formation of the cell plate, so that the growth of the plate proceeds without any kinoplasmic connection of the nucleus with the region of growth. This is the very opposite of the process of the formation of the plasma membrane about the spores of Erysiphe and Peziza as described by Harper, and stands out as evidence that the kinoplasmic connection of the nucleus with the growing membrane is not necessary in all cases. Reference has already been made to the opinion of Strasburger that the nucleolus contributes its substance to the formation of the plasma membrane of ascospores. We see in the pollen mother cells of Asclepias that the cell plate and the kinoplasmic spindle continue to grow after they have severed their connection with the daughter nuclei and the latter has entered into the resting state with their nucleoli already present. Accordingly if the nucleolar substance of the mother cell takes part in the continued growth of the cell plate and spindle a portion must have remained dissolved in the cytoplasm after the completion of the

daughter nuclei. I find it possible to get some direct evidence on this point. The nucleoli of the mother cells vary in size within quite narrow limits, and are fairly perfect spheres. It is, therefore, an easy matter to determine their volume with a fair degree of accuracy. I find the volume of an average nucleolus of the mother cells to be 265 cubic microns, while the sum of the volumes of the nucleoli of the daughter nuclei is about $\frac{1}{10}$ of this amount. Accordingly about $\frac{9}{10}$ of the substance of the nucleolus of the mother cell has been employed in some manner, and the most reasonable inference is that the new structures which have been formed during the division of the mother cell have been the recipients of this material. The new structures are, of course, the kinoplasmic spindle and the cell plate. It is imperative that these structures should be provided for before nuclear division sets in, since at that time the energies of the cell are probably greatly taxed by the processes of mitosis. The very large amount of nucleolar substance in the mother cells and the greatly diminished amount at the time of the completion of the daughter cells are facts which speak strongly for the nutritive function of the nucleolus.

The severance of the spindle fibres from the daughter nuclei before the completion of the cell plate is a fact which deserves special consideration. Haberlandt, after referring to observations by Treub and Strasburger which showed the attempt of nuclei during cell division to keep in close connection with the forming cell plate, comes to the following conclusion: "Da liegt nun die Annahme nahe, dass ausschliesslich in den Verbindungsfäden der Einfluss der beiden Tochterkerne fortgepflanzt werde und desshalb bloss innerhalb dieses Fadencomplexes zur Bildung der Zellplatte, resp. der Scheidewand führe."[1] The behavior of the pollen mother cells of Asclepias shows, however, that kinoplasmic connection with the nucleus is not always necessary to the formation of the cell plate, and that if the daughter nuclei exert an influence on the formation of the plate it is through the medium of the cytoplasm.

The persistence with which the nucleus remains attached to the kinoplasmic plasma membrane of forming ascospores may have the significance of establishing a direct highway for the transfer of nucleolar material to the growing membrane, but it seems to me that the formative influence of the nucleus is also transmitted in this way. The formation of a plasma membrane about an ascospore and the laying down of the cell plate in a dividing cell are in some respects quite different problems. In the former case there are no boundaries already existing which shall determine the form and

1 l. c., pp. 110-112.

size of the developing membrane, and the nucleus as the bearer of the inheritable qualities must govern these characters. In the latter case, the direction of the cell plate having once been established, the problem is a comparatively simple one. Whether or not a kinoplasmic connection of the nucleus with the forming plasma membrane is necessary might depend in the individual cases upon the energy of the nuclear influence, the distance of the daughter nuclei from the growing membrane, and the sensitiveness of the cytoplasm in transmitting the nuclear influence. These are moments to which Haberlandt has called attention in considering the necessity of the proximity of the nucleus to those regions where growth is taking place most rapidly or is continuing the longest,[1] and their application in this instance is equally evident.

It seems fairly certain from the forgoing observations that the bulk of the nucleolar substance of the pollen mother cell remains in a state of solution after the daughter nuclei have gone into the resting state and is used, in part at least, in the formation of the cell plate. The proposition seems to me to be a reasonable and well-grounded one that the nine-tenths of the substance of the nucleolus of the mother cell which has not been used in the formation of the nucleoli of the daughter cells has been devoted to the building up of the new structuaes which arise during cell division. It may be that the kinoplasmic fibres sever their connection with the daughter nuclei so early in the formation of the cell plate because the nucleolar substance is to be obtained outside of the daughter nuclei.

If it is a fact that the nucleolus is merely reserve material which is destined to take part in the formation of the new structures of the dividing cell, then it must be regarded as reserve material of a very special potentiality. The long waiting of the mother cells and the gradual accumulation of nucleolar material already referred to are apparently a preparation for the critical time when the divisions of the mother cells shall follow each other in quick succession. At such a time the energies of the mother cell are probably taxed to their utmost so that the ordinary activities of the cell are in abeyance. The nucleolar substance is probably one of those which needs the influence of the nucleus for its formation, and at the time of nuclear division this influence could possibly not be given. This would then necessitate the previous preparation of the nucleolar substance as we have observed to be the case with the pollen mother cells of Asclepias.

---

1 l. c., p. 102.

It does not appear to me that the occurrence in tissues of nucleoli in definite numbers is evidence against their nutritive function, as Schaffner has suggested.[1] On the contrary it might be anticipated that reserve material which is to be used in a definite time and space would be stored up in definite quantity and in the immediate neighborhood of or within the organ which is to govern its use.

[1] The Division of the Macrospore Nucleus, Bot. Gazette, vol. xxiii, No. 6, p. 438.

Physiography of Southeastern Kansas.

BY GEO. I. ADAMS.*

The National Geographical Society of Washington has published a volume of monographs entitled The Physiography of the United States. In this volume Maj. Powell of the U. S. G. S. has discussed physiographic processes and features and defined in a comprehensive way the physiographic regions and districts of our country. It is the purpose of this paper to discuss briefly the geologic structure of Kansas as relates to the regions with which it has a common history, and in particular to define the physiographic features of the southeastern part of the state.

PHYSIOGRAPHIC REGIONS TO WHICH KANSAS IS RELATED.

The regions to be considered in a discussion of the structural history of Kansas are shown in the accompanying map (page 89). The Ozark region embraces the Ozark plateau of southern Missouri and northern Arkansas and the Ozark ranges of eastern Indian Territory. The Ozark plateau extends just into the southeastern corner of Kansas. The Prairie Plains region extends to the north and west of this region. In Kansas it covers about the eastern fourth of the state. It is divided into a glaciated and a non-glaciated district, the division lines running approximately east and west just south of the Kansas and Missouri rivers. West of the Prairie Plains stretches the Great Plains Plateau terminating at the base of the mountains. That district of this region of which Kansas forms a part is known as the Arkansas Plateau. The Park Mountain region embraces the mountains of southern Wyoming, central Colorado and northern New Mexico. Between these ranges lie the mountain valleys commonly called Parks.

REGIONAL BOUNDARIES IN KANSAS.

The regions are defined and mapped in a broad way by Maj. Powell. Just what are considered the limits in each case is not

*Published with the consent of the Director of the University Geological Survey of Kansas.

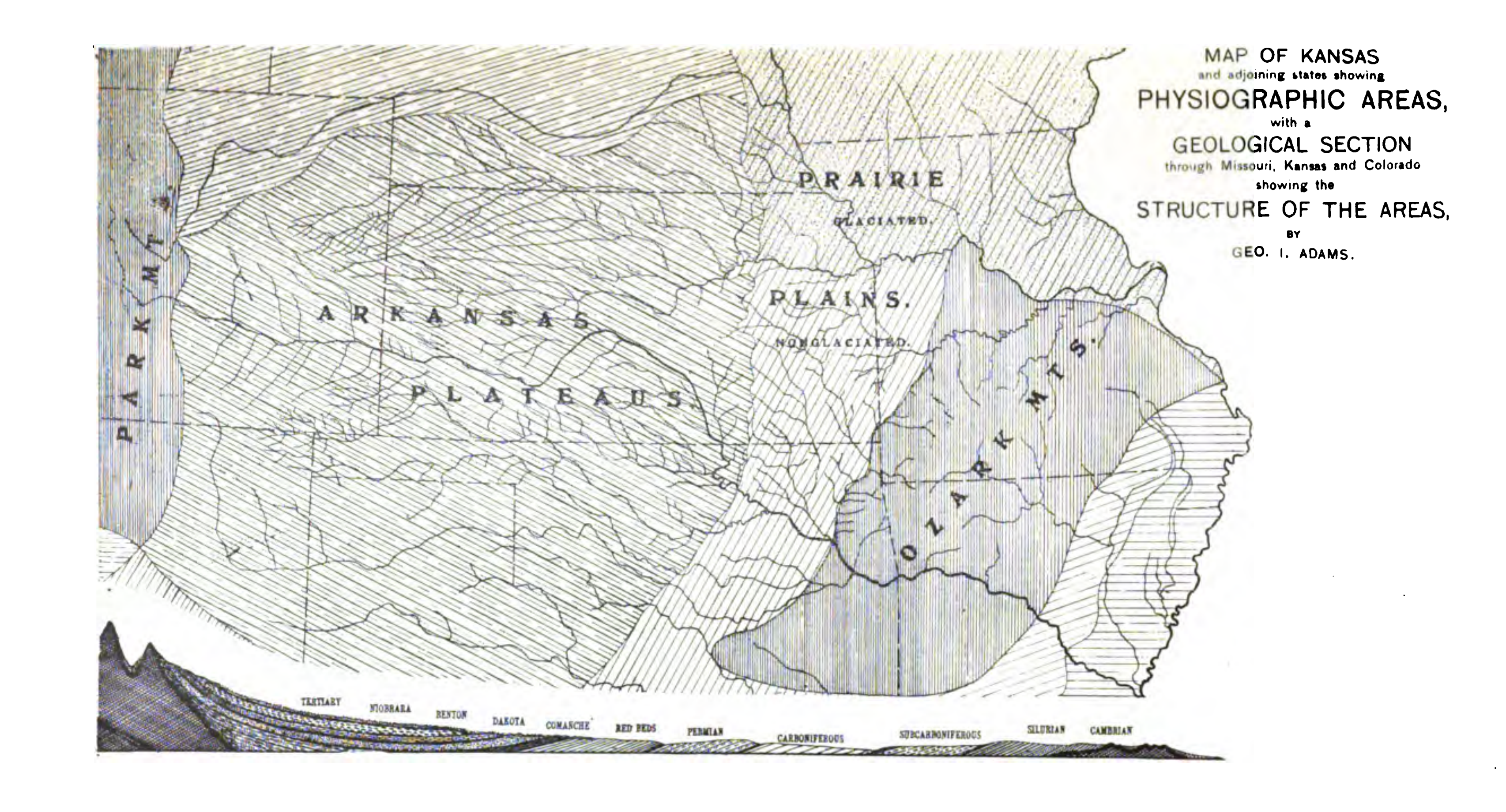
told. Within the borders of our own state, however, they are manifestly well defined in nature and will admit of closer mapping. The regional boundaries are here also the boundaries of geological formations. In discussing the physical features of Missouri, Marbut* has made the line of separation between the Carboniferous and the Sub-Carboniferous the western margin of the Ozark region. In Kansas the line follows Spring River, thus giving the region but a very small extent within the state in the extreme southeast corner. The western limit of the Prairie Plains is apparently the escarpment along the eastern border of the Permian formation. This is a very natural division, and a traveler passing westward cannot fail to notice the sudden rise in the elevation and the change in surface features. In the southern portion of the state the transition is marked by the Flint Hills.

THE GEOLOGICAL STRUCTURE OF KANSAS.

The geological structure of Kansas is best understood by reference to a section extending in an east and west direction from the dome of the Ozark region to the Park mountains (see map p. 89). From this section it will be seen that within the Ozark Uplift is a core of archean rocks which are exposed within limited areas in southeastern Missouri. Around this core is an area of the older Palæozoic formations. Passing westward we find the beveled edges of the later Palæozoic formations. Along the line of the section they are represented as follows. First: undifferentiated Cambrian and Silurian and the Sub-Carboniferous. Within the Prairie Plains region lies the Carboniferous. The Arkansas Plateau region embraces the Permian, the Red Beds which are referred by some to the Permian and by others to the Triassic, the Comanche, Dakota, Benton and Niobrara, while resting unconformably upon these is an irregular deposit of the Tertiary. At the base of the Park mountains are the upturned edges of the Cretaceous and older rocks, while within the region the formations are much disturbed and the ranges contain eruptive and Archean elements. Kansas may be said to be an area of slight disturbance lying between two mountainous regions, whose complex histories have produced simple oscillations over the regions of the Prairie Plains and the Arkansas Plateaus.

We cannot reconstruct with much certainty the original areas of these various formations, but they once extended much further to the east, and to produce their present surface and beveled out-

*Physiographic Features of Missouri. Mo. Geol. Sur., Vol. 10.


MAP OF KANSAS
and adjoining states showing
PHYSIOGRAPHIC AREAS,
with a
GEOLOGICAL SECTION
through Missouri, Kansas and Colorado
showing the
STRUCTURE OF THE AREAS,
BY
GEO. I. ADAMS.
PRAIRIE
GLACIATED.
PLAINS.
NONGLACIATED.
ARKANSAS
PLATEAUS.
OZARK MTS.
PARK MT.
TERTIARY
NIOBRARA
BENTON
DAKOTA
COMANCHE
RED BEDS
PERMIAN
CARBONIFEROUS
SUBCARBONIFEROUS
SILURIAN
CAMBRIAN

crops, erosion has been at work at varying intervals and for long periods. The westward dips and the succession from older to newer formations along this section argues in favor of the hypothesis that the shore line during Palæozoic times was to the east. This hypothesis is still further strengthened by the fact that the deposits themselves, show marginal conditions in their eastern outcrops, while the records of deep wells show deep sea conditions to have been more prevalent to the west as is indicated by the thinning of shale beds and the thickening of the limestone systems.

That this shore line made many oscillations and migrations is evidenced from the alternation of oceanic and litoral deposits and the deposits of coal in the upper part and near the westernmost exposures of the Carboniferous. At the close of the Palaeozoic era the land area must have advanced much further westward, since the deposits of salt and gypsum in the upper portion of the Permian indicate the absence of open seas. During the whole of the Cretaceous period deep sea conditions prevailed over most of the state since the deposits are now present in the western two-thirds of it after a considerable erosion. At its close the raising of the mountains to the west caused the final retreat of the sea. The only remaining deposits, the Tertiary and limited Quarternary areas being of fresh water origin.

ORIGIN OF PRESENT DRAINAGE.

Until the close of the Cretaceous the drainage of Kansas or such portions of it as were land areas, was to the west into the Cretaceous sea, since the deposits indicate a land mass to the eastward. The raising of the mountains to the west produced a drainage slope to the east over the newly exposed Cretaceous formations, which subjected them to a considerable erosion before the Tertiary of Kansas was laid down. Just what oscillations have occurred since then are not so easily determined. If, however, the Tertiary deposits were lacustrine to any extent, it would seem probable that there existed during that period a broad basin extending over the western part of the state far to the north and south, into which the drainage from the west flowed. If the sediments which produced the Tertiary were simply spread out on a flood plain, similar conditions probably existed. It appears therefore that not until near the close of the Tertiary times were the Park mountains sufficiently elevated to induce a drainage from that region across the Arkansas Plateaus to the Mississippi. We may accordingly look upon the present physiography of Kansas as being of the latest period.

DRAINAGE OF THE PRAIRIE PLAINS.

The drainage of the Prairie Plains is due primarily to the eastward slope of the surface. By reference to the map it will be seen that with the exception of the Kansas river all the streams rise within the area. A secondary feature is the dip and strike of the rocks. In general the dip is to the west and the streams flow at right angles to the strike, but slight deformations of the strata have caused a deflection of some of the streams to the south. There is an anticlinal ridge which has determined the divide between the Neosho and Osage river systems. In Missouri this divide continues into the Ozark region to which the anticlinal is no doubt structurally related. Near the eastern border of the state this divide is spoken of by the residents there as the Ozark Ridge, and they will tell you that it can be traced to the Ozark mountains, but many of them mistake the escarpments which cross the ridge for the ridge itself. Along the southern border of the state the dip is to the southwest and the streams here become more directly tributary to the Arkansas which finds its way through the Ozark region in a synclinal trough.*

Spring river, which crosses the southeast corner of the state, flows along the line of contact between the Sub-Carboniferous and Carboniferous formations and has literally slid down the extreme border of the Ozark dome, eroding the shales of the Carboniferous and accommodating itself to the uneven surface of the Sub-Carboniferous. In the Territory the Neosho, to which Spring river is tributary, occupies a similar position and is deflected to the west considerably before it reaches the Arkansas.

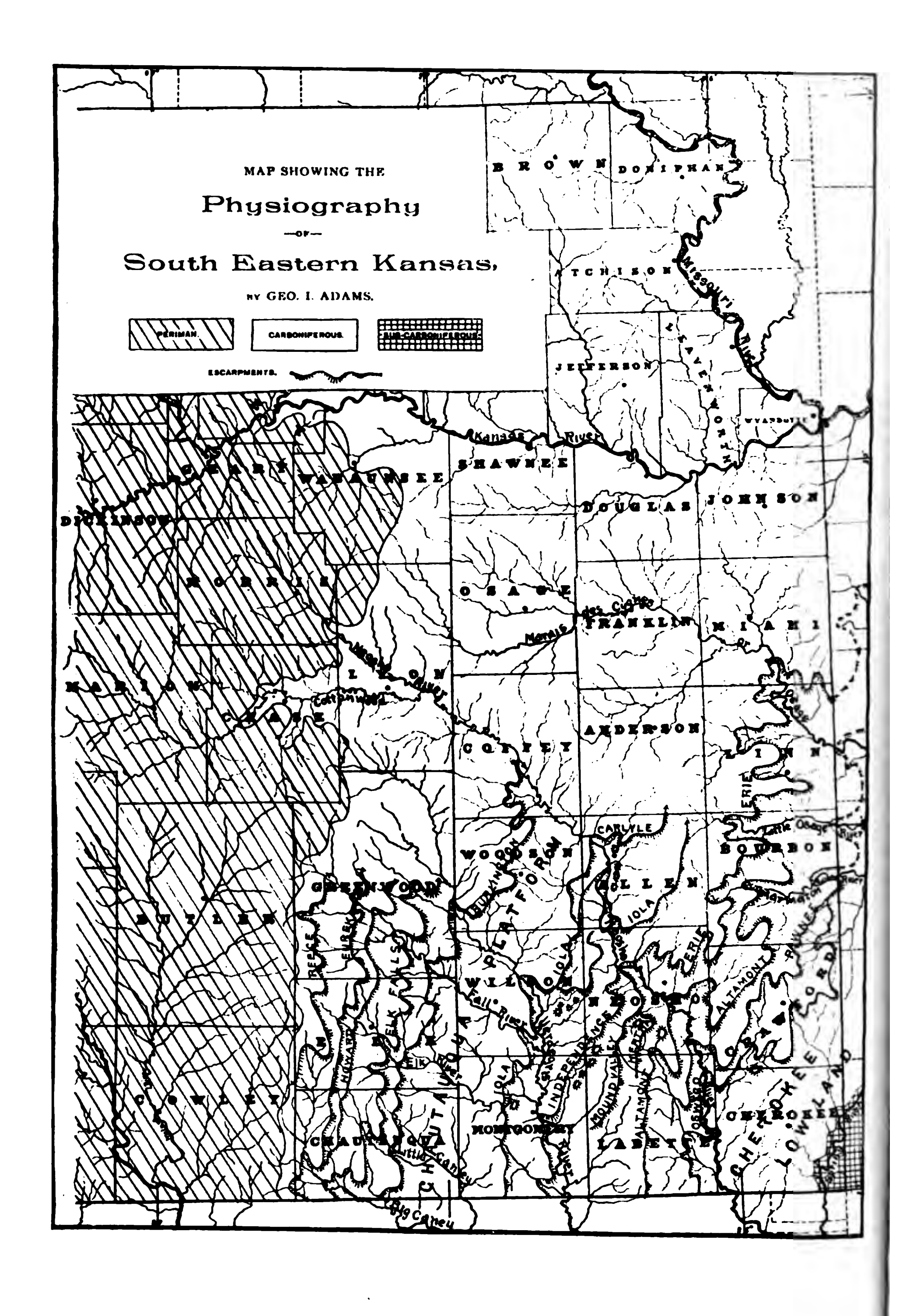
RESULTANT TOPOGRAPHY.

The formations over which the streams flow are beds of limestone alternating with beds of sandstone and shale. The unequal yielding of these materials to erosive agencies has produced in general a terraced surface, the limestones protecting the escarpments while the shales and sandstones below have been carried away by the streams.†

The inclination of the strata has produced a gradual slope (back slope) from the top of one escarpment to the base of the next higher. Not infrequently a stream cuts off a portion of an escarpment producing a mound or ridge, and the ridge in turn is broken up into a row of mounds. In case the more resistant strata are

*Geo. H. Ashley. Geology of Paleozoic Region of Arkansas. Proc. Am, Phil. Soc., May. 1897.

†*Vide* Haworth, University Geol. Sur. of Kansas. Vol. I, Chap. 10.


MAP SHOWING THE
Physiography
—OF—
South Eastern Kansas,
BY GEO. I. ADAMS.
PERIMAN.
CARBONIFEROUS.
SUB-CARBONIFEROUS.
ESCARPMENTS.
BROWN
DONIPHAN
ATCHISON
Missouri River
JEFFERSON
LEAVENWORTH
WYANDOTTE
Kansas River
SHAWNEE
WABAUNSEE
GEARY
DICKINSON
DOUGLAS
JOHNSON
MORRIS
OSAGE
Marais des Cygnes
FRANKLIN
MIAMI
LYON
Neosho River
MARION
CHASE
Cottonwood
COFFEY
ANDERSON
LINN
ERIE
CARLYLE
Little Osage River
BOURBON
WOODSON
GREENWOOD
ALLEN
IOLA
BUTLER
WILSON
Fall River
NEOSHO
ALTAMONT
ELK
HOWARD
Elk River
CHAUTAUQUA
Little Caney
Big Caney
MONTGOMERY
INDEPENDENCE
MOUND VALLEY
LABETTE
OSWEGO
CHEROKEE
CRAWFORD
LOWLAND
COWLEY

anywhere discontinued or lose their importance the escarpment fades out, and the softer beds add their thickness to the escarpment geologically next higher. Likewise if the softer strata give place to more resistant ones, e. g. a limestone system appears in a position where in other cases there is a shale bed, a new escarpment is developed. If a shale bed gradually thins out the adjacent limestones are merged into the same escarpment, and, on the contrary, if two closely associated systems are separated at any place by the thickening of the intervening shales, their lines of outcrop diverge and two escarpments are produced.

A stream flowing upon a back slope will gradually slide down upon the inclined strata until it reached the base of the next escarpment, cuts through the underlying formation, or reaches base level. In the latter case it would widen its valley, producing a plane independent of the dips of the strata. Along a single stream this area would be called a bottom land. When produced over a large area by a stream and its tributaries, or by several streams it is called a low land.

The Prairie Plains region in Kansas is coextensive with the Carboniferous formation. Were a section made from Galena to Grenola it would pass across the entire formation as here exposed. At its eastern limit we have the break in geological time marked by unconformity, at its western limit the transition to the Permian is marked by the fossils only. The dip of the strata and the alternation of the easily eroded shales and sandstones with the more permanent limestones, is well exhibited by such a section drawn to scale. The lines of outcrop of the limestone systems have been traced with considerable detail and are quite identical with the escarpments which are shown in the accompanying map (page 92). It will be observed that they trend in a northeast and southwest direction with many sinuosities where they cross the streams and divides.

DESCRIPTION OF PHYSIOGRAPHIC FEATURES.

Proceeding now to a description of the physiographic features and beginning with the southeastern corner of the state we find a small area of Sub-Carboniferous which belongs to the Ozark region and which forms our starting point (see map page 92). To the west of this lie

THE CHEROKEE LOW LANDS.

The base of the Carboniferous consists of a bed of shales and

sandstones about 450 feet thick, known as the Cherokee shales* and sandstones. They are exposed over a belt of country about twenty-five miles wide, lying between Spring river and Oswego, and extending across the corner of the state far into Missouri and the Indian Territory. The surface is gently undulating, the monotony of lowland topography being occasionally broken by ridges and mounds which owe their existence to heavy sandstone. Such a mound is the one west of Baxter Springs near the Territorial line. The country around Columbus exhibits a number of sandstone ridges, the city being located upon the divide between Spring river and the Neosho. Within this area are situated Pittsburg, Cherokee, Columbus, Wier City, Mineral, Sherman and Chetopa. Over this area there are no limestones of stratigraphic importance, those which exist being usually associated with coal seams as "cap rocks." The western border of the Cherokee lowlands is

THE OSWEGO ESCARPMENT.

At Oswego we meet with the first important limestones, known from their exposure at that place as the Oswego formation.†

They cap the heavy shale beds and produce an escarpment which along the river bluff is 120 feet high. To the south the escarpment continues west of the Neosho river passing into the Territory; to the northeast it passes Sherman, and produces the hills around Monmouth and to the northwest of Mineral City. Just north of Cherokee it bends to the north, crosses Cow Creek near Girard and runs a little north of east almost to the state line, being very prominent at Mulberry, from which place it bends to the north, passing in a sinuous line west of Arcadia, Bunker Hill being a part of it. From there to Fort Scott it is very irregular and has many outlying hills. East of Fort Scott it reaches the state line, but bends back up the Marmaton and after crossing the river, finally passes into Missouri. It is in this escarpment that coal is obtained by quarrying the limestone above it. The Oswego formation extends but a short distance to the west on the surface. The next formation met with is the Pawnee, producing

THE PAWNEE ESCARPMENT.

The Pawnee limestone‡ formation produces but a slight influence upon the topography. To the north it becomes more important and is seen in the escarpment crossing the divide between Labette

*Haworth and Kirk, Univ. Quart., Vol. II, p. 105.
†Haworth and Kirk, Kansas Univ. Quart., Vol. II, p. 105.
‡Haworth and Kirk, Kansas Univ. Geol. Surv., Vol. I, Chap. 2.

creek and the Neosho near Laneville. East of the Neosho it passes McCune to the south, and runs up Lightning Creek crossing it near its head, from which place it follows a sinuous line north of Girard, west of Englevale and east of Pawnee station to Godfrey, where it blends with the Oswego escarpment.

THE ALTAMONT ESCARPMENT.

The next limestone formation is the Altamont.* It is found at the top of the escarpment which passing east of Altamont and extending to the south, runs just east of Edna and into the Territory, becoming very prominent there. Tracing the systems to the north they are found to pass from Altamont north to Parsons, at which place they produce no escarpment. Along the west bluff of the Neosho they are again important, but the escarpment fades out around St. Paul in the Neosho bottoms. To the northeast, past Brazilton, Farlington and Hiattsville, there is a prominent escarpment but it is largely due to the thick sandstone beds which produce the flagging stone quarried at many places. In the valley of the Marmaton the escarpment disappears but is again found further north.

THE ERIE ESCARPMENT.

This escarpment is most prominent along the Marmaton river near Uniontown, from which place it runs to the northeast, passing out of the state east of La Cygne, according to Mr. Bennett who is familiar with that region. Following it to the south it passes east of Savonsburg nearly to Walnut, thence westward north of Erie, where it crosses the Neosho river. It is produced by three limestone systems called collectively the Erie formation.†

They are quite closely associated along the course already described and the escarpment is one of the most prominent in the southeastern portion of the state. South of the Neosho, however, the systems separate, due to the thickening of the intervening shale beds, and the lines of their outcrops diverge.

THE HERTHA ESCARPMENT.

The lower member trends to the east around the head of a creek to Hertha. An outlying area is found at South Mound. From Hertha the escarpment runs westward crossing Labette creek south of Galesburg and follows its west bluff for a considerable distance. It is prominent at a few places on Little Labette Creek and finally terminates in the mounds west of Altamont.

*Adams, Kansas University Survey, Vol. I, Chap. I.
†Haworth and Kirk, Kansas Univ. Quart., Vol. II, p. 108.

THE MOUND VALLEY ESCARPMENT.

The second member of the Erie formation, the Mound Valley,* has very prominent exposures all the way from the Neosho river to Galesburg and for some distance south when it suddenly fails to produce an escarpment for a considerable way, especially near Little Labette Creek. At Mound Valley, however, it is very prominent continuing so to the southwest nearly to the Verdegris river at Liberty. Here, however, the limestone has disappeared and the escarpment is produced by sandstones, which are eroded further south by the tributaries of the Verdegris.

THE INDEPENDENCE ESCARPMENT.

The upper system of the Erie formation, the Independence,† is found on the high land east of Urbana and south of that place, producing an escarpment east of Thayer, which runs in a southwest direction to the Verdegris just below Independence. Crossing to the west side of the river, it produces a high bluff all the way to Coffeyville and after a slight digression to the west at Onion creek, passes into the Indian Territory. Lying to the east of this escarpment from south of Thayer to the Verdegris, is a chain of hills and mounds, including the Bender mounds and those around Cherryvale, which form a very striking feature of the country. They are simply the remains of outlying areas separated from the escarpment by erosion.

EARLTON ESCARPMENT.

The next succeeding formation is the Iola limestone formation. Below the Iola system proper lie the Earlton limestone systems.‡ From Elk river to east of Benedict they are closely associated with the Iola, but west of Chanute and north west of Earlton, from which place the systems take their names, they produce a separate escarpment, due to the thickening of intervening shales. Between Altoona and Earlton there are a number of mounds which have recently been protected by the limestone which produces this escarpment. The escarpment fades out in the Neosho Valley, and southwest of Vilas blends with the next succeeding, which is the

IOLA ESCARPMENT.

The escarpment produced by the Iola limestone‖ is most prominent west of the Verdegris river from Table Mound northwest of Independence to Benedict. South towards the state line it loses

*Adams, Univ. Geol. Sur., Vol. I, Chap. 1.
†Adams, ibid.
‡Name here proposed.
‖Haworth and Kirk, Kansas Univ. Quart., Vol. II, p. 109.

much of its importance, due to the preponderance of sandstone. It passes into the Indian Territory just east of Tyro. Walker Mound and Table Mound are outlying areas of it. The prominence of the escarpment west of the Verdegris from Independence, past Neodesha, Altoona and Guilford to Benedict, is largely due to the position of the river valley, which runs parallel to it, and to the great thickness of the limestone. At Benedict it crosses the river and, bending somewhat to the south, takes a northerly course, passing west of Vilas, to Owl Creek west of Humboldt, where the next succeeding escarpment blends with it. The Iola limestone descends to the bottom land and is not traceable far after crossing Owl Creek on the west side of the Neosho river. It is exposed at Iola along Elm creekand Rock Creek, as well as at several places on the east bank of the Neosho between Iola and Humboldt; at the latter place it forms the heavy ledge which is so prominent at the river bridge. Further south it recedes from the river, producing an escarpment which trends to the southeast, then curves to the northeast, running nearly parallel to Big Creek, but considerably west of it and passes just east of Moran, becoming less distinct.

THE CARLYLE ESCARPMENT.

This escarpment is produced by the Carlyle limestone,* which is exposed near Carlyle on both sides of Deer Creek. From that place it runs to the east and then to the north, being prominent at Garnett and east of there along the Pottawatomie river. On the north side of Deer Creek it trends west from Carlyle to the Neosho river, crossing it below Neosho Falls. On the west side of the Neosho it follows the river bluff for a short distance, then runs to the south, passing about half way between Iola and Piqua. At Owl Creek it blends with the Iola escarpment as already stated, although the system is traceable somewhat further to the south. North of Iola and between Iola and Humboldt east of the river, there are a number of hills which are outlying portions of this escarpment.

THE CHAUTAUQUA PLATFORM AND THE CHAUTAUQUA SANDSTONE HILLS.

The back slopes of the escarpments thus far described possess no features which merit special description. The shale beds which produce them contain usually but little sandstone, except along

*This limestone was named the Carlyle limestone by Haworth and Kirk, Kansas Univ. Quart., Vol. II. p. 110. and the first succeeding one above the Garnett or Burlington. It has since been learned, as will soon be published by Haworth, that the so-called Carlyle limestone is the lower member of the Garnett.

the southern border of the state, and the limestones succeed each other at short intervals, so that the platforms are not very wide and their surfaces are generally undulating. West of the Iola escarpment and the Carlyle which blends with the former, lies an area which is more diversified, due to the manner in which erosion has acted upon the heavy beds of sandstone which are present as the equivalent of the Le Roy Shales* further north. North of the Neosho river sandstones are represented but sparingly in the Le Roy shales, but south of the river they gradually displace the shales, until in Chautauqua county they are everywhere predominant. From their exposure here they are named the Chautauqua sandstones.† At Yates Center they become conspicuous, producing the hills upon which the town is built. From here the area broadens to the south, its eastern border passing west of Buffalo, Fredonia and Tyro, while its western border runs approximately from Yates Center to Toronto, Fall River, Elk Falls, Sedan and Elgin. The area will here be described under the geographical name of the Chautauqua Sandstone Hills. These hills are as characteristic a feature of the southwest part of the state as are the Flint Hills,‡ and I here propose the name as one best applicable since it is already employed somewhat in common usage for a portion of the area. The surface is intersected by many small streams, which have deep valleys. The Verdegris, Fall and Elk rivers cross it, occupying narrow, deep channels, which are down to base level except along the western portion. The valleys of these rivers are narrow and walled in by bluffs, which show heavy sandstones as their protecting element. The low hills which are the prominent feature of the area are usually covered with a growth of jack-oaks. The sandy soil is seemingly adapted to their growth, for where the limestone areas are approached the oak timber begins to disappear. There are some small areas outside of the Chautauqua platform which have a similar growth of timber, as west of Thayer and south of Independence along the west bluff of the Verdegris, where the Thayer shales,|| which lie between the Independence and Iola limestones, carry a great deal of sandstone. Although the Chautauqua sandstone hills are nowhere very high, the difference in elevation over the entire surface being nowhere greater than 250 feet, yet they make traveling difficult because of the rocks which wear to the surface on the slopes, and the sand

*Haworth and Kirk, Kansas Univ. Quart., Vol. II. p. 110.
†Name here proposed.
‡Adams, Kansas Univ. Sur., Vol. I, Chap. I.
||Haworth, Kansas Univ. Geol. Sur., Vol. I. p. 157, see foot note.

which accumulates in the wagon roads from the disintegration of the sandstones.

THE BURLINGTON ESCARPMENT.

The limestones exposed in Burlington* and just south of the town, form the protecting element in the next escarpment. This escarpment, known as the Burlington, is prominent west of Le Roy Junction and along Turkey Creek. It runs to the southwest, passing two miles west of Vernon, and then around the head of Owl Creek. The limestone is present three miles west of Yates Center, but the heavy sandstones which produce the hills at Yates Center mask the escarpment, as indeed they do in most places from there to the southern border of the state. This limestone formation is the upper limit of the Le Roy shales and Chautauqua sandstones, but the general character of the Chautauqua hills area persists to the next succeeding escarpment. The line of outcrop of the limestone is from Yates Center to Toronto, thence west of Coffeyville to Fall River, Longton, Sedan, Chautauqua Springs and Elgin. In places the limestone being underlaid by shales or softer sandstone, persists as a prominent element in the surface features, but where the sandstones are in heavy ledges, it loses its relative importance. From Sedan to Elgin it is easily traced.

ELK FALLS ESCARPMENT.

The next escarpment is produced by two heavy limestone formations which are usually separated by a sandstone formation, which weathering slowly, brings all three ledges into practically the same slope. These formations and subsequent ones are not here named, since it is not necessary to a discussion of the present subject and a strict correlation is not now possible.† The escarpment is prominent west of Elk Falls. The two limestone formations produce the two heavy ledges seen along the railroad from Elk Falls to Moline. From Elk Falls southward the escarpment passes with many deep sinuosities around the head of Salt Creek, North Cana, Middle Cana and Cedar Creek, and leaves the state west of Elgin after having digressed up Big Cana nearly to Hewins. It is seen very prominent at Rogers, about five miles west of Sedan. Northward from Elk Falls it passes up Elk River nearly to Howard, then descends the river again, is found west of Hutchins Creek, at Cave Spring on the head of Indian Creek, at Greenwood on Salt Creek and west of Fall River to the vicinity of Twin Falls. Thence it

*Haworth and Kirk. Kansas Univ. Quart., Vol. II, p. 110.
†Probably these systems have already been given names where exposed along the Neosho and Kansas rivers in Kansas Univ. Sur., Vol. I.

makes a broad bow to the east and so reaches Walnut Creek, south of Neal. From there it trends to the northeast but the character of the limestone and included sandstone formation is changing somewhat, so that it is not safe to conjecture what its equivalent is beyond where the field work has been carried in detail. The back slope of this escarpment, which is comparitively even, is spoken of locally as a limestone prairie in contrast to the sandstone area to the east.

THE HOWARD ESCARPMENT.

This is a low, even escarpment which from a distance somewhat resembles artificial embankments. It is seen at Howard in the north part of town. It is produced by thin limestone capping a shale bed which weathers very easily. Riding on the railroad, one can see it very conspicuous on the west side of the track from Moline to Severy. From this place to Climax the road cuts off a portion of it to the east. Beyond Climax it is again seen west of the railroad to Fall River. South of Moline its course is indicated on the map as being to the west of Middle Cana. At Wauneta it is somewhat higher and produces the peculiar rounded hills near that place.

THE EUREKA ESCARPMENT.

This escarpment is very conspicuous at Eureka. The town lies in the valley of Fall River, the escarpment making a high wall to the north, west and south. The shale bed in the face of the escarpment carries some coal at various places, and the limestone above the shale has been traced in detail to the south, and is found to be persistent though not very heavy. It would appear from a hasty reconnoisance that it caps the terrace which is prominent just west of the railroad from Eureka to Madison and at the latter place. From Eureka southward it runs on a sinuous line around the head of Honey creek, Tadpole creek, is prominent on Otter creek where the north and south branches unite, is found halfway between Severy and Piedmont, passes to the west of Pawpaw creek and is prominent on Elk River about five miles west of Howard. West of Moline it is the first hill beyond the low ones in the edge of town which belong to the Howard escarpment. It has been traced to Leeds, thence south, passing west of Grant creek and bending in an irregular course, producing the east bluff of the Cana at Cedarvale and for some distance north. To the south of Cedarvale it passes around the head of Rock creek and to the state line.

THE REECE ESCARPMENT.

This escarpment has not been traced in detail. It is present at Reece as the most conspicuous topographic feature and was seen at a distance in doing other field work between there and Grenola. It runs approximately parallel with the Eureka escarpment and about six miles to the west of it, but gradually approaching nearer to it southward. Half way between Moline and Grenola it may be seen to the north, forming the high hills. It then curves to the north around the head of Big Cana and blends with the eastern slope of the Flint Hills west of the creek.

UPPER LIMIT OF THE CARBONIFEROUS.

The Cottonwood Falls limestone and the bed of shales above constitute the upper member of the Carboniferous. The line of outcrop of this formation has not been traced. Prosser* has identified the formation west of Reece, Grenola and Cedarvale. The line shown on the accompanying map as the limit of the Carboniferous is therefore only approximately correct. This formation does not produce a conspicuous escarpment, and the limestone is masked in the eastern slope of the Flint Hills.

CORRELATION WITH THE PHYSIOGRAPHIC FEATURES IN MISSOURI.†

The blending of two or more escarpments, or *vice versa*, the splitting up of an escarpment into two or more, as well as the total disappearance of others, make it appear that if the same conditions hold in Missouri that we find in Kansas, there can be little certainty that any escarpment will continue across the two states.

The Cherokee Lowlands are the equivalent of the Nevada Lowlands. The Cherokee Lowlands extend as a belt across the corner of Kansas. The Nevada Lowlands are a continuation of this belt into Missouri, where the area narrows to a point according to the mapping by Marbut.

South of Fort Scott the Pawnee and Oswego escarpments blend. North of the Marmaton River the escarpment thus formed passes into Missouri. I judge that it is this escarpment which, after a short curve to the east, continues northward to the Osage river, and is the one described by Marbut as entering Missouri at that place, and named by him the Henrietta escarpment. This escarpment is considered by him as the western border of the Nevada Lowlands,

*Kansas Univ. Quart., Oct., 1897.
†Marbut, Geol. Sur. Missouri, Vol. X.

just as the Oswego escarpment is the limit of the Cherokee Lowlands. Its course in Missouri is rather an unexpected one to me, since it seems to cut across to the eastern border of the Carboniferous.

The Erie escarpment has been traced northward by Mr. Bennett to where it passes over the state line at the northeast corner of Linn county. It is probable that this escarpment continues in a sinuous course in Missouri around the head of some streams and is the same one described by Marbut as the Bethany Falls escarpment which he states enters Missouri in the southern part of Cass county. The region between the Henrietta and Bethany Falls escarpment has been called by him the Warrensburg platform. To the west of the Bethany Falls escarpment Marbut describes the Lathrop platform and the Marysville Lowlands. It is not possible here to give the Kansas equivalents of these belts, since a large area intervenes which I have not studied. It would appear; however, that in Kansas the escarpments described, or others similar, continue to the Missouri river.

Variations of External Appearance and Internal Characters of Spirifer Cameratus Morton.

Contributions from Paleontological Laboratory, No. 30.

BY J. W. BEEDE.

With Plate VI.

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

Shell medium to large in size, greatest convexity back of middle, ariable in outline from sub-semicircular to trigonal; anterior mar- in sharply rounded to truncate-sinuate, lateral margins slightly urved to nearly straight, pointing outward and backward to the ars; hinge line equalling the greatest width of the shell, some- imes prolonged into attenuate ears; cardinal area broad, extending o extremity of hinge line; foramen broadly triangular and nearly quilateral, partly closed in upper part by pseudodeltidium; beak igh, prominent, somewhat recurved over cardinal area which is ometimes slightly arched; mesial sinus prominent, beginning at eak and broadening and deepening until the front margin is eached; fold of dorsal valve to correspond and beak of the same noderately rounded beneath that of the other valve; interior of entral valve marked by a sub-elliptical muscular impression in the icinity of the beak, posterior end of this depression extending to he hinge line or beyond, bisected by an indistinct, mesial ridge, adiating from which are small indistinct ridges for the attachment f the muscles. The cardinal area projects, leaving a large space eneath; the shell is here well pitted for attachments; a small tooth nd depression are developed on the inner corners of the cardinal rea. Shell of dorsal valve thin, muscular marking indistinct, inge line at beak broadly and shallowly arched, one prominent ocket on each side of arch, for teeth of other valve, two small levations in the center for attachments. The exterior markings of he shell consist of rather large, bifurcating, radiating striæ or ostæ, almost always fasciculated, covering the entire shell to the

tips of the ears where they are nearly parallel. There are in unweathered, unworn specimens minute pustules arranged in somewhat radiating order, also lines of growth sometimes visible on front border. In exfoliated specimens the fasciculation is less distinct. Measurement of average specimen: length, 32 mm.; breadth, 42 mm.; convexity, 21 mm.

VARIATIONS.

The variation in outline is great, as illustrated in figures 2 and 17, in Plate VI, and intermediate forms, the former having the hinge line extending into mucronate ears, while in the latter the hinge line is shorter than the greatest width of the shell. The difference in convexity of the shells is shown fairly well in figures 5, 6, 7, 23, Plate VI, contrasted with 1, 8, 21, 22. The mesial fold is often sharper in the less ventricose forms.

This species has been considered by some to be identical with *S. striatus* (Martin) Davidson. Schuchert has pointed out a difference between the two which is persistent,* and a marked difference will be found on comparing with figure 9 of Plate VI, the spires of the two species, as shown in the accompanying figure (1), which is reproduced by Mr. Prentice from Schuchert's figure in Eastman's Translation of Zittel's Hand Book of Paleontology, p. 386, A. In *S. striatus* the spire is long, loose, and acute at its apex, while in *S. cameratus* the spires are short, compressed, and very obtuse and inclose a slightly smaller angle. Even allowing a considerable amount of variation to each species there would then be ample distinction between the two; furthermore, the compressed ears of the attenuate form of *S. cameratus* would hardly permit of so long a spire.

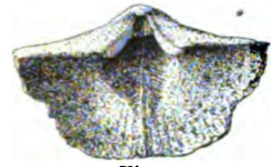


Fig. 1.

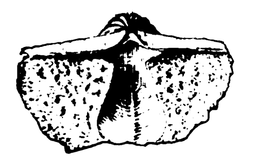
The variation of the internal characters of these species is quite as remarkable as that of the external portion. The two extreme forms will serve to illustrate the great range of these variations. In some specimens the muscular scar in the ventral valve is elliptical and extends beneath the beak and floor of the foramen, which is thick and plate-like; the teeth are not supported by heavy de-

*Bull. U. S. G. S. 87, p. 384: "The latter species (S. striatus), however, is closely and finely reticulated with concentric growth lines, while in S. camreatus the plications are covered with small pustules which are arranged in radiating lines."

posits of shell or thick plates, and the cavity formed by the jutting of the cardinal area is one general posterior cavity, extending across the shell, only slight ridges being present behind and below the teeth. This form is illustrated in figure 2.


Fig. 2.

In other specimens the posterior portion of the shell is much thickened; muscular depression not extending beneath the beak or hinge line, that portion of the cavity being filled with shell, which has encroached on the muscular area, until it is small and nearly circular; the small mesial ridge is much less distinct than in the previous specimen. This thick deposit of shell also forms a heavy support for the teeth, and divides the posterior cavity into a right and left cavity. See figure 3.


Fig. 3.

A minute, young specimen figured in the plate (figure 31) is nearly destitute of markings. The mesial fold and sinus are present, but have no indication of striæ upon them; there are indications of the three plications on each side of the fold; no other markings visible. Cardinal area visible, but ill-defined, and the entire shell has a glossy indefiniteness about it. The following measurement of specimens will illustrate the great variation in form of this species:

	Length.	Breadth.	Convexity.
	30 mm.	60 mm.	20 mm.
	50	31	20
	50	35	28
	55	37	23
	14	18	8
Average form.....	32	42	21
Very young.......	4	3	2½

One would naturally look for the degree of deposition of shell material in the ventral valves of the above specimens to be proportionate to the age of the shell, but from the material at hand I am able to draw no such inferenca.

Apparatus to Facilitate the Processes of Fixing and Hardening Material.

BY WILLIAM C. STEVENS.

The following method of carrying material through the processes of fixing and hardening has been of great utility in dealing with very small objects, such as root tips, sporangia, and young flower buds, and in keeping separate material of successive stages of development. The method is also useful in the hands of students, since it economizes space and material and otherwise facilitates processes which are always difficult to the beginner.

The material to be fixed and hardened is cut in the smallest pieces compatible with the purpose of the study, and then put into cloth-bottomed glass buckets which are made as follows: Cut pieces 3 cm. long from glass tubing of about 1 cm. in diameter. To do this uniformly and easily provide a guage block, as shown in Fig. 1. A hole, a, is bored in the block close to the bottom, just large enough to admit the tube easily and with a depth about 2 mm. less than the length of the piece to be cut off. Nail on the guage strip, b, so that when the glass cutter is held against it the cutting wheel will stand directly over the glass tubing when inserted in the hole for cutting off. With the fingers of one hand placed against the face of the block which is opposite the hole, press the glass cutter with the thumb against the guage strap and down on the tubing. Then turn the tubing with the other hand until the cutter has encircled it, but no more, for the cutting wheel will be injured by retracing the rough surface of the cut already made. Withdraw the tubing from the guage and at one place deepen the cut with a file. To separate the piece thus marked off grasp the tubing with both hands, with the thumbs opposing the fingers, as one would

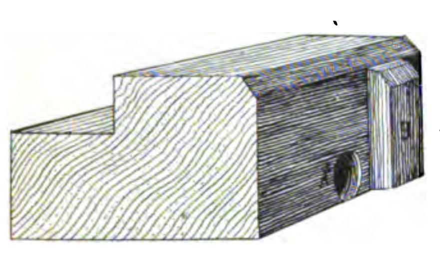


Fig. 1.

naturally do in breaking a stick, taking care to have the thumbs meet on the circle made by the glass cutter directly opposite the deeper cut made by the file. Break off the piece with a strong longitudinal as well as lateral pull. The piece of tubing is completed for use by turning outward the rim of one end and then heating the other end in the flame of a Bunsen burner sufficiently to melt away the rough edge. This is accomplished in the following manner: Whittle down one end of an electric light carbon so that it will fit snugly into the piece of glass tubing, and thus serve as a handle while the free end is being held in the Bunsen burner flame. Whittle down one end of another carbon to a blunt pencil point which is to be used in bending outward the rim of the tubing. Now hold one end of the piece of tubing in the flame by means of the carbon handle and turn it slowly so that the edge may be heated to glowing evenly all around. Then press the carbon pencil point into the softened end of the tubing, at the same time giving the carbon a twist so that the edge may be turned out evenly. It is best to turn out the rim only sufficiently to form a shoulder for tying on the cloth bottoms, and accordingly only the extreme end of the tubing should be held in the flame, and the pressure of the carbon point should be moderate. The other end of the tubing is next held in the flame and slowly turned until the edge is melted smooth, but not to such an extent that the rim begins to draw inward. The upper half of the tubing may now be ground on an emery wheel or grindstone so that it may be written on with a lead pencil. Tie a piece of thin muslin with a thread over the bottom of the tubing and trim the free edge close so that it may as little as possible soak up and carry reagents from one receptacle to another when the buckets are in use. In tying on the cloth have one end of the thread extend about 8 cm. from the knot. Make a hole with a needle at the center of the cloth bottom and pass the thread up through this. The buckets are to be suspended in the reagent bottles by means of this thread. The completed bucket is represented by Fig. 2.

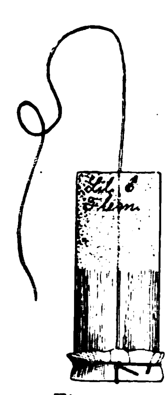


Fig. 2.

If the material to be fixed contains so much air that it will not sink in the fixative, and an air pump is not available, the material may be made to sink by stringing on the thread a porcelain or glass button, or better a solid

glass bead large enough to cover the mouth of the bucket, and then submerging the bucket in the fixative. But if an air pump can be had it is better to stopper the bucket with a cork which is trimmed flat on two sides so that the air may escape at the top as well as through the cloth bottom. Then the bucket should be placed in a bottle of water, or better, .5 per cent chromic acid, from which the air is then pumped, and after the atmospheric pressure is again turned on the material will immediately sink. The water or chromic acid should then be replaced at once with the intended fixative. If the material is in exceedingly small pieces, and would be likely to escape through the crevices left unstopped by the cork, it will be best to cork the bucket tightly and allow the air to escape only at the bottom. To wash out the fixative the buckets may be stoppered with corks sufficiently large to buoy them up, and then they may be floated in a tumbler of water into which water is kept slowly running; or the buckets may be suspended in the water by fastening their threads into notches in a stick placed across the tumbler. After the fixative is washed out the corks should be discarded and the buckets suspended in the different grades of alcohol, etc., to about two-thirds of the depth of the bucket. Reagent bottles, conveniently arranged for suspending the buckets, may be prepared as shown in Fig. 3. The bottles are ordinary mustards, and the sticks for fastening the thread have been notched at the ends for the thread and grooved at the center to receive the rubber band which fastens them to the neck of the bottle. We find it convenient to notch and groove the piece of wood from which the sticks are prepared before the sticks are cut off. The notches may be run with an ordinary marking guage, and the groove may be made and the sticks cut off with a saw in a miter box. A guage strip should be clamped to the back of the miter box so that the sticks may be quickly cut to a uniform width.

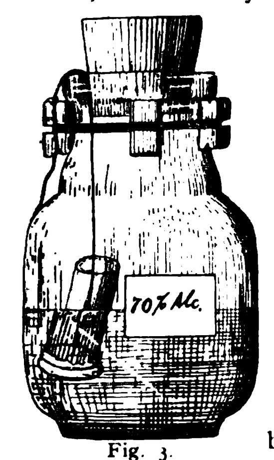


Fig. 3.

The material may remain in the buckets until brought into the paraffin on the oven, or even throughout the time it remains on the oven and until it is ready to be poured out for imbedding in the cold paraffin. I sometimes find it convenient to leave very small objects in the bucket on the oven until the solvent of the paraffin is evaporated, and then to lift the bucket quickly and plunge it

into cold water. At any time thereafter the bucket may be slightly warmed after cutting off the cloth bottom and the plug of paraffin pushed out. The plug may then be shaped up and mounted on the microtome. This method is particularly useful where sporangia or small buds of different ages are prepared with the object of getting sections in different directions and of different ages at each cut of the microtome knife. The buckets will also be found useful in preserving material in alcohol separated and labeled for future use.

The Preparation and Use in Class Demonstration of Certain Cryptogamic Plant Material.

BY MARSHALL A. BARBER.

The following is a description of some methods in use in the laboratory of Cryptogamic Botany in the University of Kansas. Some of these, in various forms, perhaps, may be now in use by many teachers; but they are described in the hope that they may be in part new, if not to all, at least to some who are engaged in teaching Cryptogamic Botany.

For demonstrating the evolution of oxygen by Algæ, and the relation of Bacteria and Infusoria to this gas, the following apparatus is used: A drop of water, or nutrient substance, containing the Algæ, Bacteria and Infusoria is placed in the center of a large cover glass. A smaller cover is then placed over the drop and the whole sealed, smaller cover down, to a ring cemented to a slip or any of the devices ordinarially used in making hanging drop cultures. There should be just liquid enough to fill the space between the covers, and the smaller cover should, of course, be less in diameter than the ring, so that a dry area will separate the liquid under the cover from the cement. The preparation is thus enclosed in a moist cell, and may be studied for days. Observations may be made with lights of different colors, different gases may be introduced into the cell, and the changes in the organisms due to these factors or to variations in their nutrient medium may be readily noted.

In obtaining plasmodia for the study of Myxomycetes during the winter months I have had very good success with sclerotia. Sclerotia of one or two forms are rather abundant in this region, and are usually found in rotten wood or on the ground under old logs. Pieces of this material put in a moist, warm place usually develop plasmodia in a few hours; and the plasmodia may be nourished and made to fruit or allowed to return to the resting form. I have used rotten wood and fleshy fungi for feeding plasmodia. Small plas-

modia for the observation of protoplasmic currents may be obtained by putting pieces of sclerotia in a hanging drop of water or some nutrient fluid enclosed in a cell, by transferring a piece of the living plasmodium to the cell, or by placing a large cover glass on a plasmodium and transferring it to a cell after the plasmodium has run over it. These small plasmodia will adhere to cover glasses and may be put into fixing and staining solutions without removing them. I have had good success in obtaining swarm spores of Myxomycetes by sowing large numbers of spores in vials of water. The germination of the spores cannot be followed so well as in drop cultures, perhaps, but large quantities of swarm spores may be obtained for class use.

In the study of the zoöspores and early stages of some Algæ I have used drop cultures prepared as follows: Incisions are made with a sharp knife in a piece of cork, and large cover glasses are fitted edgewise into the cuts in such a way that, when the cork is floated on water, some cover glasses are entirely submerged, others only partially. If the apparatus be placed in culture dish or pool containing Algæ, zoöspores of some kinds will fasten to these cover glasses and grow. The cover glasses, with germinating spores and young plants, may then be mounted over cells and studied. This method shows well the formation of zoöspores by young plants, as occurs in Oedogonium, and the way by which the plants fasten to their support. In the half submerged cover glasses the organisms which grow at the very surface of the water may be obtained, since the cover glasses, fixed to a floating object, remain at the same depth.

Few fungi are more favorable for the study of the formation of zoöspores than the Saprolegnieæ. Their rapid development and the ease with which they may be mounted and observed make them good material for the study of the growth of hyphæ also, and the formation of oögonia, oöspores and antheridia. An abundance of this material may be obtained, as is well known, by throwing insects or pieces of other organic material into water brought from a pond or stream; but difficulties often come from the too great multiplication of Bacteria in the culture dishes. I have had very good success in avoiding this trouble, by keeping a liberal supply of water plants, especially such as Elodea and Myriophyllum in the cultures. I find that when these plants are used there is no need of changing the water, and several insects may be put into a crystallizing dish of average size without the cultures becoming foul, especially if the room is not too warm. I have found spiders

among the best kinds of insects to use, and they are allowed to sink until they rest on the water plants beneath the surface. It is, of course, advisable to have the water free from animals which may eat the insects.

It is often desirable to demonstrate to large classes the methods by which spores are scattered in mosses, ferns, Equisetums and other plants in which hygroscopic action is observed. For this purpose the stereopticon has been used in the following way: Rather thick sections are made through the fruiting parts where ferns and Equisetums are used. These are mounted in water on a slip without a cover, the surplus water is drawn off and the preparation is placed in the ordinary apparatus for projecting objects on the screen. The heat from the source of light causes the water to dry rapidly, and just at the moment of drying the characteristic movements of the annuli and elaters may be seen projected on the screen. The addition of moisture will cause the hygroscopic parts to resume their former position; in the case of Equisetum, breathing on the side is sufficient. To observe the action of the peristome of moss capsules the whole capsule is mounted.

More exact methods are doubtless often more useful in investigation, and other ways of applying the ones given above may suggest themselves to teachers. These, however, have been found very helpful in teaching, especially in classes of beginners; and in the form given above have proved successful under the conditions present.

PLATE V.

The figures, which represent various stages in the division of the pollen mother cells of Asclepias cornuti, were drawn with a magnification of 1750 diameters by means of a camera lucida, and reduced to one-half of this magnification on the zinc plate.

Fig. 1, Young pollen mother cell.

Fig. 2, From mature pollen mother cell.

Fig. 3, Prophase of nuclear division of pollen mother cell.

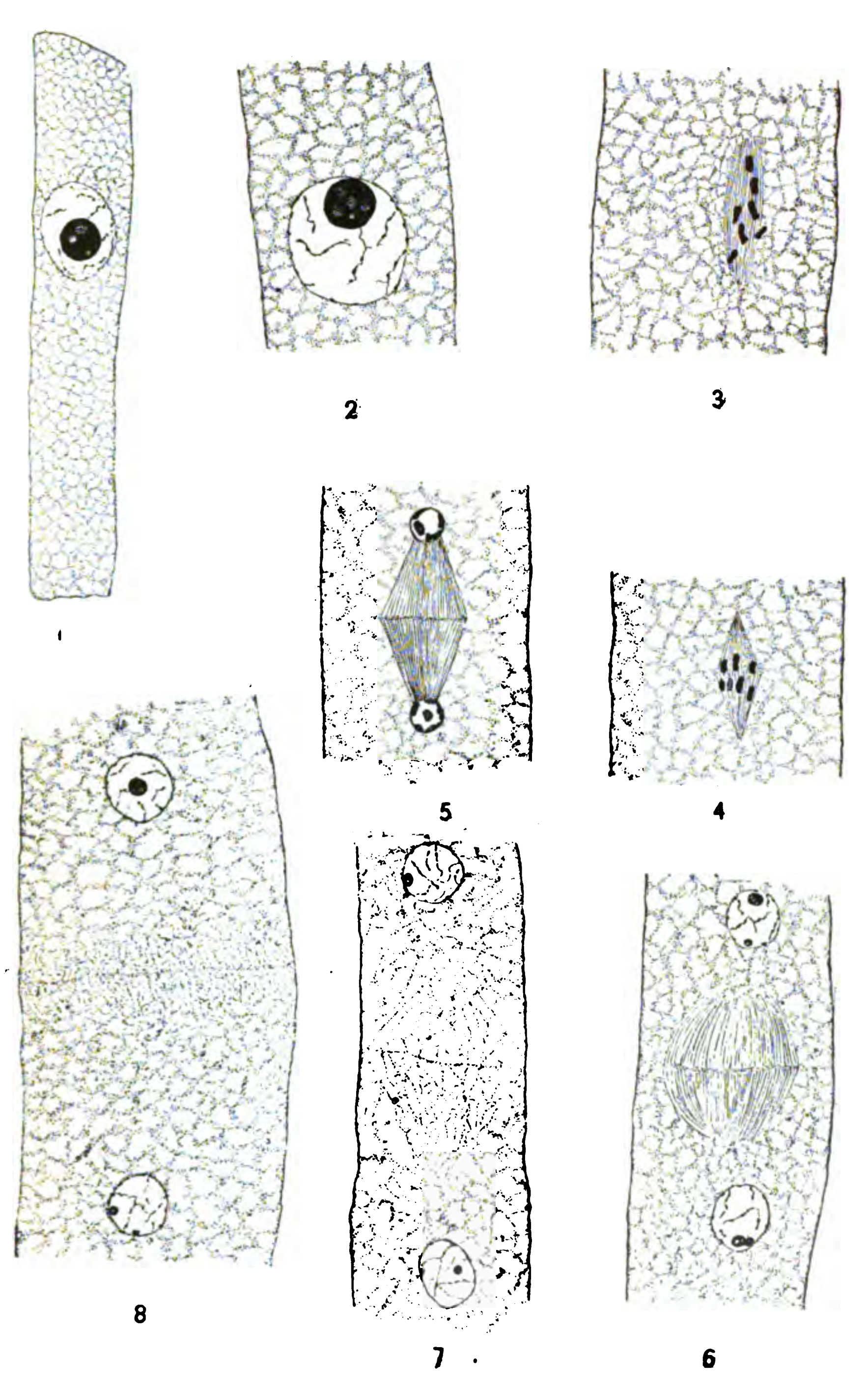
Fig. 4, Early metaphase of nuclear division of pollen mother cell.

Fig. 5, Anaphase of nuclear division of pollen mother cell. Cell plate in process of formation.

Fig. 6, Advanced stage in formation of cell plate.

Fig. 7, Completion of cell plate. Kinoplasm losing its thread-like structure.

Fig. 8, Later stage in the disappearance of the kinoplasm.



W.C.S. del.

PLATE VI.

Figs. 1, 2, 8, 22, Attenuate forms.
Figs. 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 23, Ventricose forms.
Fig. 9, Spires from which the jugum has been broken.
Figs. 10, 11, Two casts of the interior of the ventral valve.
Figs. 1, 3, 4, 21, 22, Show a marked fasciculation of striæ.
Figs. 19, 20, Exfoliated specimens.
Figs. 4, 8, 12, More general forms.
Figs. 15–31, Young specimens.

EXPLANATION OF PLATE.[1]

1. *Cladochonus bennetti*[2] n. sp. Page 17. X $\frac{2}{1}$.
2. *Aulopora prosseri* n. sp. Page 18. Natural size.
3. *Aulopora anna* n sp. Page 18. Natural size.

"12." *Amplexus westii* n sp. Page 17. Natural size.

---

1 To accompany "New Corals from the Kansas Carboniferous" in previous number. Page 17.

2 Since writing the article I have been informed by Professor Charles S. Prosser that Professor H. S. Williams has noted this genus from the Devonian (Portage and Chemung) of New York. See Bull. U. S. G. S. No. 3, pp. 11 and 24.—J. W. B.




12



Vol. VII. JULY, 1898. No. 3.

THE KANSAS UNIVERSITY QUARTERLY.

SERIES A:—SCIENCE AND MATHEMATICS.

CONTENTS.

PUBLISHED BY THE UNIVERSITY

LAWRENCE, KANSAS.

Price of this number, 50 cents.

Entered at the Post Office in Lawrence as Second-class Matter.

ADVERTISEMENT.

THE KANSAS UNIVERSITY QUARTERLY is maintained by the University of Kansas as a medium for the publication of the results of original research by members of the University. Papers will be published only on recommendation of the Committee of Publication. Contributed articles should be in the hands of the Committee at least one month prior to the date of publication. A limited number of author's *separata* will be furnished free to contributors.

Beginning with Vol. VI the QUARTERLY will appear in two Series: A, Science and Mathematics; B, Philology and History.

The QUARTERLY is issued regularly, as indicated by its title. Each number contains one hundred or more pages of reading matter, with necessary illustrations. The four numbers of each year constitute a volume. The price of subscription is two dollars a volume, single numbers varying in price with cost of publication Exchanges are solicited.

Communications should be addressed to

W. H. CARRUTH,
University of Kansas,
Lawrence.

This Journal is on file in the office of the *University Review*, New York City

JOURNAL PUBLISHING COMPANY
LAWRENCE, KANSAS

KANSAS UNIVERSITY QUARTERLY.

VOL. VII. JULY, 1898. No. 3.

Individual Variations in the Genus Xiphactinus Leidy*

Contributions from the Paleontological Laboratory, No. 31.

BY ALBAN STEWART.

With Plates VII, VIII, IX, X.

The exceptionally fine collection of *Xiphactinus* material in the Kansas University museum has suggested a series of comparisons which show that the individual variations within the species are both numerous and interesting. My attention was first called to these facts by finding certain individuals which I could not place in any of the known species from America with any degree of satisfaction, and yet the differences were not sufficient to be called specific. The comparisons are confined entirely to the jaws, and show differences in size, shape, and arrangement of the teeth that are very marked, and I think prove conclusively that these characters can not be regarded as specific in the two species involved.

For convenience to those who may wish to examine the material in the future, the catalogue numbers on the cuts of the specimens will be used in reference to each individual in this article. As the relation of *X. molossus* and *X. thaumas* are most affected by this discussion, the original description of the jaws as given by Cope,† will be partially repeated here in order to have the specific characters of these parts well in mind.

***Xiphactinus audax* Leidy (Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci., Phila., 1870, p. 12) has been shown to be a synonym of *Saurocephalus* Cope (U. S. Geol. Surv., Wyoming, etc., 1872, p. 418). In a letter to Prof. Mudge, dated October 28, 1870, which will shortly be published in the fourth volume of the Kansas University Geological Survey, Cope refers it to *Saurocephalus thaumas* (*Portheus thaumas* Cope). After carefully comparing the description and figure of the pectoral spine of *X. audax* I was led to the same conclusion; and as the genus *Portheus* was not made known by Cope until 1871 (Proc. Am. Phil. Soc., 1871, p. 173), according to the rules of nomenclature *Xiphactinus* should have priority.

†Cret. Vert., 194-95.

Xiphactinus molossus Cope.†

"The *premaxillary* is vertically oval, convex externally, nearly flat within, and more than half underlaid by the anterior lamina of the maxillary. The anterior or median margin is regularly convex, and exhibits no surface or suture for union with the bone of the opposite side. Its posterior margin extends obliquely backward to beneath the superior articular condyle of the maxillary, and has a ragged edge, though the suture is squamose. Its superior margin is deeply inflected in front of the condyle, and then convex and thickened. The anterior margin is thick and rugose with tubercular exostoses. There are but two teeth, which are very large, and directed obliquely forward; the first is two-thirds the diameter of the second.

"The *maxillary* is a large laminiform bone, with the upper margin considerably thickened proximally, but much thinned distally. It is abruptly contracted at the distal two-thirds of its length, apparently for the attachment of a supernumerary bone. The extremity is curved saber-shaped upward, and has an acute toothless edge. The teeth are: four small, five large, and eighteen small. These teeth, except the largest, have cylindric bases; the crowns (and bases of the latter) are slightly compressed or oval; they are straight and regular, and lean backward. The middle one of the five is largest, being six times as long as the smaller ones, but little more than half as long as the large premaxillary or mandibular.

"The *mandibular rami* are short and deep, and have but little mutual attachment at the symphysis. They are not incurved at that point, and were bound by ligament only. There is no coronoid bone, and the articular is distinct. * * * The teeth are as follows: Two large—a transverse groove; three large; four very small; nine medium; and two very small—total, twenty. These teeth have straight cylindric crowns, with cementum without striæ or facets. The larger are little compressed."

Xiphactinus thaumas Cope.*

"The *premaxillary* is an obliquely oval or subpentagonal bone, the suture with the maxillary is not toothed, and the anterior or free edge is smooth, not tubercular as in the two specimens of *X. molossus*. There are but two teeth, of which the anterior is immense, and the second little more half its diameter. The maxillary is stout and supports in front four very small teeth; then three very large, of which the median is largest.

*Cert. Vert., p. 197.

"The *dentary* is similar in form to that of *P. molossus*, but rather more numerous teeth. Counting from the front, there are two large, one rather small; two large, and eighteen small and medium following; the smallest from third to ninth, inclusive. The alveolæ are nearly round."

Below is given a table showing the arrangement of the teeth in the specimens under consideration:

MANDIBLES.

No.	Medium.	Large.	Small.	Large.	Small.	Large.	Small.	Medium and Small.	Medium.	Small.	Total.
1,	..	2	..	3	..	..	5	..	9	1	20
2,	..	2	1	1	..	..	8	12	..	..	24
3,	..	2	..	3	..	..	5	..	2+	..	12+
4,	..	2	..	2	2	..	4	..	10	2	22
88,	..	2	..	3	..	..	3	..	10	4	22
127,	..	2	..	3	..	..	6	..	10	..	21
135,	..	2	..	3	..	..	7	..	9	1	22
155,	..	2	..	1	2	1	..	11	..	2?	18
179,	..	2	1	1	..	..	8	11	..	..	23
275,	..	2	1	3	..	..	..	..	..	..	
279,	..	2	..	3	..	..	..	..	..	..	
287,	..	2	..	3	1	..	4	..	9	3	22
314,	..	2	..	4	..	..	8	..	8	2	24
353,	2	..	..	2	..	..	..	17	..	..	21

	MAXILLARY.					PREMAXILLARY.			
No.	Small.	Medium.	Large.	Small.	Total.*	Small.	Large.	Small.	Total.
1,	2	..	5	..	7+	..	2	..	2
2,	4	..	5	22	31	..	2	..	2
3,	4	..	5	23	32	..	2	..	2
4,	4	..	5	27	36	..	2	..	2
88,	..	..	4	23	27	1	1	..	2
132,	1	..	5	20	26	..	..	..	..
155,	..	1	5	..	6+	..	2	2	4
179,	5	..	4	26	35	..	2	..	2
266,	2	..	6	19+	27+	1	2	..	3
275,	2?	..	5	25+	32+	..	..	..	..
279,	2	..	4	18	24	..	3	..	3
287,	3	..	5	26	34	..	..	..	..
301,	5	..	3	15	23	..	..	..	..
353,	3	..	4	22?	29?	..	2	..	2

From the above table it will be seen that in no instance do the size and arrangement of the teeth exactly agree with either *X. molossus* or *X. thaumas*. The number of teeth is also as varied as the size and arrangement, thus: in No. 88, the number of maxillary teeth corresponds with *X. molossus* but the mandible contains

two more than in this species. In No. 179, the mandibular teeth correspond in number with *X. thaumas*, but as the exact number of maxillary teeth is not given by Cope in his description of this form, the agreement in number of teeth on these parts can not be determined. No. 1 corresponds with *X. molossus* in number of mandibular teeth, but as the number of maxillary teeth of this specimen is somewhat in doubt, the agreement of these parts is uncertain. Three more or less constant characters are observed in the arrangement of the teeth in all the specimens under examination, viz: the four small anterior teeth on the maxillary, the two large teeth on the premaxillary, the two large anterior teeth on the mandible. The last of these seems to be the most constant of the three. The next in variation is the number of teeth on the premaxillary, and the one of greatest variation is the number of small anterior maxillary teeth.

From the above it will be seen that the size and arrangement of the teeth on the maxillary and mandible cannot be taken as specific in either species. The premaxillary teeth show diversity of character in size and arrangement quite as marked as the maxillaries and mandibles. In some instances the teeth are about equal in size, in others there is a noticeable difference, as in No. 301, where the posterior is very much smaller than the anterior, and in 88, where the opposite is the case.

Some of the specimens possess three premaxillary teeth. In No. 266 the anterior is very small and the two posterior large, in No. 279 there are three of about equal size, and in 155* four, the two anterior of which are large and the two posterior very small.

Below is given a table showing the great variety in size of the specimens:

No.	MANDIBLE		MAXILLARY.	
	Length of alveolar border.	Depth at coronoid.	Length from premaxillary.	Depth at condyle.
1,	242.5	145.5	.....	102
2,	251	144	260+	111
3,	279	140	314	119
4,	194	109	216.5	78
88,	260	136	273.5	92
127,	.....	.....	.....	88.5
132,	.....	.....	264	98
135,	197	.....	.....	.....
155,	215	.....	205+	83.5
179,	185	94	183	68
266,	.....	.....	.....	84
275,	.....	.....	220+	94
279,	.....	.....	263	90
287,	210	.....	220	80
301,	.....	.....	.....	90
314,	242	130	.....	.....
353,	195	115	219+	75

*It would be well to mention in this connection that No. 155 possesses characters other than number, size, and arrangement of the teeth, that separate it from *X. molossus* or *X. thaumas*, the most important of which are the articulation of the maxillary and pre-maxillary, the difference in form of the palatine condyle, and the greater depth of the dentary with reference to its length. It probably represents *X. lestero*, although this fact I have not yet definitely determined.

The variation in size is as marked as the other differences mentioned above, thus: the length of the maxillary from the premaxillary varies from 183 mm. to 325 mm., giving a difference of 142 mm. in the length of the alveolar borders of the mandibles of these two specimens, Nos. 3 and 179; there is a difference in length of 98.5 mm. The transverse groove mentioned by Cope* as one of the characters of *X. molossus*, varies greatly in development. In some specimens it is very prominent, in others scarcely noticeable. The tubercular exostoses on the anterior margin of the premaxillary vary quite as much as the other characters enumerated; they probably increase in development with the age of the animal. However, this, with the presence or absence of a ragged suture between the maxillary and premaxillary would not affect the specific position of either form under consideration. Other differences in outline, etc., are noticeable in the figures and are not worthy of mention here.

In the light of the above facts it would seem that *X. molossus* and *X. thaumas* are synonymous, and as Cope has admitted that *X. thaumas* and *X. audax* are synonyms,† this form should be known in the future as *Xiphactinus audax* Leidy.

*l. c. 19.
†l. c.

Lawrence, Kas., March 10, 1898.

A Geological Reconnoisance in Grant, Garfield and Woods Counties, Oklahoma.

BY GEO. I. ADAMS.

With Plates XI and XII.

In March, 1898, the writer spent some time in a general reconnoisance of Grant, Garfield and Woods counties in northwestern Oklahoma. The accompanying map (Plate XI) shows the geology south of central Kansas, and records such information as I was able to obtain concerning the adjacent portion of the territory.

The main geological formation in the above mentioned counties is the Red Beds. This is overlaid by an irregular Pleistocene deposit, which is apparently not over fifty feet thick. The latter is not shown on the map. The Red Beds, the age of which is still undetermined because of their barrenness of fossils, are either Permian or Triassic. They have been studied in Kansas and a summary of the literature can be found in the Kansas University Geological Survey, Vol. II, in the chapter by C. S. Prosser, on The Upper Permian. Following his description I give here the general characters of the formation. The Red Beds, or Cimarron series, consist principally of red sandstones and shales, some of which, when wet, are of a bright red or vermilion color. The sandstones are soft and friable while the shales are arenaceous or argillaceous. Thin layers of grayish to greenish gray sandstones, and grayish spots are not of unfrequent occurrence. Near the middle portion of the terrain the shales contain considerable deposits of salt. Above the salt shales are variegated shales and sandstones, in which are thin layers of satinspar, selenite and other forms of gypsum. Capping these shales is the main mass of gypsum which is a conspicuous ledge several feet in thickness. Succeeding the massive gypsum are bright red shales and sandstones that are more brilliantly colored. Gypsum is not so abundant in this upper portion of the Red Beds, but near the top is found a conspicuous stratum of magnesian limestone or dolomite.

The Red Beds, according to Prosser, may be considered as consisting of the lower beds or Salt Fork formation, the Cave creek

gypsum horizon, and the upper or Kiger formation. The gypsum horizon in Kansas has been mapped by P. G. Grimsley (Kan. Univ. Quart., Jan., 1897). On the accompanying map the continuation of this horizon in the western and southwestern portions of Woods county is shown. The country here described lies principally to the east of this horizon and is the formation geologically lower, i. e. the Salt Fork formation. The eastern boundary of the Red Beds lies beyond the limits of the counties here described and evidently trends to the east considerably from where it leaves the state line. From various sources of information I conclude that it passes to the east of Red Rock.

I entered the territory at the northwest corner of Grant county and proceeded to Wedford. The surface was at first undulating and the soil red, but it became more level and the soil graded into a black gumbo. The country is essentially a prairie land and the streams flow in valleys which are but little below the general level. Along the north side the Salk Fork, which flows in a sandy bed, there are low sand dunes in places. I next traversed the divide between the Salt Fork and the Cimarron, which is low and unbroken, except where the Red Beds are exposed in a line of "breaks" trending around the heads of the streams which are tributary to the Salt Fork from the south. Standing on the divide one sees the streams which flow to the north take their rise in small, rugged canons and emerge into broad valleys in a few miles, while the streams flowing southward into the Cimarron begin in meandering channels, which, in places, are bordered by low swells which are extinct sand dunes. The divide is migrating southward, and there are evidences of the heads of the small canons gradually capturing the drainage of the southward slope. The Red Beds, although not exposed except in the breaks as already spoken of, are everywhere found at a shallow depth in diging wells. The Pleistocene lies like an uneven mantle over these eroded surface. From inquiry I learned that the wells usually pass through it in less than fifty feet. One dug on the divide went through red soil and clay for twenty-five feet, then through fifteen feet of sand containing fine gravel. In the sand was found a large bone which was probably a femur of *Equus*. Another well passed through a layer of land shells at a depth of fifteen feet. The creeks are nearly all fed by springs at various places and there is little difficulty in obtaining water except near the breaks. The supply seems to be found in the Pleistocene or the upper surface of the Red Beds. I have seen springs of sweet water flowing from the Red Beds, in

other cases from the base of the sand hills or breaking from the Pleistocene. This is interesting when taken in connection with the fact that the water of the streams is nearly all brackish or saltish, and upon evaporation will leave behind a white efflorescence upon the vegetation or the dry bed of the stream. In the eastern portion of Woods county, just south of the Salt Fork, is situated the Salt Plain, which, with the encrustation upon the sand and salt grass, shimmers like a lake when seen in the sun. This Salt Plain has been considered by F. W. Cragin (Colorado College Studies, Vol. VI,) as being derived from the salt deposit of the lower portion of the Red Beds, as above described. Further west, in the vicinity of the gypsum horizon, the water in the creeks is bitter and often unusable for either man or beast, but wherever the sand hills or the Pleistocene deposits are sufficiently extensive sweet water is found in shallow wells or bursts forth in springs. On the south slope of the divide there are large areas covered with sand hills which are mostly extinct and bear a growth of blackjack timber. Along the north side of the Cimarron there is a belt several miles wide which is of this nature, but the sand hills are more active and the timber is absent or is replaced by cottonwood trees. Some of the hills reach a surprising height. Tall cottonwood trees are found growing upon them, and the shifting of the sand has occasionally buried the trees so that only the top branches are seen protruding in sand pits in the top of the hills. A ridge of sand hills near the mouth of Eagle Chief creek is fully 150 feet high. North of the Salt Fork, in the northeast part of Woods county, is a similar ridge.

South of the Cimarron river, in Woods county, the Glass mountains are marked on most maps of Oklahoma. A trip to this locality revealed the inaccuracy of the name. There is a bold escarpment with occasional isolated mounds, extending along the river and around the heads of the short creeks which are tributary to the river from the south. One of these mounds or buttes, perhaps the most prominent one, is situated at about the place at which the mountains are indicated on the map. From this place the escarpment is seen trending to the south and east away from the river, gradually becoming less prominent. Westward are many headlands and buttes which follow the course of the river. The protecting element in this escarpment is a ledge of gypsum twelve feet in thickness where I measured it. It is seen capping the butte in the illustration Plate XII. Below it are the readily yielding clays and soft shales of the Salt Fork formation. The butte here pictured

is separated from the main escarpment by a short gap. Its height above the lowest place in the gap is 150 feet, and its elevation above the river is considerably more. Just how far west along the Cimarron the gypsum is found I am unable to say. Cragin has reported it at Heman, near the county line (vide Prosser ibid, p. 91). I have indicated on the map by a dotted line its probable connection with the gypsum in Kansas.

The "breaks" which I have previously spoken of as trending around the heads of the tributaries of the Salt Fork from the south approach the river east of Alva several miles, so that at Alva the valley is narrowed to about three miles in width. West of Alva the country is more rugged, being broken by canons, and the clay and sandstones are seen sculptured into flat topped terraced hills. Near the west border of the county there is a prominent escarpment which I have seen from a distance. I am told that it contains a ledge of gypsum. Red Hill, shown on the maps of Oklahoma, is a portion of this escarpment. In drawing the broken line connecting the gypsum horizon in Kansas with the known portion in Oklahoma, I referred to this escarpment in so far as possible.

The Pleistocene deposists are not shown on the map, but are nearly everywhere present. They consist of clay and sand, mixed with a varying amount of gravel. The clay has a red appearance, as if derived from the Red Beds. The sand, however, is coarse and quartzitic, and the pebbles are frequently variable in size and very variable in character, being quartzitic, felspathic, granitic, etc., while occasionally I found cherts which contained fragments of fossils, such as might have been derived from a carboniferous limestone. Near the crest of the divide I have seen small areas of irregularly bedded sandstone which was loosely cemented. Near by the canons contained large gravel, left behind from the erosion of the Pleistocene. *Elephas* remains, although usually poorly preserved, are relatively abundant. As many as ten different finds being reported from the area here described.

Normal Forms of Projective Transformations.

BY H. B. NEWSON.

A linear fractional transformation in one variable, viz:

$$x_1=\frac{ax+b}{cx+d},$$

is always reducible to one or the other of the following normal forms:*

$$\frac{x_1-m}{x_1-n}=k\frac{x-m}{x-n} \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{1}{x_1-m'}=\frac{1}{x-m'}+\alpha. \qquad (1)$$

These two forms correspond to the two types of transformations of this kind, viz: transformations with two invariant points, and transformations with one invariant point. In these normal forms the constants of the transformations are the 'essential parameters'; each constant has a definite meaning.

In the first form m and n are the coordinates of the two invariant points and k is the anharmonic ratio of these invariant points and any pair of corresponding points x and x_1 in the transformation. In the second form m′ is the single invariant point and α is a constant which characterizes the transformation. If p and p_1 are corresponding points, the normal form shows that

$$\alpha=\frac{1}{m'p_1}-\frac{1}{m'p}.$$

Some point q on the line is transformed to infinity; hence

$$\alpha=-\frac{1}{m'q}.$$

This linear fractional transformation may also be interpreted as a projective transformation of the lines of a flat pencil or of the planes of an axial pencil. The first type of transformation leaves two rays (planes) of the pencil invariant, and k is the anharmonic ratio of the pair of invariant rays (planes) and any pair of corres-

*See Klein's Elliptische Modulfunctionen, pp. 164 and 173.

ponding rays (planes). The second type leaves invariant a single ray (plane) m′. x and x_1 represent a pair of corresponding rays (planes), such that $\cot(x_1,m')-\cot(x,m')=\alpha$. If x′ is the ray (plane) which is transformed into the perpendicular to m′, then

$$\alpha=-\cot(x',m').$$

An analogous theory may be developed for the projective transformations of the plane and of space. The equations of the projective transformation in the plane are given in cartesian coordinates by

$$x_1=\frac{ax+by+c}{a_2x+b_2y+c_2} \text{ and } y_1=\frac{a_1x+b_1y+c_1}{a_2x+b_2y+c_2}. \qquad (2)$$

There are five types of such transformations, each type being characterized by its invariant figure. Corresponding to each type is a normal form in which the constants are the essential parameters of the transformation.

The equations of the projective transformations in space are given in cartesian coordinates by

$$x_1=\frac{ax+by+cz+d}{a_3x+b_3y+c_3z+d_3} \quad y_1=\frac{a_1x+b_1y+c_1z+d_1}{a_3x+b_3y+c_3z+d_3} \qquad (3)$$

$$z_1=\frac{a_2x+b_2y+c_2z+d_2}{a_3x+b_3y+c_3z+d_3}.$$

There are thirteen types of projective transformations in space; each is characterized by its invariant figure.* (See Fig. 1.)

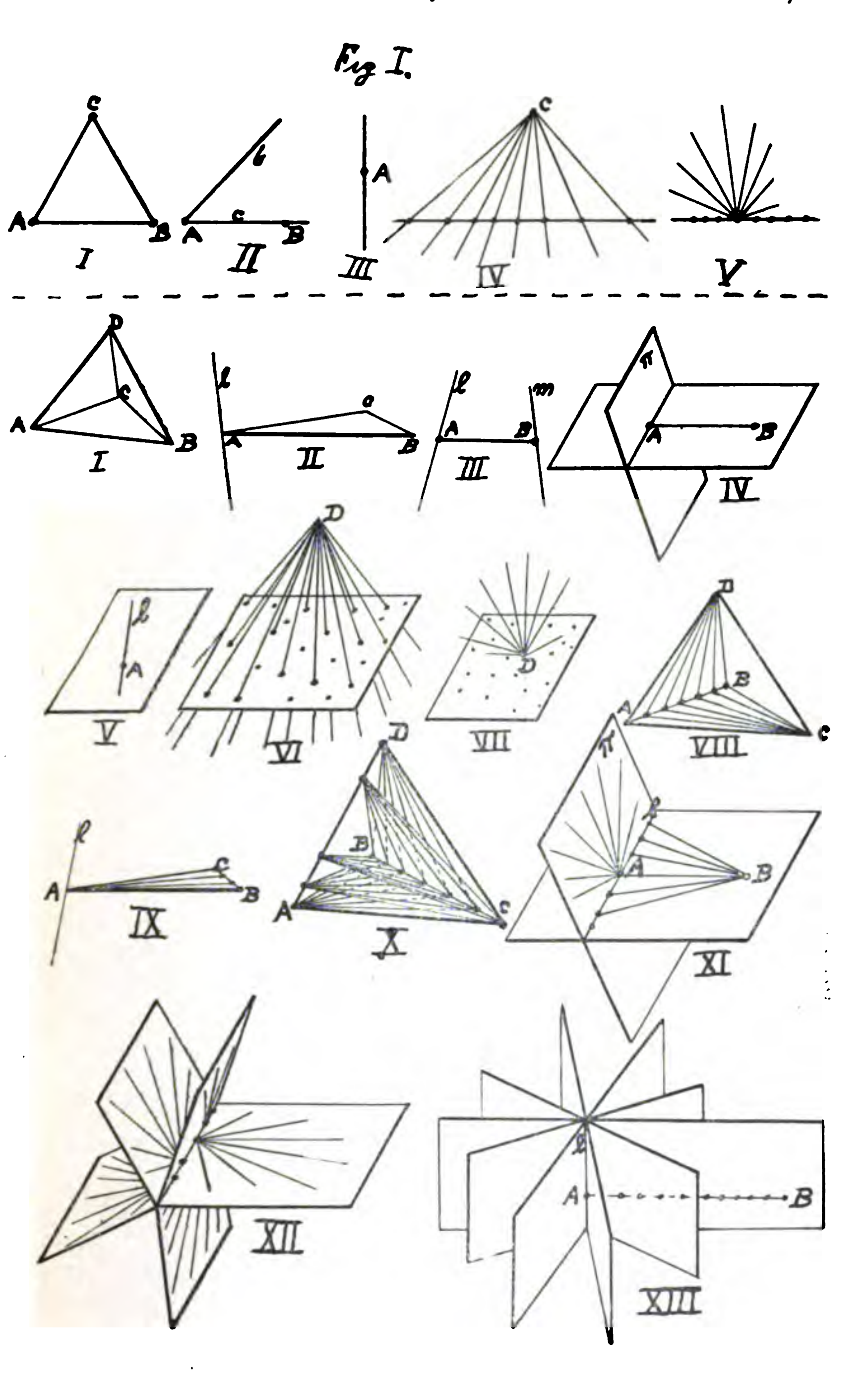
The object of this paper is to give the normal forms of the five types in the plane and of the thirteen types in space. These forms have been arrived at from geometrical considerations rather than by purely algebraic processes. These forms are given for the most part without proof. The detailed proof is given for the first and second types in the plane; the other types are derived by analogous processes.

Part I.—The Plane.

TYPE I.

The most general form of projective transformation in the plane leaves invariant a triangle, the cartesian coordinates of whose vertices may be represented by A(a,b) B(a_1,b_1) and C(a_2,b_2). In a previous paper† it has been shown that a projective transformation leaving a triangle invariant is characterized by the position of the triangle and three anharmonic ratios taken along the invariant

*See Kan. Univ. Quar., Vol. VI, p. 63.
†See Kan. Univ. Quar., Vol. V, p. 85.


Fig I.
C
A
B
I
b
c
A
B
II
A
III
C
IV
V
D
C
A
B
I
l
a
A
B
II
l
m
A
B
III
π
A
B
IV
l
A
V
D
VI
D
VII
D
B
A
C
VIII
l
C
A
B
IX
D
B
A
C
X
π
l
A
B
XI
XII
l
A
B
XIII

lines or through the invariant points; and that the product of these three anharmonic ratios when taken in the same order round the triangle is unity. These three ratios are designated by k, k^{-c}, and k^{c-1}.

Let the point $P(x,y)$ be transformed to $P_1(x_1,y_1)$. The anharmonic ratio of the pencil $C(ABPP_1)=k$. The equations of the lines AC, BC, PC, P_1C are respectively

$$Y=\frac{b_2-b}{a_2-a}X+\ldots,\quad Y=\frac{b_2-b_1}{a_2-a_1}X+\ldots,\quad Y=\frac{y-b_2}{x-a_2}X+\ldots,$$
$$Y=\frac{y_1-b_2}{x_1-a_2}X+\ldots,$$

when X and Y are the current coordinates. Hence we have

$$\frac{\dfrac{y_1-b_2}{x_1-a_2}-\dfrac{b-b_2}{a-a_2}}{\dfrac{y_1-b_2}{x_1-a_2}-\dfrac{b_1-b_2}{a_1-a_2}}=k\frac{\dfrac{y-b_2}{x-a_2}-\dfrac{b-b_2}{a-a_2}}{\dfrac{y-b_2}{x-a_2}-\dfrac{b_1-b_2}{a_1-a_2}}.$$

Similarly the pencil $B(CAPP_1)=k^{c-1}$. Whence

$$\frac{\dfrac{y_1-b_1}{x_1-a_1}-\dfrac{b-b_1}{a-a_1}}{\dfrac{y_1-b_1}{x_1-a_1}-\dfrac{b_2-b_1}{a_2-a_1}}=k^{c-1}\frac{\dfrac{y-b_1}{x-a_1}-\dfrac{b-b_1}{a-a_1}}{\dfrac{y-b_1}{x-a_1}-\dfrac{b_2-b_1}{a_2-a_1}}.$$

These forms readily reduce to*

$$\frac{\begin{vmatrix}x_1 & y_1 & 1\\ a_2 & b_2 & 1\\ a & b & 1\end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix}x_1 & y_1 & 1\\ a_2 & b_2 & 1\\ a_1 & b_1 & 1\end{vmatrix}}=k\frac{\begin{vmatrix}x & y & 1\\ a_2 & b_2 & 1\\ a & b & 1\end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix}x & y & 1\\ a_2 & b_2 & 1\\ a_1 & b_1 & 1\end{vmatrix}};\qquad \frac{\begin{vmatrix}x_1 & y_1 & 1\\ a_1 & b_1 & 1\\ a & b & 1\end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix}x_1 & y_1 & 1\\ a_1 & b_1 & 1\\ a_2 & b_2 & 1\end{vmatrix}}=k^{c-1}\frac{\begin{vmatrix}x & y & 1\\ a_1 & b_1 & 1\\ a & b & 1\end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix}x & y & 1\\ a_1 & b_1 & 1\\ a_2 & b_2 & 1\end{vmatrix}}. \qquad (4)$$

This form (4) is analogous to the first normal form of (1); for the latter may be written

$$\frac{\begin{vmatrix}x_1 & 1\\ m & 1\end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix}x_1 & 1\\ n & 1\end{vmatrix}}=k\frac{\begin{vmatrix}x & 1\\ m & 1\end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix}x & 1\\ n & 1\end{vmatrix}}.$$

*In *Continuierliche Gruppen*, pages 22 and 76, Lie gives results which, if carried a step farther, would lead to these forms.

Since the determinants in (4) stand for double the areas of certain triangles we have

$$k=\frac{\triangle P_1AC}{\triangle P_1BC}:\frac{\triangle PAC}{\triangle PBC'}\qquad k^{c-1}=\frac{\triangle P_1AB}{\triangle P_1BC}:\frac{\triangle PAB}{\triangle PBC}.$$

The normal form (4) may be expressed in terms of homogeneous coordinates by filling out the determinants with z, c, c_1 and c_2.

TYPE II.

The invariant figure of this type consists of two points A(a,b) and $B(a_1,b_1)$, the line AB, and another line ACC_1. Let the point P(x,y) be transformed to $P_1(x_1,y_1)$. This transformation is completely determined by the invariant figure and two essential parameters k and α, where k is the anharmonic ratio of the pencil $A(CBPP_1)$ and α is given by $\frac{1}{AC_1}=\frac{1}{AC}+\alpha$.

The equations of the lines CA, BA, PA, P_1A are respectively

$$Y=mX+\dots,\qquad Y=\frac{b_1-b}{a_1-a}X+\dots,\qquad Y=\frac{y-b}{x-a}X+\dots,$$

$$Y=\frac{y_1-b}{x_1-a}X+\dots$$

Whence we have

$$\frac{\dfrac{y_1-b}{x_1-a}-m}{\dfrac{y_1-b}{x_1-a}-\dfrac{b_1-b}{a_1-a}}=k\frac{\dfrac{y-b}{x-a}-m}{\dfrac{y-b}{x-a}-\dfrac{b_1-b}{a_1-a}}.$$

This form reduces to

$$\frac{\begin{vmatrix}x_1 & y_1 & 1\\ a & b & 1\\ 1 & m & 0\end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix}x_1 & y_1 & 1\\ a & b & 1\\ a_1 & b_1 & 1\end{vmatrix}}=k\frac{\begin{vmatrix}x & y & 1\\ a & b & 1\\ 1 & m & 0\end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix}x & y & 1\\ a & b & 1\\ a_1 & b_1 & 1\end{vmatrix}}. \qquad (5)$$

The equations of the lines C_1A, P_1B, and PB are written

$$Y=mX+b-am,\quad Y=\frac{y_1-b_1}{x_1-a_1}X-\frac{a_1(y_1-b_1)+b_1(x_1-a_1)}{x_1-a_1}$$

$$Y=\frac{y-b_1}{x-a_1}X-\frac{a_1(y-b_1)+b_1(x-a_1)}{x-a_1}.$$

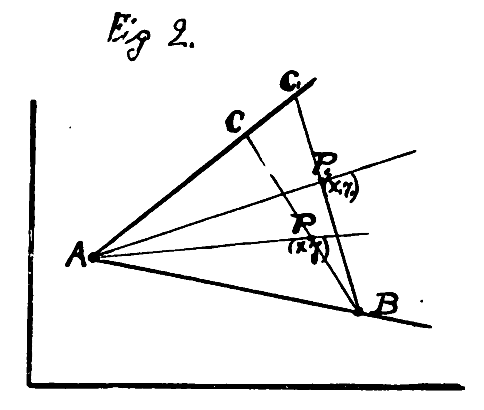
The abscissa or the point C_1 is given by

$$X_1=\frac{b_1(y_1-b_1)-(x_1-a_1)(b_1-b+am)}{y_1-b_1-m(x_1-a_1)}\text{; hence}$$

$$X_1-a=\frac{x_1(b-b_1)-y_1(a-a_1)+ab_1-a_1b}{y_1-b_1-m(x_1-a_1)}.$$

In like manner we find the abscissa of C and thence X—a,

$$X-a=\frac{x(b-b_1)-y(a-a_1)+ab_1-a_1b}{y-b_1-m(x-a_1)}.$$



From Fig. 2 we see that $\frac{X-a}{AC}=\frac{X_1-a}{AC_1}=\cos\theta$, where $\tan\theta=m$. Hence

$$\frac{1}{AC_1}-\frac{1}{AC}=\frac{\cos\theta}{X_1-a}-\frac{\cos\theta}{X-a}=\alpha.$$

Replacing X_1—a and X—a by their values we have

$$\frac{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & 1 \\ 1 & m & 0 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & 1 \\ a & b & 1 \end{vmatrix}}=\frac{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & 1 \\ 1 & m & 0 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & 1 \\ a & b & 1 \end{vmatrix}}+\frac{\alpha}{\cos\theta} \qquad (5a)$$

These two equations (5) and (5a) constitute the normal form of a transformation of type II. They may also be expressed in homogeneous coordinates.

TYPE III.

The invariant figure of type III consists of a single point A(a,b) and a line through it, as Al. Let P(x,y) be transformed to $P_1(x_1,y_1)$. The normal form of this type is given by the following equations:

$$\frac{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & 1 \\ a & b & 1 \\ m & -1 & 0 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & 1 \\ a & b & 1 \\ 1 & m & 0 \end{vmatrix}} = \frac{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & 1 \\ a & b & 1 \\ m & -1 & 0 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & 1 \\ a & b & 1 \\ 1 & m & 0 \end{vmatrix}} + \alpha \qquad (6)$$

$$\frac{1}{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & 1 \\ a & b & 1 \\ 1 & m & 0 \end{vmatrix}} = \frac{1}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & 1 \\ a & b & 1 \\ 1 & m & 0 \end{vmatrix}} + k\alpha \frac{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & 1 \\ a & b & 1 \\ m & -1 & 0 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & 1 \\ a & b & 1 \\ 1 & m & 0 \end{vmatrix}} + \frac{k}{2}\alpha^2 + h\alpha. \qquad (6a)$$

The meanings of these constants or essential parameters are as follows: (a,b) are the coordinates of the point A; $m=\tan\theta$, where θ is the angle which Al makes with the axis of x. The transformation leaves invariant a pencil of conics all having contact of the third order at A; k is the reciprocal of the common radius of curvature at A of these conics, and h|k is the cotangent of the angle which the line of centres of these conics make with Al; $\alpha = -\cot(x',l)$, x′ being the ray through A which is transformed into the perpendicular at Al.

TYPE IV.

Type IV represents a perspective transformation in which the centre A(a,b) is not on the axis of invariant points $y=mx+c$. Let P(x,y) be transformed to $P_1(x_1,y_1)$. Two conditions are to be satisfied; the first is that P, P_1, and A are collinear, the second condition is that the anharmonic ratio of the range $(ABPP_1)=k$, where B is any point on the axis.

The first condition is expressed by the equation

$$\frac{x_1-b}{x_1-a} = \frac{y-b}{x-a}. \qquad (7)$$

The second condition leads to the equation

$$\frac{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & 1 \\ a & b & 1 \\ 1 & m & 0 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & 1 \\ 0 & c & 1 \\ 1 & m & 0 \end{vmatrix}} = k \frac{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & 1 \\ a & b & 1 \\ 1 & m & 0 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & 1 \\ 0 & c & 1 \\ 1 & m & 0 \end{vmatrix}}. \qquad (7a)$$

TYPE V.

Type V represents a perspective transformation in which the centre is on the axis. The two conditions to be satisfied are that A, P, P_1 are collinear and that $\frac{1}{AP_1}=\frac{1}{AP}+\alpha$.

The first condition leads to

$$\frac{y_1-b}{x_1-a}=\frac{y-b}{x-a} \qquad (8)$$

The second condition is satisfied by the equation

$$\frac{1}{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & 1 \\ a & b & 1 \\ 1 & m & o \end{vmatrix}}=\frac{1}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & 1 \\ a & b & 1 \\ 1 & m & o \end{vmatrix}}+\alpha. \qquad (8a)$$

REDUCTION TO CANONICAL FORMS.

By a suitable choice of coordinate axes the five normal forms above may be reduced to their simplest or canonical forms.

If equations (4) be made homogeneous and the invariant triangle be taken for triangle of reference we get

$$\frac{y_1}{z_1}=k\frac{y}{z} \text{ and } \frac{x_1}{z_1}=k^{c-1}\frac{x}{z};$$

if the side z be made the line at infinity, these reduce to

$$x_1=k^{c-1}x, \text{ and } y_1=ky. \qquad (9)$$

In like manner equations (5) and (5a) reduce to

$$\frac{x_1}{z_1}=k\frac{x}{z} \text{ and } \frac{y_1}{z_1}=\frac{y}{z}+\alpha; \text{ or } x_1=kx \text{ and } y_1=y+\alpha. \qquad (10)$$

Equations (6) and (6a) reduce to

$$\frac{x_1}{y_1}=\frac{x}{y}=\alpha \text{ and } \frac{z_1}{y_1}=\frac{z}{y}+k\alpha\frac{x}{y}+\frac{k}{2}\alpha^2+h\alpha.$$

Interchanging y and z and then making $z=1$ we get

$$x_1=x+\alpha \text{ and } y_1=y+k\alpha x+\frac{k}{2}\alpha^2+h\alpha. \qquad (11)$$

Equations (7) and (7a) reduce to

$$\frac{y_1}{x_1}=\frac{y}{x} \text{ and } \frac{y_1}{z_1}=k\frac{y}{z}; \text{ whence we have } x_1=kx \text{ and } y_1=ky. \qquad (12)$$

Equations (8) and (8a) become

$$\left.\begin{array}{c}\frac{y_1}{x_1}=\frac{y}{x} \text{ and } \frac{z_1}{y_1}=\frac{z}{y}+\alpha;\ \text{interchanging } y \text{ and } z,\\ x_1=x \text{ and } y_1=y+\alpha.\end{array}\right\}\quad(13)$$

The final forms in all cases agree with those given by Franz Meyer in the volume of papers read at the Chicago Congress, page 190.

Part II.—Space.

We come now to the consideration of the types of projective transformations in space. The normal forms of the thirteen types are determined from geometrical considerations. The expression of the results in determinant forms is not essential and indeed is sometimes a trifle strained. Each determinant when equated to zero is the equation of some invariant or otherwise essentially important plane connected with the invariant figure. Sometimes it is possible to express the equation of a plane in another form different from that here given and equally simple.

TYPE I.

$$\frac{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1\\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 & 1\\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 & 1\\ a & b & c & 1\end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1\\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 & 1\\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 & 1\\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1\end{vmatrix}}=k\frac{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1\\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 & 1\\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 & 1\\ a & b & c & 1\end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1\\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 & 1\\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 & 1\\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1\end{vmatrix}};\qquad \frac{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1\\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1\\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 & 1\\ a & b & c & 1\end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1\\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1\\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 & 1\\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 & 1\end{vmatrix}}=k^{1-r}\frac{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1\\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1\\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 & 1\\ a & b & c & 1\end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1\\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1\\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 & 1\\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 & 1\end{vmatrix}};$$

$$\frac{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1\\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 & 1\\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1\\ a & b & c & 1\end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1\\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 & 1\\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1\\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 & 1\end{vmatrix}}=k^{1+r-rs}\frac{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1\\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 & 1\\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1\\ a & b & c & 1\end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1\\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 & 1\\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1\\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 & 1\end{vmatrix}}.$$

The invariant tetrahedron is ABCD; the coordinates of A are (a,b,c); those of B are (a_1,b_1,c_1); those of C are (a_2,b_2,c_2); those of D are (a_3,b_3,c_3). k is the anharmonic ratio of the transformation along AB; k^{1-r} is that along AC; k^{1+r-rs} is that along AD.

TYPE II.

$$\frac{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 & 1 \end{vmatrix}} = k \frac{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 & 1 \end{vmatrix}}; \qquad \frac{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 & 1 \end{vmatrix}} = k^{1-r} \frac{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 & 1 \end{vmatrix}};$$

$$\frac{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 & 1 \end{vmatrix}} = \frac{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 & 1 \end{vmatrix}} + \alpha.$$

The coordinates of the point A of the invariant figure are (a,b,c); those of B are (a_1,b_1,c_1); those of C are (a_2,b_2,c_2); p and q are the ratios of the direction cosines of the line l. k is the characteristic anharmonic ratio along AB; k^{1-r} is that along AC; and α is the characteristic constant along l.

TYPE III.

$$\frac{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 1 & p_1 & q_1 & 0 \end{vmatrix}} = k \frac{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 1 & p_1 & q_1 & 0 \end{vmatrix}}; \qquad \frac{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ a & p & q & 0 \\ 1 & p_1 & q_1 & 0 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & 2 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 2 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \end{vmatrix}} = \frac{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \\ 1 & p_1 & q_1 & 0 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \end{vmatrix}} + \alpha;$$

$$\frac{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \\ 1 & p_1 & q_1 & 0 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 1 & p_1 & q_1 & 0 \end{vmatrix}} = \frac{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \\ 1 & p_1 & q_1 & 0 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 1 & p_1 & q_1 & 0 \end{vmatrix}} + \alpha_1.$$

The coordinates of the two invariant points A and B are respectively (a,b,c) and $({}_1,b_1,c_1)$; the directions of the two invariant lines Al and Bl′ are determined by (p,q) and (p_1,q_1). k is the anharmonic ratio along the line AB; α is the characteristic constant along the line Al, and α_1 is that along Bl′.

TYPE IV.

$$\frac{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & f \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \end{vmatrix}} = k \frac{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & f \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \end{vmatrix}} \qquad \frac{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 0 & q & -p & 1 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \end{vmatrix}} = \frac{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 0 & q & -p & 1 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & x & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \end{vmatrix}} + \alpha;$$

$$\frac{1}{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \end{vmatrix}} = \frac{1}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \end{vmatrix}} + m\alpha \frac{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 0 & q & -p & 1 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \end{vmatrix}} + \frac{m}{2}\alpha^2 + h\alpha.$$

The coordinates of the two invariant points A and B are respectively (a,b,c) and (a_1,b_1,c_1); the direction of the line Al is determined by p and q; f determines the inclination of the fixed plane π to the plane ABl. The anharmonic ratio along AB is given by **k**; m, h, and α have the same meanings as in type III of the plane.

TYPE V.

$$\frac{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & f \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & f \end{vmatrix}} = \frac{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & f \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & f \end{vmatrix}} + \alpha;$$

$$\frac{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ 0 & q & -p & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & f \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & f \end{vmatrix}} = \frac{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ 0 & q & -p & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & f \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & f \end{vmatrix}} + k\alpha \frac{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & f \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & x & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & f \end{vmatrix}} + \frac{k}{2}\alpha^2 + h\alpha;$$

$$\frac{1}{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & f \end{vmatrix}} = \frac{1}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & f \end{vmatrix}} +$$

$$m\alpha \frac{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ 1 & b & c & 1 \\ a & q & -p & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & f \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \\ 1 & c & 0 & f \end{vmatrix}} + \left(\frac{km}{2}\alpha^2 + n\alpha\right) \frac{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & f \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & f \end{vmatrix}} + \frac{km}{6}\alpha^3 + \frac{(hm+n)}{2}\alpha^2 + g\alpha.$$

The coordinates of the invariant point A are (a,b,c); the direction of the line Al is determined by p and q; f determines the position of the invariant plane through the line Al. k, h, and α have the same meanings as in type III of the plane. m, n and g have analogous meanings with respect to the bundle of invariant twisted cubics which constitute the path curves of every one parameter group of transformations of this type.

TYPE VI.

$$\frac{x_1 - a}{z_1 - c} = \frac{x - a}{z - c};\ \frac{y_1 - b}{z_1 - c} = \frac{y - b}{z - c};\quad \frac{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ 1 & m & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & n & 1 & 0 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ 0 & l & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & m & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & n & 1 & 0 \end{vmatrix}} = k \frac{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ 1 & m & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & n & 1 & 0 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ 0 & l & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & m & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & n & 1 & 0 \end{vmatrix}}.$$

The coordinates of the invariant point D are (a,b,c); l, m, n fix the position of the plane of invariant points. k is the anharmonic ratio along each invariant line through the point D.

TYPE VII.

$$\frac{x_1-a}{z_1-c}=\frac{x-a}{z-c};\quad \frac{y_1-b}{z_1-c}=\frac{y-b}{z-c};\quad \frac{1}{\begin{vmatrix}x_1&y_1&z_1&1\\a&b&c&1\\1&m&0&0\\0&n&1&0\end{vmatrix}}=\frac{1}{\begin{vmatrix}x&y&z&1\\a&b&c&1\\1&m&0&0\\0&n&\cdot&0\end{vmatrix}}+\alpha.$$

The coordinates of the point D are (a,b,c); m and n determine the position of the plane through D every point of which is invariant. α is the characteristic constant along each line of the bundle through D.

TYPE VIII.

$$\frac{\begin{vmatrix}x_1&y_1&z_1&1\\a&b&c&1\\a_2&b_2&c_2&1\\1&p&q&0\end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix}x_1&y_1&z_1&1\\a&b&c&1\\a_1&b_1&c_1&1\\a_2&b_2&c_2&1\end{vmatrix}}=k\frac{\begin{vmatrix}x&y&z&1\\a&b&c&1\\a_2&b_2&c_2&1\\1&p&q&0\end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix}x&y&z&1\\a&b&c&1\\a_1&b_1&c_1&1\\a_2&b_2&c_2&1\end{vmatrix}};\quad \frac{\begin{vmatrix}x_1&y_1&z_1&1\\a&b&c&1\\a_1&b_1&c_1&1\\1&p&q&0\end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix}x_1&y_1&z_1&1\\a&b&c&1\\a_1&b_1&c_1&1\\a_2&b_2&c_2&1\end{vmatrix}}=k^{1-r}\frac{\begin{vmatrix}x&y&z&1\\a&b&c&1\\a_1&b_1&c_1&1\\1&p&q&0\end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix}x&y&z&1\\a&b&c&1\\a_1&b_1&c_1&1\\a_2&b_2&c_2&1\end{vmatrix}};$$

$$\frac{\begin{vmatrix}x_1&y_1&z_1&1\\a_1&b_1&c_1&1\\a_2&b_2&c_2&1\\1&p&q&0\end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix}x_1&y_1&z_1&1\\a&b&c&1\\a_1&b_1&c_1&1\\a_2&b_2&c_2&1\end{vmatrix}}=\frac{\begin{vmatrix}x&y&z&1\\a_1&b_1&c_1&1\\a_2&b_2&c_2&1\\1&p&q&0\end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix}x&y&z&1\\a&b&c&1\\a_1&b_1&c_1&1\\a_2&b_2&c_2&1\end{vmatrix}}.$$

In these equations (a,b,c) are the coordinates of some one of the invariant points of the line AB, and p and q determine the direction of this line; (a_1,b_1,c_1) and (a_2,b_2,c_2) are the coordinates of C D respectively. k is the anharmonic ratio along each of the invariant lines in the plane ABC; k^{1-r} is that along each invariant line in the plane ABD.

TYPE IX.

$$\frac{\begin{vmatrix}x_1&y_1&z_1&1\\a&b&c&1\\1&p&q&0\\1&p_1&q_1&0\end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix}x_1&y_1&z_1&1\\a&b&c&1\\a_1&b_1&c_1&1\\1&p_1&q_1&0\end{vmatrix}}=k\frac{\begin{vmatrix}x&y&z&1\\a&b&c&1\\1&p&q&0\\1&p_1&q_1&0\end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix}x&y&z&1\\a&b&c&1\\a_1&b_1&c_1&1\\1&p_1&q_1&0\end{vmatrix}};\quad \frac{\begin{vmatrix}x_1&y_1&z_1&1\\a&b&c&1\\a_1&b_1&c_1&1\\1&p&q&0\end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix}x_1&y_1&z_1&1\\a&b&c&1\\a_1&b_1&c_1&1\\1&p_1&q_1&0\end{vmatrix}}=k\frac{\begin{vmatrix}x&y&z&1\\a&b&c&1\\a_1&b_1&c_1&1\\1&p&q&0\end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix}x&y&z&1\\a&b&c&1\\a_1&b_1&c_1&1\\1&p_1&q_1&0\end{vmatrix}};$$

$$\frac{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \\ 1 & p_1 & q_1 & 0 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 1 & p_1 & q_1 & 0 \end{vmatrix}} = \frac{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \\ 1 & p_1 & q_1 & 0 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 1 & p_1 & q_1 & 0 \end{vmatrix}} + a.$$

The coordinates of the invariant point A are (a,b,c) while p and q determine the direction of the line Al; (a_1,b_1,c_1) are the coordinates of some point on the line BC, every point of which is an invariant point, while p_1 and q_1 determine the direction of BC. k is the anharmonic ratio along each line of the pencil with vertex at A and lying in the plane ABC; a is the characteristic constant along the line Al.

TYPE X.

$$\frac{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a & p & q & 0 \\ 1 & p_1 & q_1 & 0 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 1 & p_1 & q_1 & 0 \end{vmatrix}} = k \frac{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \\ a & p_1 & q_1 & 0 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 1 & p_1 & q_1 & 0 \end{vmatrix}}; \quad \frac{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 1 & p_1 & x_1 & 0 \end{vmatrix}} = k \frac{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 1 & p_1 & q_1 & 0 \end{vmatrix}};$$

$$\frac{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \\ 1 & p_1 & q_1 & 0 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 1 & p_1 & q_1 & 0 \end{vmatrix}} = \frac{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \\ 1 & p_1 & q_1 & 0 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 1 & p_1 & q_1 & 0 \end{vmatrix}}.$$

(a,b,c) are the coordinates of some point on the line AD, and (p,q) determine the direction of AD; (a,b,c) are the coordinates of some point on the line BC, while (p,q) determines the direction of BC. k is the anharmonic ratio along every line joining a point on AD with a point on BC.

TYPE XI.

$$\frac{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & f \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \end{vmatrix}} = k \frac{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & f \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \end{vmatrix}}; \quad \frac{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 0 & q & -p & 1 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \end{vmatrix}} = \frac{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 0 & q & -p & 1 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & x & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \end{vmatrix}}.$$

$$\frac{1}{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \end{vmatrix}} = \frac{1}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \end{vmatrix}} + \alpha.$$

The coordinates of the point A are (a,b,c); the direction of the line AI is determined by p and q. The coordinates of the point B are (a_1,b_1,c_1); f determines the inclination of the plane π to the plane of ABI. k is the anharmonic ratio along each of the lines of the pencil in the plane ABI passing through B; α is the characteristic constant along each line of the pencil in the plane π passing through A.

TYPE XII.

$$\frac{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & f \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & f \end{vmatrix}} = \frac{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & f \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & f \end{vmatrix}}. \quad \frac{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ 0 & q & -p & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & f \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & f \end{vmatrix}} = \frac{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ 0 & q & -p & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & f \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & f \end{vmatrix}} + \alpha.$$

$$\frac{1}{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & f \end{vmatrix}} = \frac{1}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ a & b & c & 1 \\ 1 & p & q & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & f \end{vmatrix}} + \alpha'.$$

(a,b,c) are the coordinates of some point on the line of invariant points and p and q determine the direction of this same line.

TYPE XIII.

$$\frac{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1\\ a & b & c & 1\\ 1 & p & q & 0\\ 0 & q_1 & p_1 & 0\end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1\\ a & b & c & 1\\ 1 & p & q & 0\\ 1 & p_1 & q_1 & 0\end{vmatrix}} = \frac{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1\\ a & b & c & 1\\ 1 & p & q & 0\\ 0 & q_1 & p_1 & 1\end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1\\ a & b & c & 1\\ 1 & p & q & 0\\ 1 & p_1 & q_1 & 0\end{vmatrix}}; \quad \frac{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1\\ a & b & c & 1\\ 1 & p_1 & q_1 & 0\\ 0 & q & -p & 1\end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1\\ a & b & c & 1\\ 1 & p & q & 0\\ 1 & p_1 & q_1 & 0\end{vmatrix}} = \frac{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1\\ a & b & c & 1\\ 1 & p_1 & q_1 & 0\\ 0 & q & -p & 1\end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1\\ a & b & c & 1\\ 1 & p & q & 0\\ 1 & p_1 & q_1 & 0\end{vmatrix}} + \alpha.$$

$$\frac{1}{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1\\ a & b & c & 1\\ 1 & p & q & 0\\ 1 & p_1 & q_1 & 0\end{vmatrix}} = \frac{1}{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1\\ a & b & c & 1\\ 1 & p & q & 0\\ 1 & p_1 & q_1 & 0\end{vmatrix}} + m\alpha \frac{\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1\\ a & b & c & 1\\ 1 & p_1 & q_1 & 0\\ 0 & q & -p & 1\end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1\\ a & b & c & 1\\ 1 & p & q & 0\\ 1 & p_1 & q_1 & 0\end{vmatrix}} + \frac{m}{2}\alpha^2 + h\alpha.$$

The coordinates of the point A of the invariant figure are (a,b,c); p and q determine the direction of the line Al; p_1 and q_1 determine the direction of the line AB, every point of which is an invariant point. m and h have the same meanings as k and h in type III in the plane. m and h are the same for all planes passing through Al.

If k be made equal to one in the equations of type IV, the result is equations of type XIII as above.

CANONICAL FORMS.

The canonical forms of the thirteen types of projective transformations in space may be obtained in the same way as that employed for the forms in the plane.

Type I. $x_1 = kx$; $y_1 = k^{1-r}y$; $z_1 = k^{1+r-rs}z$.

Type II. $x_1 = kx$; $y_1 = k^{1-r}y$; $z_1 = z + \alpha$.

Type III. $x_1 = kx$; $y_1 = ky + kx\alpha$; $z = z + \alpha'$.

Type IV. $x_1 = kx$; $y_1 = y + \alpha$; $z_1 = z + m\alpha y + m\frac{\alpha^2}{2} + n\alpha$.

Type V. $x_1 = x + \alpha$; $y_1 = y + k\alpha x + k\frac{\alpha^2}{2} + h\alpha$; $z_1 = z + m\alpha x +$

$$(km\frac{\alpha^2}{2} + n\alpha)y + km\frac{\alpha^3}{6} + (hm + n)\frac{\alpha^2}{2} + g\alpha.$$

Type VI. $x_1=x;\ y_1=y;\ z_1=kz.$

Type VII. $x_1=x;\ y_1=y;\ z_1=z+\alpha.$

Type VIII. $x_1=kx;\ y=k^{1-r}y;\ z=z.$

Type IX. $x_1=kx;\ y_1=ky;\ z=z+\alpha.$

Type X. $x_1=kx;\ y_1=ky;\ z_1=z.$

Type XI. $x_1=kx;\ y=y;\ z=z+\alpha.$

Type XII. $x_1=x;\ y=y+\alpha;\ z=z+\alpha'.$

Type XIII. $x_1=x;\ y_1=y+\alpha;\ z_1=z+m\alpha y+m\frac{\alpha^2}{2}+n\alpha.$

On the Skull of Xerobates (?) undata Cope.

Contributions from the Paleontological Laboratory, No. 32.

BY J. Z. GILBERT.

In the University of Kansas Museum there are a number of specimens of turtles collected from the Loup Fork Beds of Phillips Co , Kansas, by Messrs. Sternberg, West and Overton. This material has been entrusted to me by Dr. Williston, under whose advice and direction I have thoroughly studied it, with the result that two well-defined species have been made out, the detailed description of which will be given in a later paper. A well-preserved and nearly complete skull of one of the species is of so much importance that it has been thought worth while to give here a preliminary description of it in advance of the fuller paper,

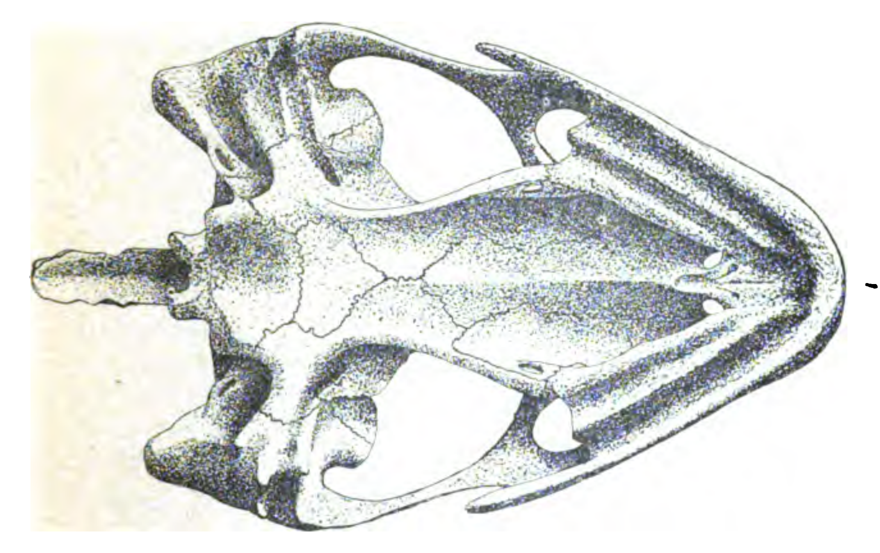


Fig. 1.–Skull of Xerobates undata Cope. from above: natural size.

inasmuch as this part of the anatomy of these Miocene reptiles has hitherto been wholly unknown. It is provisionally referred for the present to *Xerobates* (*Testudo*) *undata* Cope, but its specific identity is more or less doubtful, inasmuch as the original description of the species to which it is referred is very incomplete and imperfect.

The skull is rounded in the premaxillary region, and is rather narrow and long. The outline of the base of the skull may be described as follows: The sides in front of the anterior margin of the infratemporal fossæ make an angle of sixty degrees with each other; from this same margin to the quadrate an angle of twelve degrees. Seen from the side, the skull thins posteriorly, the dorsal and ventral planes making an angle of eight degrees with each other. The dorsal plane lies upon the highest portion of the supraoccipital crest, and the upper, flattened surface of the skull between the orbits; the ventral or basal plane extending from the lower margin of the outer maxillary cutting edge through the quadrates. Between the two points touched by the dorsal plane there is a long, shallow concavity, which merges into the broad, shallow depression in the region of the fronto-parietal suture. The supraoccipital crest is small, and arches only a little above the otherwise gently downward sloping bone.

The anterior nares are one-third wider than high; they are large and quadrilateral. From the highest portion of the cranium the face slopes downward and outward, with a small degree of convexity. The orbits are large and deep, round in outline, and look obliquely outward, forward and upward. The sutural union between the frontal and postfrontal occurs immediately above the middle of the orbit. The postorbital and infraorbital bars are thin and plate-like. The skull throughout, in fact, is characterized by its general lightness of bone. The supratemporal fosæ are large, oval, with their long diameter making an angle of forty-five degrees with the sagittal plane. They look obliquely backward, upward and slightly outward. On the posterior border of these fossæ there is a prominent, quadrilateral, short, stout process for muscular attachment. This process is concave on its upper and anterior surface, and its long axis stands obliquely inward and forward. It is formed by the squamosal and prootic. Below the temporal bar there is a broad, deep notch, the plane of which looks immediately outward, with only a slight upward and forward obliquity. The process from the maxilla extends prominently backward for about 12 mm.

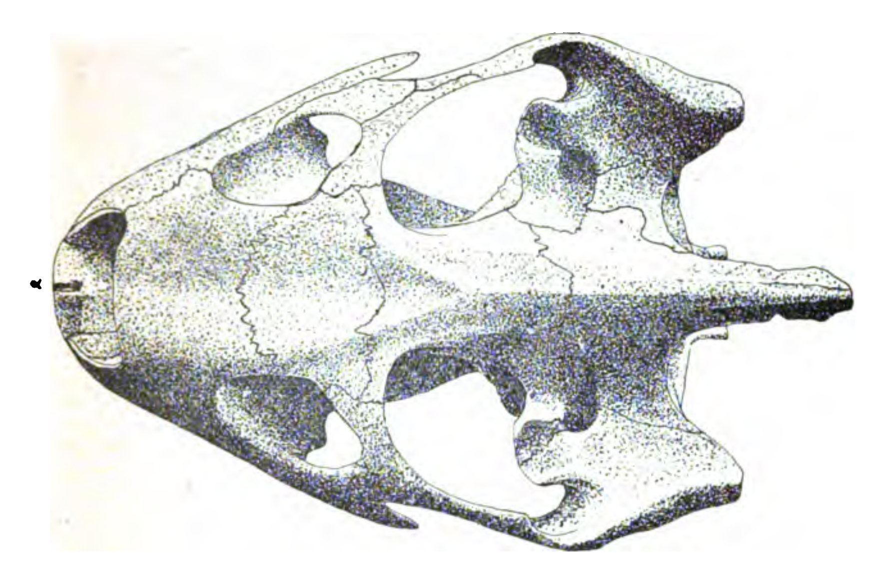


Fig. 2. –Skull of Xerobates undata Cope. from below; natural size.

The premaxillaries are sharp at their lower border, which is gently concave in side view. Seen from below the lower plane is very uneven, with the basisphenoid only flattened.

The premaxillaries are straight on the edge below and arched to a point above. They form almost the entire floor of the anterior nares. They are convex transversely in the middle, and doubly convex in front. They have no articulation with the palatine; in front below there is a deep, round fossa for the reception of the beak of the mandible. The posterior nares at the posterior margins of the bones are rounded. The premaxillaries articulate posteriorly with the stout descending process of the vomer. The maxillaries have two cutting edges, the inner one with its plane much above the plane of the outer. They send up a broad process, thinned and narrowed above to join the prefrontal. The outer cutting edges increase in thickness from a sharp, serrate one, to one four millimeters thick above. The pterygoids, palatines and vomers together form a deep ascending channel, broadest a little in front of the palatine foramina; the channel is divided by a low ridge in the middle, which in the anterior part of the vomer is thin and sharp and curves downward. The posterior process extends from the outer cutting edge, instead of from the second, as in many turtles. It is thin, acutely angled, and extends slightly outward and downward below the basal plane, while the outer surface slopes at an angle of forty-five degrees. The grove on the inner

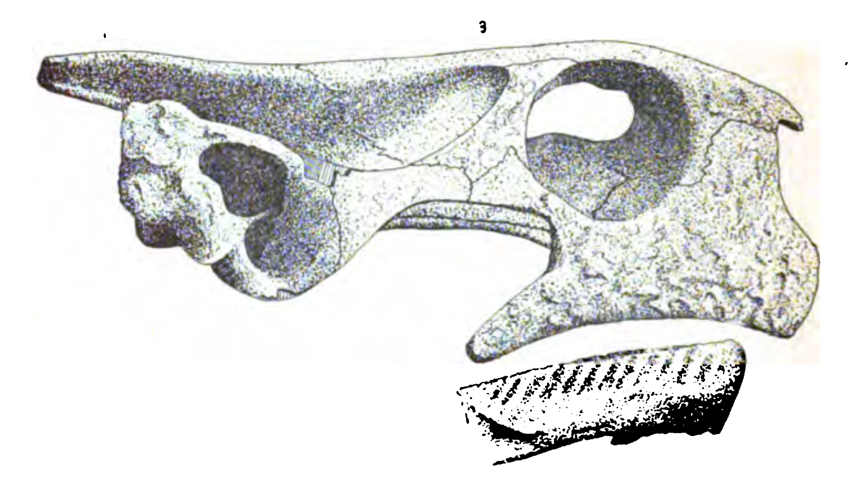


Fig. 3.—Skull of Xerobates undata Cope, natural size.

side also deep. The maxilla does not curve inward anteriorly to meet the premaxilla, but is rounded in this region by thinning to a sharp edge. The inner edge of the maxilla makes a low, almost serrate border, becoming lower anteriorly until it merges into the level bottom of the inner channel.

The palatine foramen is situated near the sutural union of the palatine and pterygoid. There is a strong ridge below the foramen and, on either side, a narrow, shallow grove. The pterygoids have the anterolateral sides projecting as long, narrow, rod-like processes, standing at an angle of thirty-three degrees with each other. They unite for a short distance between the basisphenoid and vomer deepening anteriorly the palatine region. The lateral edges approach each other to just behind the anterior end of the basisphenoid, where they diverge gradually, becoming less prominent, and finally terminating in the postero-lateral process. The vomer has very irregular margins and a medial ridge throughout its entire length, except at the anterior end, where a small, deep, narrow, U-shaped groove occurs. Anteriorly the vomer sends down a strong, triangular column, the anterior surface of which is deeply and angularly channelled. The jugal is an hourglass-shaped bone, and is very light. The quadrato-jugal is a much wider bone than the jugal. It is broad, thin and plate like, expanding anteriorly to a width of twelve millimeters, posteriorly to eight.

The deep external tympanic fossa of the quadrate is oval or inverted reniform, with its long axis directed downward and forward. The squamosal is arched over the tympanic fossa from the

inner, almost vertical surface, and takes no part in the formation of a false roof.

The occipital condyle is triangular, broadest above, with a slight depression on the posterior surface. Back of the basisphenoid there is a well-marked concavity, the anterior and lateral margins of which coincide with those of the bone itself. The basioccipital processes are strong.

The exoccipital fossa is a shallow, round pit, with its ventral wall quite low. Immediately above this concavity, and over the sutural union betweeen the exoccipital and the opisthotic, there is a long, shallow concavity.

The epiotic is only partially fused with the supraoccipital. The external carotid foramen is midway between the tympanic rim and the zygomatic arch; there is a shallow crease curving upward and forward from this foramen. On the posterior margin of the temporal fossa and in front and exterior to the carotid foramen there is a large, stout, dorsally concave tuberosity, the suture between the prootic and the squamosal passing through its middle and through the carotid foramen. A broad, shallow groove separates the tuberosity from the zygoma, and there is another on the inner side. The external auditory meatus is oval; it looks downwards, backwards and slightly outwards.

The basisphenoid is triangular, with its base posterior; the surface is in a plane of about twenty-six degrees with that of the base of the skull.

The parietals form no portion of a false roof; they are rounded above, and there is a perceptible ridge arising from each antero-lateral process and fusing with its mate a little in front of the occipital crest. The antero-lateral margin is at an angle of forty-five degrees with the horizontal. There is a broad, shallow depression on the upper surface.

The frontals are much wider than long, with a broad, median depression, a continuation of that from the parietals. The antero-lateral ridges of the parietals continue on the frontals. The rhinencephalic groove below is not bridged over.

The prefrontals are strongly convex forward and laterally. The compressed top and flattened sides give to this region a decidedly quadrilateral shape. The anterior margin is concave antero-posteriorly and convex vertically. On the inner side and from the posterior part, a strong triangular process extends inward and backward to meet the upward and forward process of the vomer. The anterior ventral part of this process has an angular ridge,

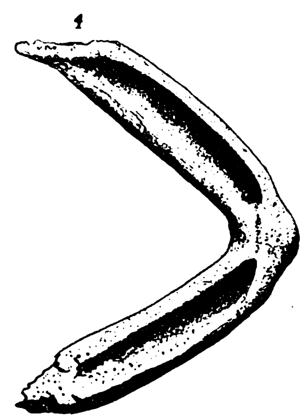


Fig. 4.—Mandible of Xerobates undata Cope, from above; natural size.

which, with its mate, is so prominent that it constricts the nasal cavity at this place, forming a smaller, secondary nasal cavity behind. This lateral is equitrilateral in cross-section, while the anterior portion is distinctly quadrilateral.

The mandibles have two strong cutting edges enclosing a deep grove between them, the channel for the inner ridge of the maxilla. The symphysial portion slopes forward at an angle of fifteen degrees, and the lower portion of the symphysial region extends backward so as to cause the otherwise angular symphysis to be broadly concave.

A Plan for Increasing the Capacity of the Steam Heating Plant of the Spooner Library, University of Kansas.

BY FRANK E. WARD.

The buildings of the University of Kansas are all heated from one boiler-house, which is on the south side of the hill and 400 feet from Snow Hall and 500 feet from Fraser Hall and the physics building which are on the top of the hill. The Spooner library building is placed just below the top of the hill on the northeast side, and 1300 feet from the boiler house.

It is not the purpose of the writer to offer criticism or suggestions regarding the method of heating the library building; but to show how a difficulty in forcing the steam over to the library was overcome by a simple plan, which has now been in successful operation for two years.

After the steam-heating surfaces have been carefully calculated and the pipes put in place in a large building like the library, it is often found that unforseen drafts and exposures necessitate changes or enlargement of surfaces, and at best the plant is often insufficient in very cold weather. Several changes were made in this case until the heat was very well distributed. But when severe weather set in it was found impossible to heat the library and it was closed several times on this account, while the other buildings which are heated from the same source were almost too warm.

The low pressure gravity system used in heating all the University buildings, except the physics building, in which all the condensation returns to the boilers by gravity, is as follows: From a battery of four boilers there are two pipes which carry away steam and return the condensation. These pipes maintain an equal pressure which varies, but in this case does not exceed twenty pounds per square inch. From these main pipes, branches are taken off which lead to and return from all the above mentioned buildings. Fig. 1 represents the 10-inch main and 6-inch return.

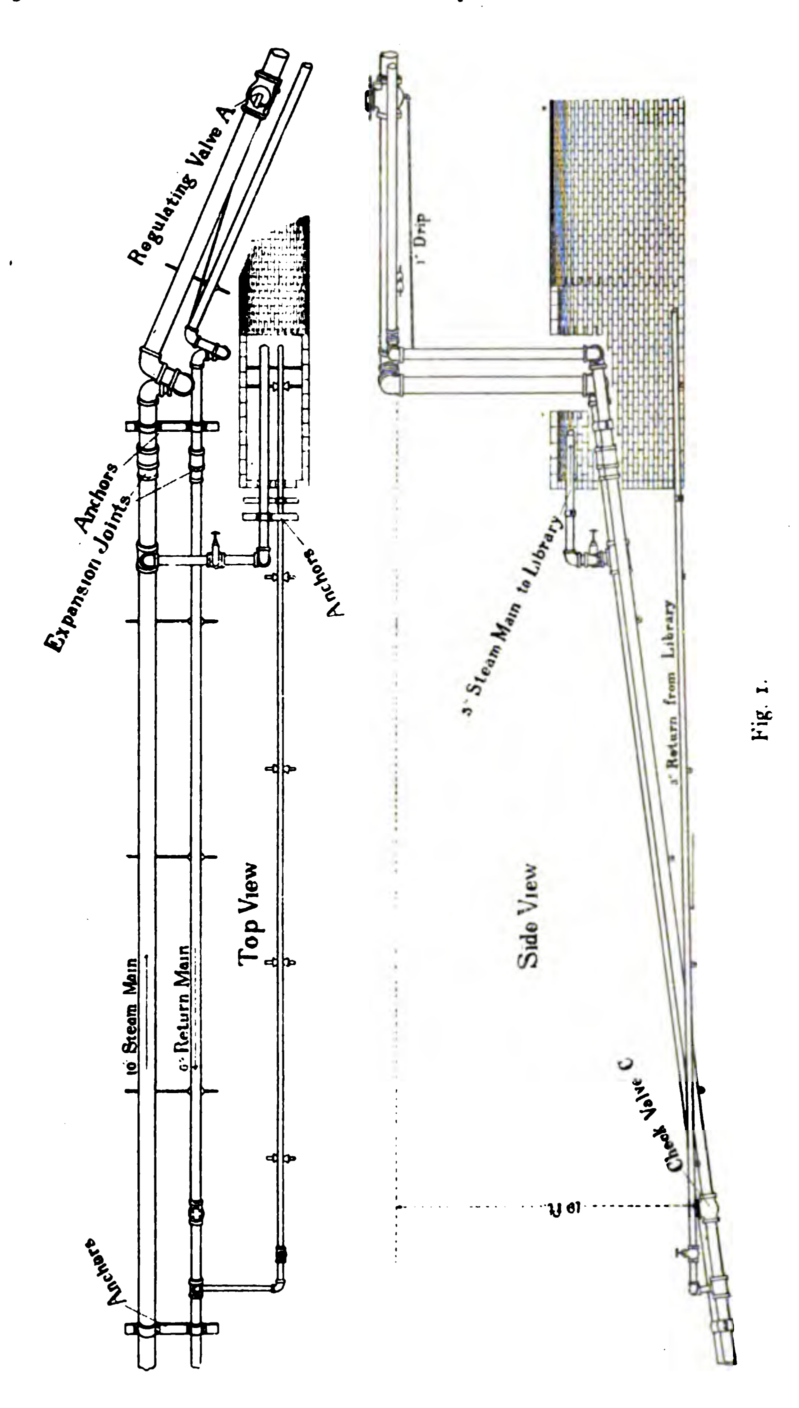

Regulating Valve A
Anchors
Expansion Joints
Anchors
Top View
10' Steam Main
6' Return Main
Anchors
1' Drip
3' Steam Main to Library
3' Return from Library
Side View
Check Valve C
19 ft

Fig. 1.

These pipes connect low enough to run through a tunnel nearly 1000 feet long to and from the library. The steam pipe starts into the top of the tunnel and gradually descends to the middle at the far end where the return pipe starts and descends to the bottom at the end of the tunnel as shown.

After a trial of two winters, it was found necessary to maintain a greater pressure in these pipes than in the mains leading to and returning from the buildings which are nearer and on a higher level, the natural draft being upward.

Propositions were made by reliable firms, which would have reached the required end, but they were expensive both in first cost and in operation.

The writer's plan which was put into operation is:

First—a regulating valve, Fig. 2, placed in the 10-inch main at A (see Fig. 1) to form a back pressure at that point to any desired amount (say 5 pounds) which can be regulated by the weight W.

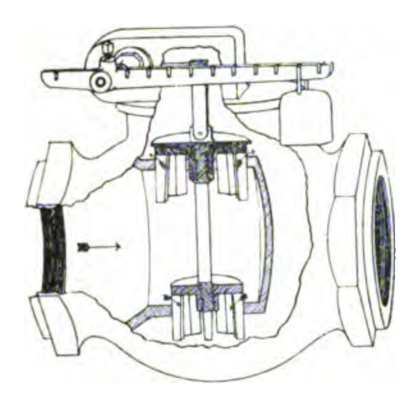


Fig. 2.

Thus the back pressure will fill the long pipes leading to the library with steam at a pressure of 5 pounds or any desired amount to overcome the difference between its heating capacity and that of the remaining buildings. Then as the pressure rises it is permitted to pass through the regulating valve so that when the back pressure is 10 pounds, the pressure beyond the valve is 5 pounds. If this should heat the library too much the weight can be placed back a notch and the back pressure reduced by allowing the boiler pressure to reduce, and the temperature of the other buildings will not be changed. These valves are used successfully in many places similar to this. In our case, however, the return main will have an equal pressure effected by the necessary connection to the

steam main, which will cause the condensation of water and moist vapors to back up into the buildings before the regulating valve opens. This is usually corrected by the use of pumps or traps which hold the condensation under control, and it was proposed to put in an expensive plant of this kind until the present plan was suggested.

Second—a check valve, Fig. 3, is placed in the 6-inch return main at C (Fig. 1) in such a way as to prevent a back pressure of 10 pounds from passing up into the return pipes which have a

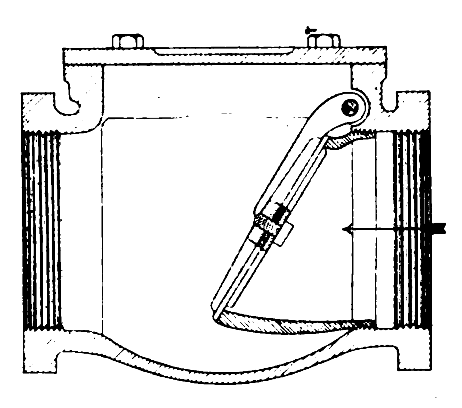


Fig. 3.

pressure of 5 pounds. Then when the water and moist steam gather on the low pressure side of the check valve, they separate and the water rises until the column thus formed increases the pressure enough to open the check valve C, the water running through until the valve is closed again by the pressure on the other side. This valve is entirely self-acting, and the amount of water that is allowed to pass out at one time is very small, for when the valve is open the area on both sides is equal and when the water runs through enough to make the pressures both equal the valve will close, but when closed the area of the top is greater than that of the bottom and the amount of water in addition which is required to equalize the pressure is all that passes through at one time. This makes the operation frequent and keeps the water in the boilers at about the same level. At night when the steam goes down there is no pressure to hold up the water, so the pipes empty themselves, and freezing is prevented. The extra water is needed in the morning, so that in every respect the result is satisfactory.

On special occasions when Library Hall only is heated the weight W is placed out on the end of the arm and the other buildings will not be heated. When heat is not wanted in the library and is needed elsewhere the weight is removed entirely. This requires but little time and is all that is done to operate both valves and equalize the heat.

When the weather is not too severe the boilers are capable of supplying the demands, but they are taxed to their utmost when the wind is very cold.

The Hyperbolic Spiral—Its Properties and Uses.

BY WALTER K. PALMER.

There are many well known and useful varieties of spirals. Of these, one of the most interesting in its properties and uses is the Hyperbolic Spiral.

It is called *Hyperbolic* because its equation is of just the same form as the rectangular equation of the common hyperbola, and because it may be plotted by transforming the rectangular co-ordinates of this hyperbola into polar co-ordinates. It is also called the "*Reciprocal*" or "*Inverse*" *Spiral,* from the fact that one co-ordinate varies inversely as the other, or equals a constant times the reciprocal of the other. These facts are shown fully by the general form of the curve's equation, which is $r=\frac{c}{\theta}$, where r is one co-ordinate, the radius vector, θ the other, as shown in Fig. 1, and c, a numerical constant, the magnitude of which determines the size of the particular spiral in question.

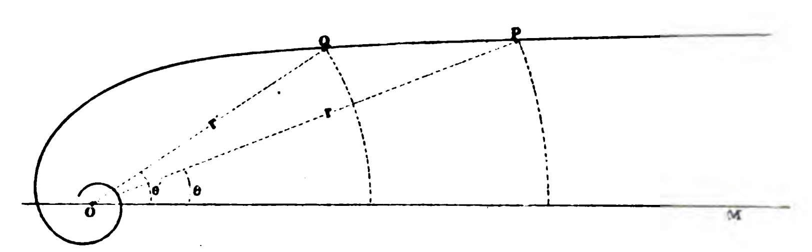


Fig. 1.

Now this relation between r and θ and c is the same at every point along the curve as well as at P. That is, at any other point Q, the particular length of r there, (r') equals the number c, divided by the particular angular value of θ (θ') corresponding to r'.

Bearing this in mind a practical drawing board construction for the spiral may be derived readily and many interesting properties discovered.

PLOTTING THE SPIRAL.

BY TRANSFORMING THE COMMON HYPERBOLA.

The first method which suggests itself from a consideration of the characteristics of the spiral, is that of replotting a common hyperbola to polar co-ordinates. If we take an accurate plotting of one branch of an hyperbola, which can readily be made by the well known rule, and draw a number of verticals, equally spaced, as in Fig. 2, and then lay out the series of equally spaced radial lines shown in Fig. 3, a Hyperbolic Spiral may be plotted upon the latter, using Fig. 2 as an auxiliary diagram.

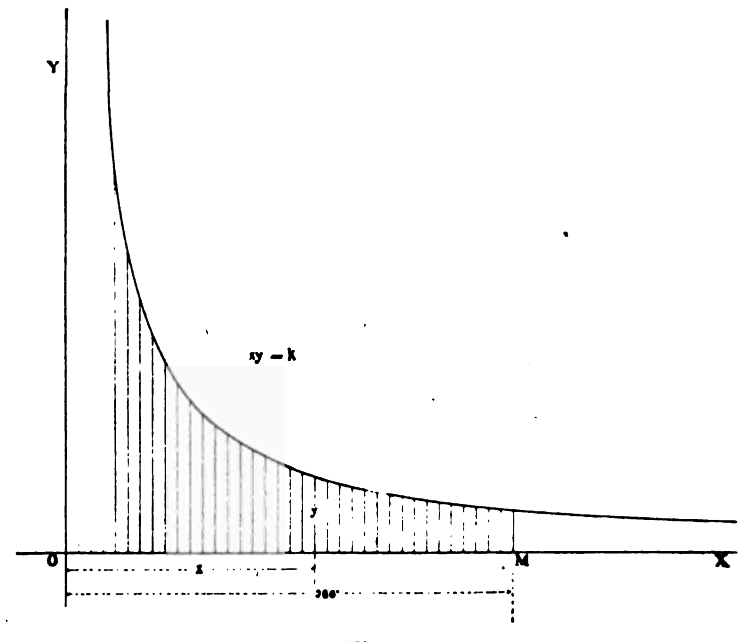


Fig. 2.

Commencing, say, with the longest vertical of Fig. 2, lay it off with the dividers upon the radial line No. 3, and the next on No. 4, and so on. The points thus marked off are points on the line of the hyperbolic spiral and may now be joined by a smooth curve.

It is plain from the characteristics of this hyperbola, as well as from an inspection of the equation of the spiral, that the curve may be continued indefinitely in either direction, never reaching either the pole, O, or the initial line.

This gives a correct construction for the spiral, but it is necessary to plan the diagram of Fig. 2 in a correct way in order to se-

cure a desired value of the constant of the spiral and to have OL the initial line of the spiral, as it should be. It is always desirable to obtain a spiral with a certain definite value for the constant, since this constant fixes the size of the spiral.

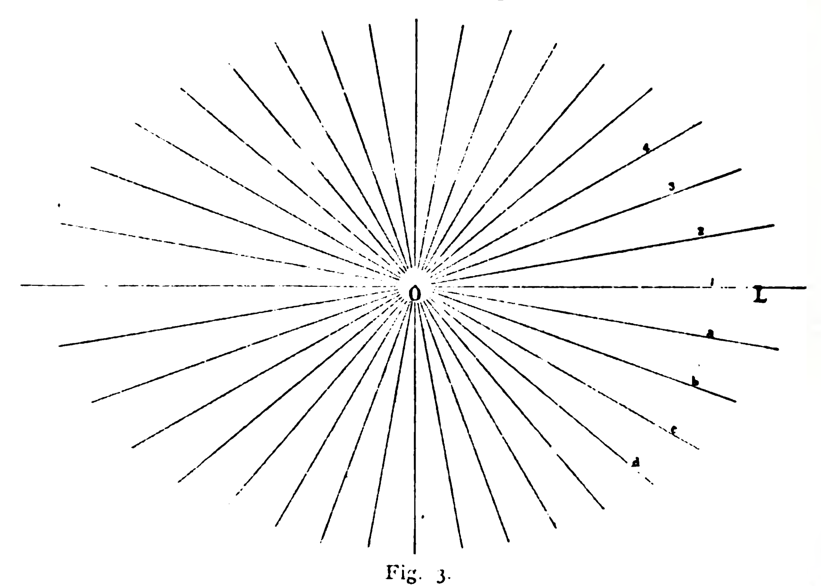


Fig. 3.

This can be attained, for the case of θ measured in degrees and r in inches, by choosing a suitable space along the horizontal line of the drawing, as OM, to represent 360 (degrees) and making the constant k of the hyperbola equal to the desired c of the spiral. Then by dividing the space OM into as many equal parts as the 360 degrees of Fig. 3 and drawing a vertical to the hyperbola at each division point, each radius vector of Fig. 3 will have a vertical corresponding to it on Fig. 2, from which its true length can at once be set off by the dividers.

A serious practical difficulty is found, however, in trying to set off accurately the lengths of the long verticals approaching OY in Fig. 2, for a very slight error to the right or left in drawing one of these long ordinates to the hyperbola produces an error many times as great in the length, which results in a serious irregularity in the spiral. This method has given satisfactory plottings, using the greatest care, but necessitates extreme care and the most skillful use of the drawing instruments.

BY CALCULATING THE RADII.

Apparently the simplest and most natural way of constructing this spiral would be to merely figure by simple arithmetic the

length of each radius vector and measure it off by use of the decimal scale, estimating tenths of tenths on the scale, thus setting off results to hundredths. And this is entirely satisfactory in the results attained, but it is found tedious figuring each radius and measuring it off. A diagram from which each radius line can be set off at once by the dividers is desirable. Then a few of the radii may be measured as a check on the graphical work.

Hence the following has been devised as by far the best drawing board construction for this spiral. It obviates all the difficulties of of the preceeding and is very satisfactory in all respects.

PRACTICAL DRAWING BOARD CONSTRUCTION FOR THE SPIRAL.

Lay out the diagram of Fig. 4, drawing first the two lines OY and OX at right angles. Then choose the distance OM, as large as the size of the paper will permit, allowing room at the right of M, for at least ½ OM. OM is to represent the degrees of one circumference, 360. Then draw AH parallel to OM at a distance above, equal to the constant c, of the equation $r=\frac{c}{\theta}$, in the same scale as the 360. That is, if we choose 120 for the value of the constant c, and this gives a very satisfactory size of the spiral, c will be made $\frac{120}{360}=\frac{1}{3}$ of the length chosen for OM. Having drawn AH, draw AD at unit's distance to the right of OY to the same scale which is to be used for r on the plotting. If r is to be measured in inches, as is usually the case, make AD one inch to the right of OY.

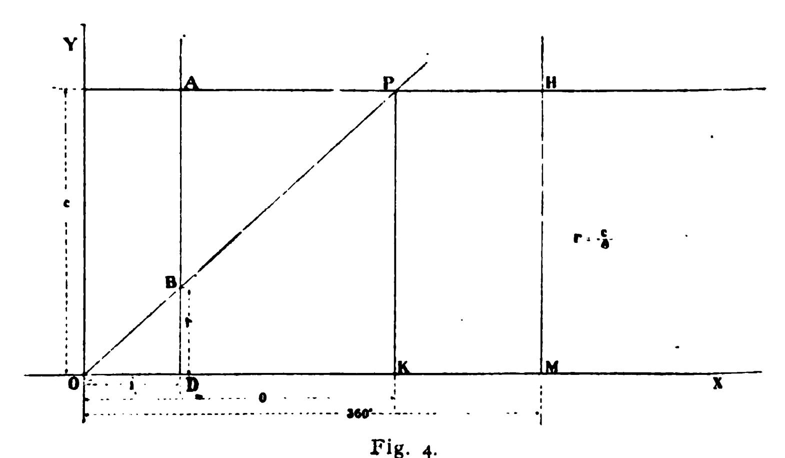


Fig. 4.

Now if any value of θ be measured off in degrees to the scale of OM, that is as the correct fractional part of OM (as OK), the corresponding value of r in the equation $r = \frac{c}{\theta}$ is at once seen at DB; for, drawing KP, and PO cutting AD at B, we have by similar triangles $\frac{BD}{DO} = \frac{KP}{KO}$, or $r = \frac{c}{\theta}$.

To utilize this prepare the diagram of radial lines for the plotting, as in Fig. 3, using as many lines as possible. It is well to divide each quadrant into eighteen parts by trisecting the quadrant, then trisecting each part by the dividers and then bisecting each of these parts. Then each space will represent five degrees. For the sake of accuracy these divisions should be performed on as large a circle as can be drawn about the pole O on the sheet of paper used.

Now divide YH, of the auxiliary diagram, Fig. 4, into the same number of parts (72), continuing spaces of the same size to the right of H. Then, beginning at $\theta = 360$, i. e., at H, draw the line to O, determining the length of r, and with the dividers accurately set off this length on the corresponding radial line of the plotting, which is OL. Use the points to the right and left of H as far as possible, points to the left of H giving constantly increasing values of r and being laid off on the plotting in the reverse order of the numbers, i. e., OL, Oa, Ob, etc. In the case of values of YP less than YA, r will be found on BA produced upward.

For accuracy's sake, when drawing the radials to O, a small circle, say $\frac{1}{16}''$ in diameter, should be drawn about the point O, and all lines stopped at the circle to prevent obscuring the point and thus to make it possible to draw each line exactly radial with respect to O. This suggestion should be observed in laying out the radial lines of the plotting also.

When all the values of r which can be secured from the diagram have been transferred to the plotting there will be a series of points which determine the desired spiral. Through these draw a smooth curve and the result will be the hyperbolic spiral of the predetermined dimensions. Some of the radii should now be checked by calculation, and should be correct to .01''.

This construction can be much facilitated by using co-ordinate paper, ruled in inches and tenths, for the diagram of Fig. 4. OM can then be chosen so that an exact number of the smaller spaces represent a degree, when no drawing will be required beyond locating YH. A straight edge can then be set at once to any desired

value of the angle along YH, and the corresponding radius immediately maked off on AD, or read off directly in inches and decimals as desired.

PROPERTIES OF THE HYPERBOLIC SPIRAL.

MATHEMATICAL PROPERTIES.

This spiral is found to possess many interesting properties. If a spiral of any chosen size be cut from a sheet of uniform thin metal, pearwood, hard rubber, celluloid or any other suitable material, so that by its use this particular size of spiral can be easily and quickly traced upon a drawing in any desired position, a number of interesting mathematical operations may be performed graphically. Among these the most notable are the trisection or multisection of any angle, the finding of reciprocals of numbers, the laying out of the regular polygons and the rectification of arcs.

Graphical Operations.

THE SPIRAL INSTRUMENT.

For convenience, choose a spiral with the constant term made equal to 100. Fig. 5 shows the outlines of an instrument constructed as suggested, with a spiral whose equation is $r=\frac{100}{\theta}$ for the working curve. The cut is just half the actual size of the instrument.

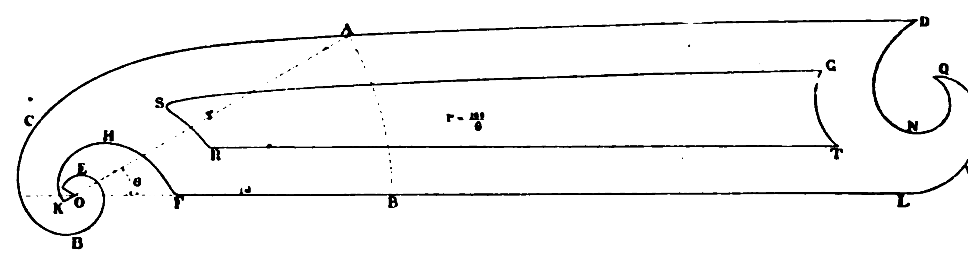


Fig. 5.

The curve EBCD, Fig. 5, is the spiral, O is the pole and OL its initial line. The curve FHK and the V-shape with vertex exactly at the pole are to permit the pole being placed exactly at a point on the drawing, and the construction is such that at the same time the initial line, OL, can be brought, readily, into co-incidence with any straight line through O. The space bounded by the curves TRSG, is cut out simply to lighten the instrument. And the curves DNG and QWL are merely to give a "finish" to it.

Preferably this curve should be made from transparent celluloid, about $\frac{3}{64}''$ thick. The transparency is very helpful in permitting accurate setting of the instrument.

RECIPROCALS.

From the character of the spiral outline of the instrument, we have the fact that any radius of the spiral, r, Fig. 5, is equal to 100 times the reciprocal of the angle in degrees which the radius, r, makes with the initial line OL. So if we wish the reciprocal of any number, as, say, 119, it is readily found by setting off 119 by means of an ordinary protractor, upward from a horizontal line, as shown in Fig. 6, and applying the spiral instrument.

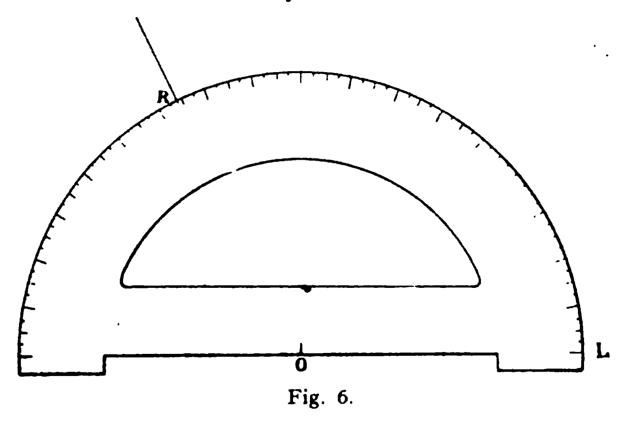


Fig. 6.

Fig. 7 shows the angle laid out by the protractor. Upon this angle, with the pole at the vertex of the angle and the initial line co-incident with OL, apply the instrument as shown in the figure.

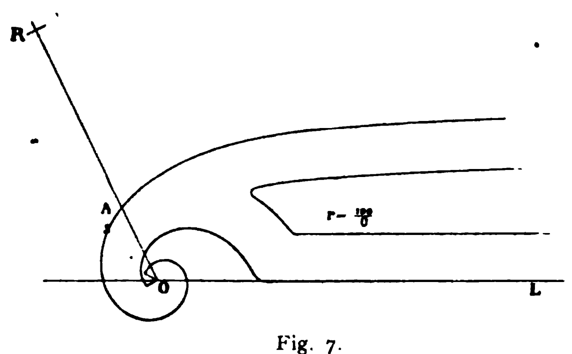


Fig. 7.

Mark with the lead pencil along the outline of the spiral where it crosses OR. Then measure accurately, with decimal scale, the distance from O to this intersecting point, A. Then this measure-

ment OP is 100 times the reciprocal of 119, and it only remains to move the decimal point two places to the left, when the result is the desired reciprocal of 119. Thus the reciprocal of any number within the physical limits of the particular instrument may be found. Mathematically there is no limit, as the spiral makes an infinite number of turns about the pole and extends an infinite distance outward.

MULTISECTION OF ANGLES.

First Method.—1. To Bisect an Angle: Take any angle, LOD, Fig. 8. Place the instrument as before, initial line coinciding with OL, pole at vertex of angle. Strike a spiral arc at A, across OD. Draw arc AB and set off BC=OB, from point B. Draw the arc EC, connect E to O, and OE bisects angle BOA. For, by the properties of the spiral, ∠ COE=½ ∠ BOA, since the radius OE was made =2 OA, the angles being inversely as the radii.

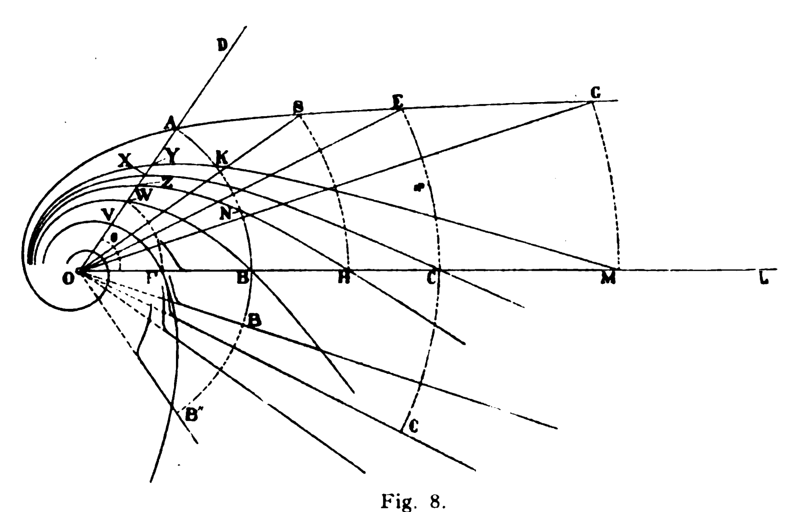


Fig. 8.

2. To Trisect an Angle: Similarly, if it is desired to trisect the angle, set off OB three times and MOG=⅓ BOA. Or if any fractional part be desired, as the one-fifth or one-seventh, set off this "primary radius," OA, a number of times equal the denominator of the fraction, as five or seven.

3. In General: For any fractional part of the angle, set off OA, or OB, a number of times equal to the fraction inverted.

Second Method.—Better than this, the same result may be reached as follows: Take, for illustration, the case of trisection again. As before, draw the arc AB, Fig. 8, and set off the primary radius, OB, three times. Then turn the instrument till the spiral passes

through M, and its intersection K, with the arc AB determines the third of $\angle$ LOD. For as before, $\angle$ MOG$=\frac{1}{3}$ $\angle$ LOD, and as every point of the instrument of course moves through the same angle when the instrument is turned, point A moves through one-third $\angle$ LOD from A to K.

Relations Between Fractions of Angle and Intercepts of Sides.— The turning of the instrument thus suggests a series of interesting results which may be developed by setting in this way to distances of different numbers of times the primary radius, first along OL and then along OD, with the instrument in the position shown, and striking spiral arcs across the first arc and also across other arcs at chosen distances from the pole. There are four sets of these relations:

I. Between the intercepts on the two sides of the angle. II. Between fractional part of angle and length on OL, using arc AB. Already noticed. III. Between fractional part of angle and length on OD, using arc AB. IV. Between either the intercept on OL or that on OD aud fractional part of angle, when using one or more arcs other than AB, of assumed radii.

I. In Fig. 8, turn the instrument as before, bringing the point at A down to B. Then point W bisect OA, for $\angle$B″OW$=2\angle$B″OB. $\therefore$ OW$=\frac{1}{2}$ OB$=\frac{1}{2}$ OA. If now we turn till the curve goes through F, the point V, found as W was, gives OV$=\frac{1}{3}$ OA. Continuing this, we have the series or fractional parts of the primary radius,

on OD: $\frac{1}{2}$, $\frac{1}{3}$, $\frac{1}{4}$, $\frac{1}{5}$, $\frac{1}{6}$, $\frac{1}{7}$, $\frac{1}{8}$, etc., etc.,

corresponding to the series:

1, $\frac{1}{2}$, $\frac{1}{3}$, $\frac{1}{4}$, $\frac{1}{5}$, $\frac{1}{6}$, $\frac{1}{7}$, etc., etc.,

of OB along the side OL.

Instead of drawing the circular arcs each time, the instrument may be inverted, when the lengths OW, OV, etc., will be laid off alternately on the one side and the other of the angle.

Continuing to settings greater than OB, when the instrument is set at C, where OC$=2$ OB, we have OX$=\frac{2}{3}$ OA. Likewise setting to OM$=3$ OB we have OY$=\frac{3}{4}$ OA. For total angle C″OX$=\frac{2}{3}$ COA. Hence OX$=\frac{2}{3}$ OA. And total angle M″OY$=\frac{3}{4}$ MOX, so OY$=\frac{3}{4}$ OA. So we have for

4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, etc., times OB

$\frac{4}{5}$, $\frac{5}{6}$, $\frac{6}{7}$, $\frac{7}{8}$, $\frac{8}{9}$, $\frac{9}{10}$, etc, of OA.

And hence, in perfectly general terms, setting to $\left(\frac{a}{n}\right)$ times the

primary radius, along OL, gives the $\left(\frac{a}{a+n}\right)$th part of OA. Or conversely, if setting to the $\left(\frac{a}{n}\right)$th part of OA. the $\left(\frac{a}{n-a}\right)$th part of OB will be determined on OL. And for the $\left(\frac{a}{n}\right)$th part of AB, along OL, the ratio of intercepts is $\left(\frac{n}{a+n}\right)$. For the $\left(\frac{a}{n}\right)$th part along OD, the ratio is $\left(\frac{n-a}{n}\right)$. And for a desired ratio, $\left(\frac{a}{n}\right)$, the intercept on OD must be $\left(\frac{n-a}{n}\right)$, and that on OL, $\left(\frac{n-a}{a}\right)$ times the primary radius.

Or, otherwise, calling the intercept on OL, x, and the corresponding intercept on OD, y, we have from the preceding the equation

$$y=\frac{x}{1+x}$$

relating the two intercepts, for any setting, and any angle, whers x and y are expressed in terms of the primary radius. Or we have

$$y=\frac{Rx}{R+x}$$

when x and y are the actual length of the intercepts, and R is the length of the primary radius.

Application: So if we should have an equation of the form

$$y=\frac{ax}{a+x},$$

where a is any constant term it can be solved at once, as follows: Set the instrument to any straight line, as OL, Fig. 8, marking the pole and striking a spiral arc. With a radius =a inches, strike a circle arc, thus determining OD for this case. Then take the value of x to be substituted in the equation, and lay it off from O, along OL, and set the instrument to it. Then the intercept on OD is the value of y sought.

Reversing the equation we have

$$x=\frac{Ry}{R-y}, \text{ and } \frac{y}{x}=\sqrt{\frac{R-y}{R+y}}=\frac{R}{R+x}=\frac{R-y}{R}.$$

II. The general relation for this case has already been noticed.

For Trisection: If after finding W, Fig. 8, by setting to B, we make BH=OW, and strike a spiral arc on AB, determining N, then ON is again a trisector of ∠ BOA. For OH=$\frac{3}{2}$ of the primary radius, OA. Hence ∠ HOS=$\frac{2}{3}$ ∠ BOA, so when S moves to H, through ∠ $\frac{2}{3}$ BOA, A moves through $\frac{2}{3}$ BOA, to N, making ∠ BON=$\frac{1}{3}$ ∠ BOA. If S be joined to O the other trisector is drawn, making four ways in which an angle may be trisected by means of this instrument.

And so, in general terms, since either the $\left(\frac{a}{n}\right)$ or the $\left(\frac{n-a}{n}\right)$th part gives the desired $\left(\frac{a}{n}\right)$th part of the angle on the drawing, either $\left(\frac{n}{a}\right)$ or $\left(\frac{n}{n-a}\right)$ times the primary radius may be used along OL to determine it.

III, With the curve in the position YKM, at the point of trisection, K, the radius OY was equal $\frac{3}{4}$ OA, or YA—$\frac{1}{4}$ OA; for, then, total angle B'OA=B' OK+KOA=$\theta+\frac{1}{3}\,\theta=\frac{4}{3}\,\theta$. ∴ The corresponding radius vector OY=$\frac{3}{4}$ the radius for θ, =$\frac{3}{4}$ OA:

For bisection YA becomes $\frac{1}{3}$ OA, in the same way. Continuing, if we make YA=$\frac{1}{5}$ OA, the $\frac{1}{4}$ of the angle is determined, and so on. So that we have in terms of the primary radius and θ the following table of relations:

(a) Fraction of OA, measured from A, YA.	(b) Fraction of angle measured downward from A. ∠ AOK.	(c) Intercept on other side of angle, OM.	(d) Ratio of intercepts, (c) to (a).
$\frac{1}{2}$	1	1	2
$\frac{1}{3}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	2	6
$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{3}$	3	12
$\frac{1}{5}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	4	20
$\frac{1}{6}$	$\frac{1}{5}$	5	30
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.
$\frac{2}{5}$	$\frac{2}{3}$	$\frac{3}{2}$	$\frac{15}{4}$
$\frac{2}{7}$	$\frac{2}{5}$	$\frac{5}{2}$	$\frac{35}{4}$
$\frac{3}{7}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{4}{3}$	$\frac{28}{9}$
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.
$\frac{3}{5}$	$\frac{3}{2}$	$\frac{2}{3}$	$\frac{10}{9}$
$\frac{4}{5}$	4	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{5}{16}$
$\frac{4}{7}$	$\frac{4}{3}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{21}{16}$
$\frac{5}{7}$	$\frac{5}{2}$	$\frac{2}{5}$	$\frac{14}{25}$
$\frac{6}{7}$	6	$\frac{1}{6}$	$\frac{7}{36}$

For which, in general terms:

* $\frac{a}{n}$	$\frac{a}{(n-a)}$	$\frac{(n-a)}{a}$	$\frac{n(n-a)}{a^2}$
$\frac{a}{(n+a)}$	* $\frac{a}{n}$	$\frac{n}{a}$	$\frac{n(n+a)}{a^2}$
$\frac{n}{(n+a)}$	$\frac{n}{a}$	* $\frac{a}{n}$	$\frac{a(n+a)}{n^2}$

If, now, the fractional part of OA be measured outward from O, and the angle measured upward from the initial line, as is the customary way, instead of as assumed, the table becomes:

* $\frac{a}{n}$	$\frac{(2a-n)}{a}$	$\frac{a}{(n-a)}$	$\frac{n}{(n-a)}$
$\frac{n}{(2n-a)}$	* $\frac{a}{n}$	$\frac{n}{(n-a)}$	$\frac{(2n-a)}{(n-a)}$
$\frac{a}{(a+n)}$	$\frac{(a-n)}{a}$	* $\frac{a}{n}$	$\frac{(a+n)}{n}$
$\frac{(a-n)}{a}$	$\frac{(a-2n)}{(a-n)}$	$\frac{(a-n)}{n}$	* $\frac{a}{n}$

As either the $\frac{a}{n}$th or the $\frac{(n-a)}{n}$th part will serve to show the desired $\frac{a}{n}$th portion of the angle, since it is immaterial whether we measure it upward or downward, we have the fact that for any fraction, as the $\frac{a}{n}$th part, either the $\frac{n}{(n+a)}$th or the $\frac{n}{(2n-a)}$th part of the primary radius may be used to determine it.

If the $\frac{n}{(n+a)}$th part be used, measured outward from O, then the desired $\frac{a}{n}$th part will be found by measuring downward from A; if the $\frac{n}{(2n-a)}$th part, the fraction of the angle will be found measuring up from B.

IV. Further interesting relations may be discovered by setting the instrument to one arc and striking across another, the radii of the two arcs being known, the subdivision of the angle, thus determined, to be found in terms of the assumed radii.

We have the following cases, Fig. 9, $\angle$ LOD being any assumed angle to be subdivided: (1) By turning the instrument through

point Q, and striking a spiral arc across FH, which is drawn with any assumed radius, known in terms of OA. (2) By setting at E of θ'', and striking across FH of θ'. (3) Setting to R, and striking

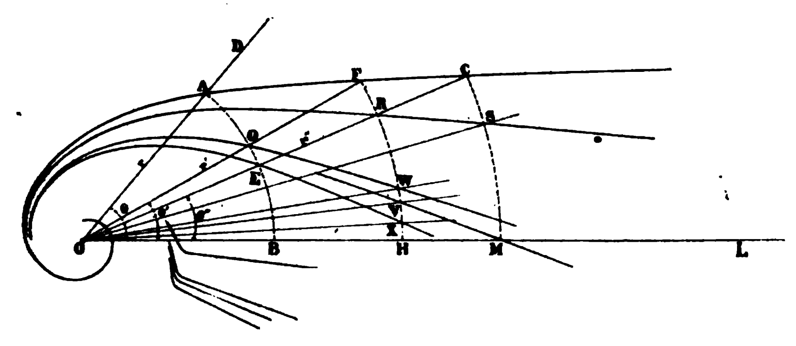


Fig. 9.

across arc CM of θ''. (4) Setting to M, and striking an arc across FH of θ'.

(1) Set at Q, and strike arc at W. Draw WO and find $\angle$ HOW in terms of θ, and r and r',

$$\frac{\theta'}{\theta}=\frac{r}{r'}=\frac{OB}{OH}.\quad \angle AOF=\angle FOW.\quad \therefore\ \theta-\theta'=\theta'-\angle HOW.$$

$$\text{Then } \theta'=\frac{\theta+\angle HOW}{2}, \text{ and from above } \frac{r}{r'}=\frac{\theta+\angle HOW}{2\theta}.$$

$$\text{And } \angle HOW=\left(\frac{2r-r'}{r'}\right)\text{th part of } \angle \theta.$$

(2) Set the instrument at E, where CO of θ'' cuts arc AB, and strike arc SX, finding X. XO determines some fraction of θ, which can be found in terms of r, r', and r''.

The $\angle$ EOA, through which the instrument turns, $=(\theta-\theta'')=$ $\angle$ FOX. Hence the fraction of θ, determined, $\angle HOX=\theta'-(\theta-\theta'')$, which $=(\theta'+\theta'')-\theta$. And the ratio of this to θ, or the part expressed as a fraction of θ, is

$$\left(\frac{\theta'+\theta''}{\theta}\right)-1, \text{ or } r\left(\frac{1}{r'}+\frac{1}{r''}\right)-1.$$

(3) Set through R and get point S. To find relation of $\angle$ MOS to θ. $\angle ROF=(\theta'-\theta)=\angle COS$. So $\angle SOM=\theta''-(\theta'-\theta'')=(2\theta''-\theta')$. Or

$$=\frac{(2\theta''-\theta')}{\theta}\text{ part of } \angle \theta, \text{ or } =r\left(\frac{2}{r''}-\frac{1}{r'}\right) \text{ part.}$$

(4) Set at M and draw OV. Get $\angle$ HOV.

$$\angle \text{HOV} = (\theta' - \theta'') = \left(\frac{1}{r'} - \frac{1}{r''}\right).$$

And ratio to θ, $$= r\left(\frac{1}{r'} - \frac{1}{r''}\right).$$

These relations, and others, may be derived readily from properties of the curve expressed by its equation $r = \frac{a}{\theta}$, but none of them appear to be of a sufficiently simple form to be of any further interest.

CONSTRUCTION OF REGULAR POLYGONS.

The spiral iustrument affords an interesting means for constructing the regular polygons. There are two cases: (a) The circumscribing circle given to construct a regular polygon of any required number of sides. (b) Having given the length of one side, to construct upon it a regular polygon of a required number of sides.

(a) For this case we have evidently again merely the division of an angle into a desired number of equal parts. Bearing in mind that the angle to be divided is here 360, and hence that the two sides coincide in OL, Fig. 10, any desired inscribed polygon can

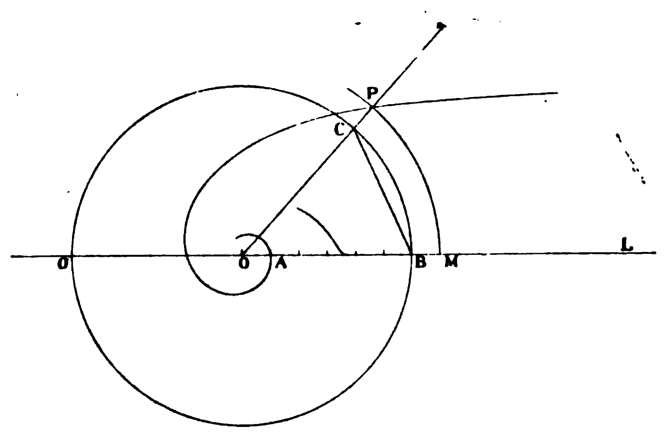


Fig. 10.

be had at once, as follows: Draw the given circumscribing circle, apply the instrument and mark A. Then lay off OA from O, as many times as the polygon is to have sides, say seven, here, obtaining point M. Then draw the arc MP, and PO determines one side of the polygon, BC, which can now be set off the remaining number of times around the circle.

Or if we have at hand an instrument of which the constant equals 360, simply set to OL and strike a spiral arc. Then with a radius as long in inches as the number of sides which the polygon is to have, strike a circular arc cutting the spiral and join the intersection to the center when the required side is determined.

If instead of a 360 degree instrument an 180 degree one is available, set the pole at O″ and lay out the angle $\left(\frac{180}{n}\right)$, when the result will be the same. Or if desired, O″ may be used in any event and $\left(\frac{180}{n}\right)$ laid out in the usual way.

(b) To construct a required polygon on a given length of side, AO, Fig. 11. We know that for any polygon of n sides,

$$\angle \text{LOP} = \frac{360}{n}..$$

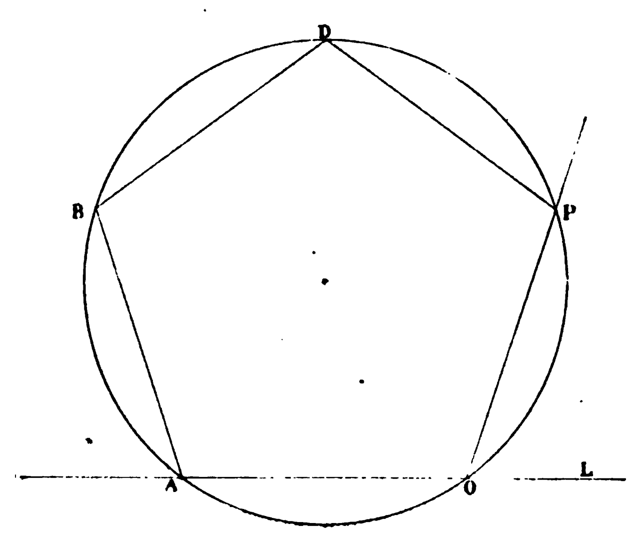


Fig. 11.

So it is a simple matter to lay out this angle $\left(\frac{360}{n}\right)$ by use of the instrument, just as in the preceding case, by either of the ways noticed there. Then, OP known, the circumscribing circle can be drawn and the polygon completed.

GRAPHIC RECTIFICATION OF ARCS.

By means of the Universal Drawing Curve the graphic rectification of circular arcs is also readily possible. We may have either

(1) a definite arc given to find a length of straight line equal in length to it, or (2) a given length of line to find an arc of assumed radius equal in length to the given line.

The constructions for these cases depend upon the fact that any arc drawn about the pole of the spiral as a center and limited by the initial line and the spiral itself is equal to every other arc so drawn. That is, in Fig. 9, arc CM = arc FH = arc AB. And this constant length of arc is known, being the constant c of the instrument multiplied by $\frac{\pi}{180}$. In the case of an instrument designed for θ to be measured in radians, instead of in degrees, it is equal the constant term of the equation.

On each of the Universal Curves will be found a fine mark along the edge of the instrument which is the initial line, shown at a, Fig. 5. This mark is accurately laid off a distance from the pole of the instrument equal to the constant length of arc of the particular size of curve. In the case of the size $r=\frac{100}{\theta}$, this length is

$100\times\frac{\pi}{180}=1.745$, or very closely $1\frac{3}{4}''$.

(1) To rectify a given arc. Let AB, Fig. 12, be the given arc of which the center is O. Set the instrument as shown, marking a

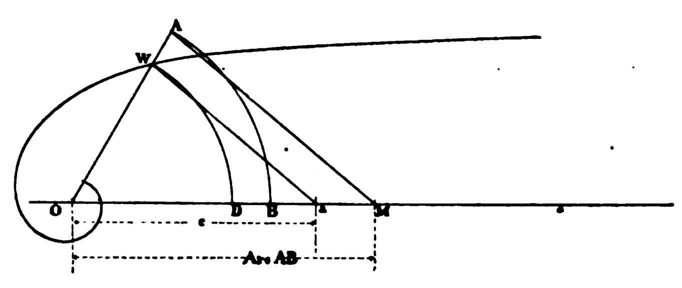


Fig. 12.

and W. Join W to a, and draw AM from A parallel to Wa, determining M. Then OM equals the length of arc AB.

For $\frac{\text{arc AB}}{\text{arc WD}}=\frac{\text{OA}}{\text{OW}}$, which by similar triangles $=\frac{\text{OM}}{\text{Oa}}$. But Oa = the arc WD by the property of the instrument.

$$\therefore \text{OM} = \text{arc AB}.$$

(2) Given a length of line to find an arc of given radius equal in length to the line.

In Fig. 13, let BPA, etc., be an indefinite arc of the given radius. Lay off OM equal the given length of the arc to be found, and mark the point a. Now join any point of the arc drawn, as P to M.

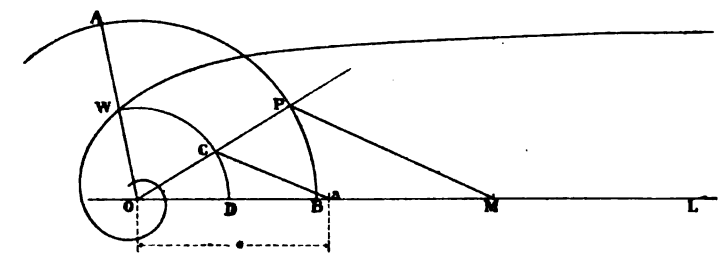


Fig. 13.

Draw aC from a, parallel to MP, thus determining C. With radius OC determine W, and produce OW to A. Then AB is the required arc.

For $\frac{AB}{WD}=\frac{OP}{OC}=\frac{OM}{Oa}$. But arc WD=Oa, by the property of the instrument.

$\therefore$ Arc AB=OM.

MECHANICAL PROPERTIES OF THE SPIRAL INSTRUMENT.

Although the mathematical properties noticed are interesting, and some of them make possible a number of drawing board operations by use of the instrument described, their bearing from the standpoint of actual utility is not to be compared to that of the curve's physical characteristics. The great value of the Hyperbolic Spiral lies in the fact that it possesses just the proper rate of variation and range of curvature to make it the ideal outline for the drawing instruments commonly known as "irregular curves."

Irregular Curves.

Irregular curves, so-called, are used by draftsmen for drawing smooth curves through ranges of points on a drawing determined by plotting or otherwise, where these points locate some curve of definite character not circular. These instruments are made by cutting out a variety of curves, usually of no definite mathematical character, from uniform thin sheets of pearwood, hard rubber, transparent celluloid or metal, as may be desired. The outline of one of these instruments usually consists of many kinds of curves of different degrees of curvatures, chosen either entirely at a venture, or perhaps from some experience with curves of approximately the same form. Often the ornamental appearance has more influ-

ence than any other consideration in determining the outline used.

Consequently, as a rule, any one irregular curve is suitable for only a limited use. So that a draftsman must have a number of these with him, and often must try his whole assortment several times before being able to fit a comparatively simple curve. The exasperating nature of this task is only appreciated by those who have had some bit of curve on an important drawing to put in with great accuracy.

The Universal Drawing Curve.

The very great desirability of having one instrument which can be used easily for all plottings within reasonable limits of size suggested the design of the Universal Drawing Curve, which is the same instrument, some of the mathematical possibilities of which have been noticed. Fig. 14 shows a photograph of six sizes of the instrument as now made, reduced about one-fourth size. Any desired size may be made, possessing the same characteristics, by simply varying the constant in the plotting of the spiral.

Continued use for a long time under a very great variety of conditions shows the instrument to be truly a Universal Curve. It possesses such a wide range of curvature, varying, as it does, from nearly a straight line down to a very short and almost circular curve, including all degrees of curvature ever needed, that with one of these instruments it is a simple matter to fit any kind of plotting within a reasonable limits as to size, to allow for which the instrument is made in this series of sizes. To do this it is only necessary to turn the instrument on the drawing till the curve of the spiral coincides with three or more points of the plotting, draw a line through these points, and then turn the instrument a little farther until a small portion of the line already drawn and several more points are fitted. In this way the line is quickly prolonged without the usual exasperating work of picking up and turning over a whole assortment of curves in order to fit a small bit of curvature at a time.

Either of the medium sizes, $c=100$, $c=120$ or $c=135$ is admirably adapted to average work. The size $c=60$ is for exceptionally small work, and $c=180$ and $c=225$ for very large work. Use shows that any one of these instruments will replace a whole assortment of the old curves and enable a draftsman to do his work quicker and better.

The Sacrum of Morosaurus.

Contributions from the Paleontological Laboratory, No. 33.

BY S. W. WILLISTON.

A recent paper by Prof. H. F. Osborn on "Some Additional Characters of the great Herbivorous Dinosaur Camerasaurus"* shows with much reason that the number of sacral vertebrae in the Camerasauridae is a character not valid in the separation of genera. This opinion I have long had from a knowledge of the type specimens upon which Marsh's genera were based. It is very clear that there are three typical sacral vertebrae in all the genera of this family, as well as in the Morosauridae, if it be a distinct family, all of which present very distinct points of similarity. It is probable, as evidenced by the separated sacral vertebrae in *Morosaurus lentus*,† that the condition of ossification varies with age, the middle three uniting earliest, the first next and the fifth last. The slight union of the fifth might, indeed, be absent in the adult without affording generic or even specific characters.

In the University of Kansas Museum there is a portion of a skeleton of a species of *Morosaurus*, doubtless *M. grandis*, obtained by the expedition of 1895, from Converse Co., Wyoming. Among the different bones there is a sacrum evidently in much better condition than any hitherto made known in the Cetiosauria, though not complete. It has four vertebrae united firmly, agreeing well with the sacrum figured by Marsh (The Dinosaurs of North Amer-

*Bull. Amer. Mus. Nat. Hist., x, pp. 219-233.

†The various species of this genus described so far are as follows:

Morosaurus Marsh, Amer. Journ. Sci., xv, p. 242. 1878; xvi. p. 412, 1878.
- *grandis* Marsh, op. cit. xv, p. 514, 1877 (*Apatosaurus*); xvi, p. 416, pls. v, vi, vii, Feb, 1879, pl. xvii.—Wyoming.
- *impar* Marsh, op. cit. xv, p. 242 1878 (this species is clearly identical with the preceding).—Wyoming.
- *robustus* Marsh. op. cit. xvi. p. 414. 1878.—Wyoming.
- *lentus* Marsh, op. cit. xxxvii, p. 332, 1889.—Wyoming.
- *agilis* Marsh, op. cit. xxxvii, p. 333, 1889.—Colorado.

ica, 16th Ann. Rep. U. S. G. S., pl. xxi, f. 8) and doubtless is conspecific with it. A front view of this specimen is shown in the accompanying figure (Fig. 1), together with a photographic reproduc-



Fig. 1. Sacrum of *Morosaurus grandis*, from in front, *AZ*, anterior zygapophyses; *HA*, hypantrum.

tion of a side view (Fig. 2). It will be observed that the first vertebra takes but little part in the iliac articulation and that the transverse processes of this vertebra arise much higher up than those of the following. The broad plate in front seems to represent in its upper bars, which are thickened, the transverse processes of the posterior dorsals. Marsh has figured in plate xxxii of the work cited what he believes to be a posterior dorsal of this species. It is very evident, however, that there are a number of vertebrae intervening between that and the one immediately preceding the sacrum. In all probability, as Osborn has suggested in *Camarasaurus*, there will be found a larger number intervening here than has been hitherto supposed, the posterior ones partaking more of the characters of the first sacral, even as it has been shown that the pygal caudals present the prominent characters of the last sacral.

On plate xxxiii of the work cited, March has figured the disconnected sacral vertebrae of *M. lentus*, I am confident that there is something wrong in their interpretation. It is impossible that the vertebra there considered the first can be the same as the first of

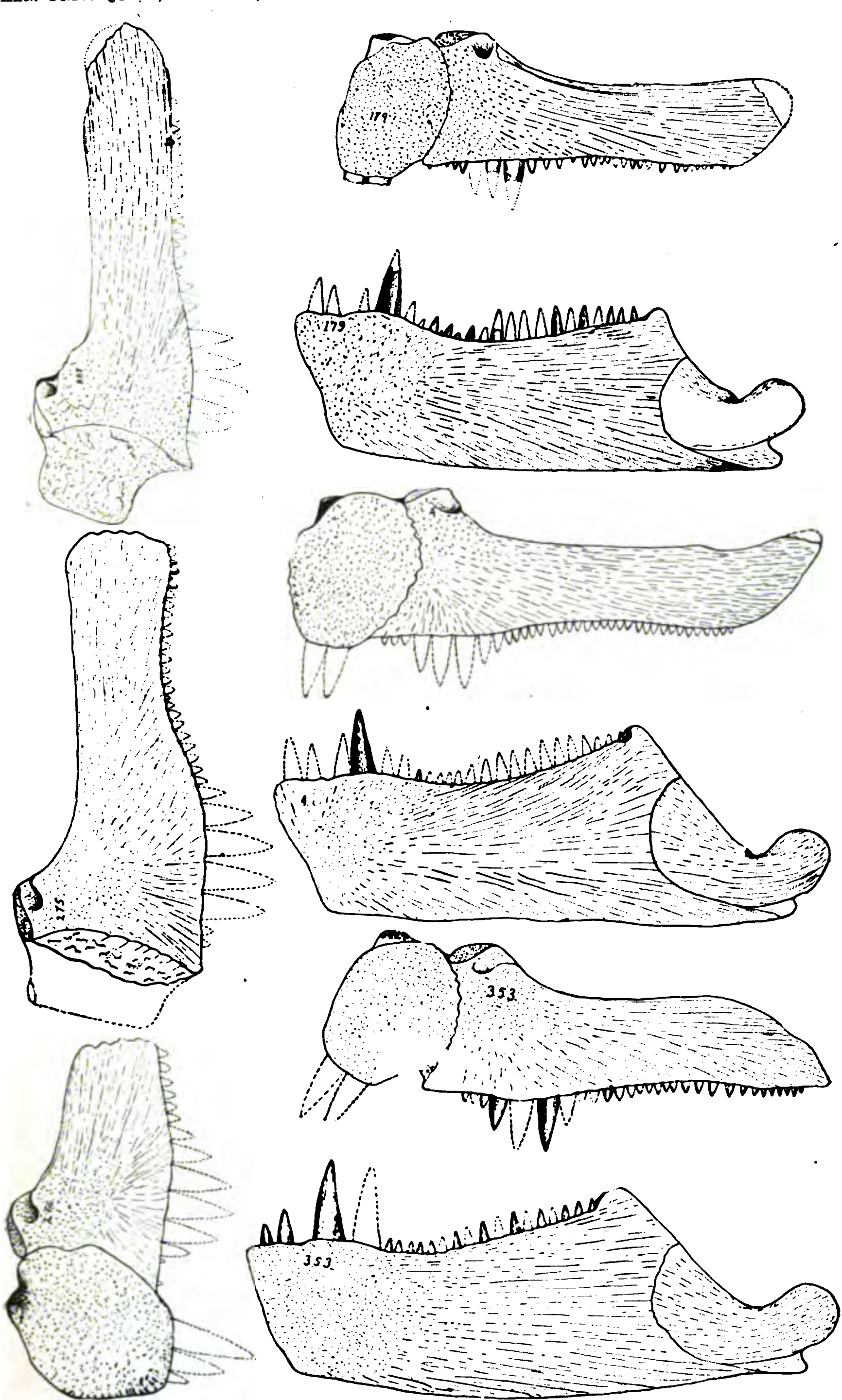
the accompanying figures. Its flat anterior surface and the shape of the transverse processes are very different.



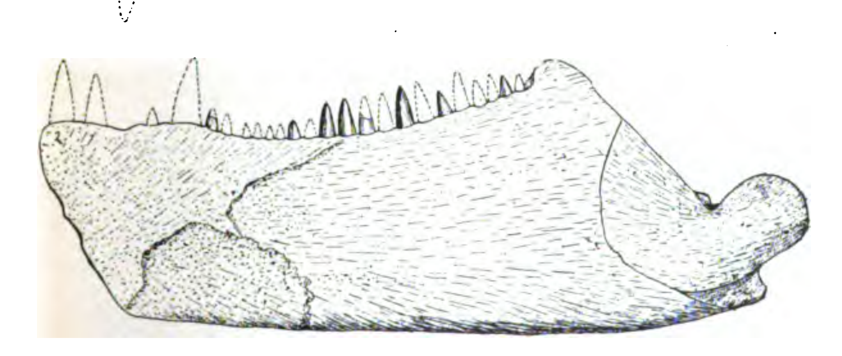
Fig. 2. Sacrum of *Morosaurus grandis*, from the side.

On either side of the broad plate, at the extreme ends, there is a thickening, tipped with cartilage. The same protuberance is found on the much smaller plate of the second vertebra. It is apparently wanting in the succeeding vertebrae, whose plates are much reduced. The middle three spines of this specimen, as in the other genera, are firmly coossified. The first vertebra is closely united as far as the bottom of the spine, but the spine itself is free.

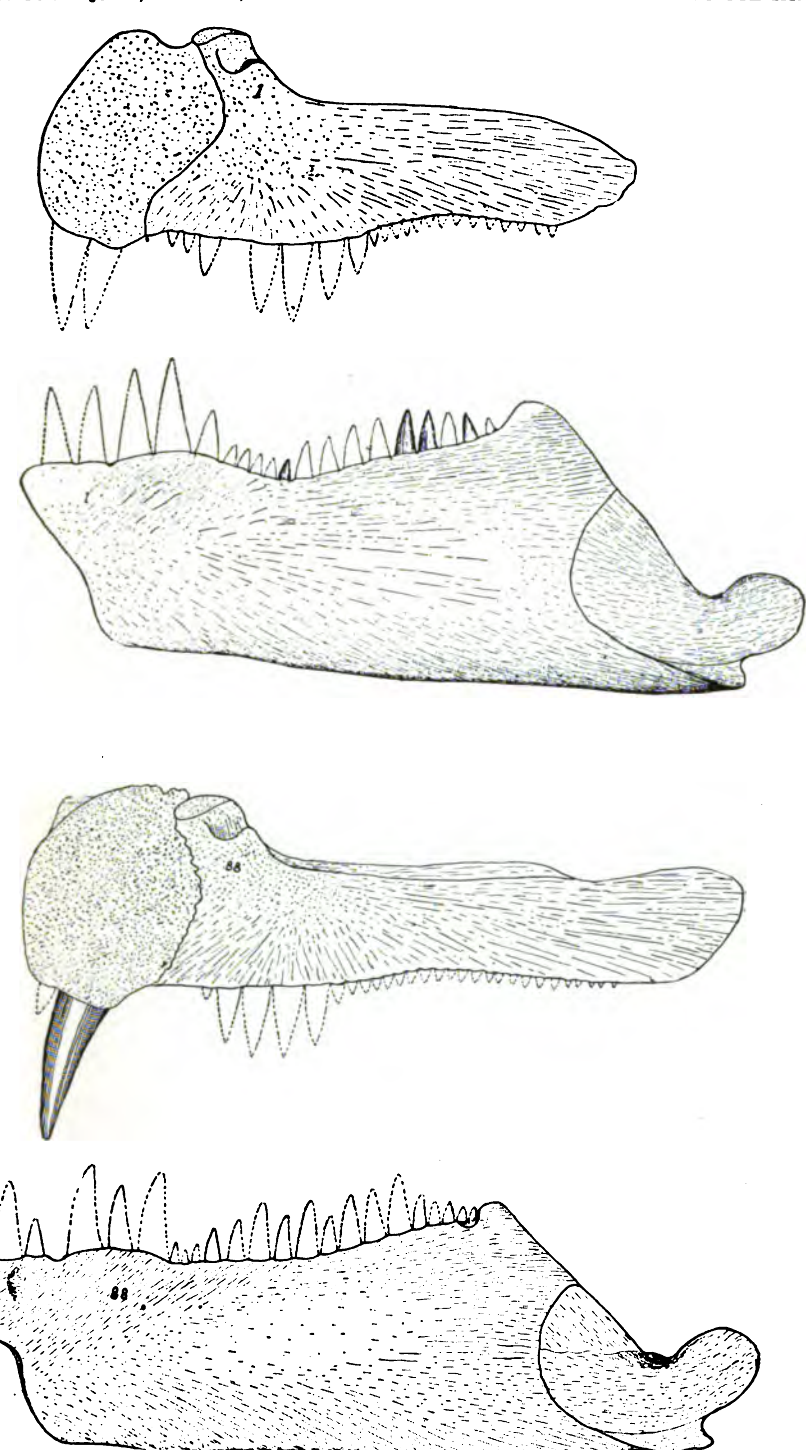
The generic identity of the present specimen is assured by the finding of the complete ischia in immediate conjunction with the sacrum. Aside from a number of dorsal, cervical and caudal vertebrae, all clearly belonging with the same individual, there were no other bones in the "quarry" whence the specimen came.



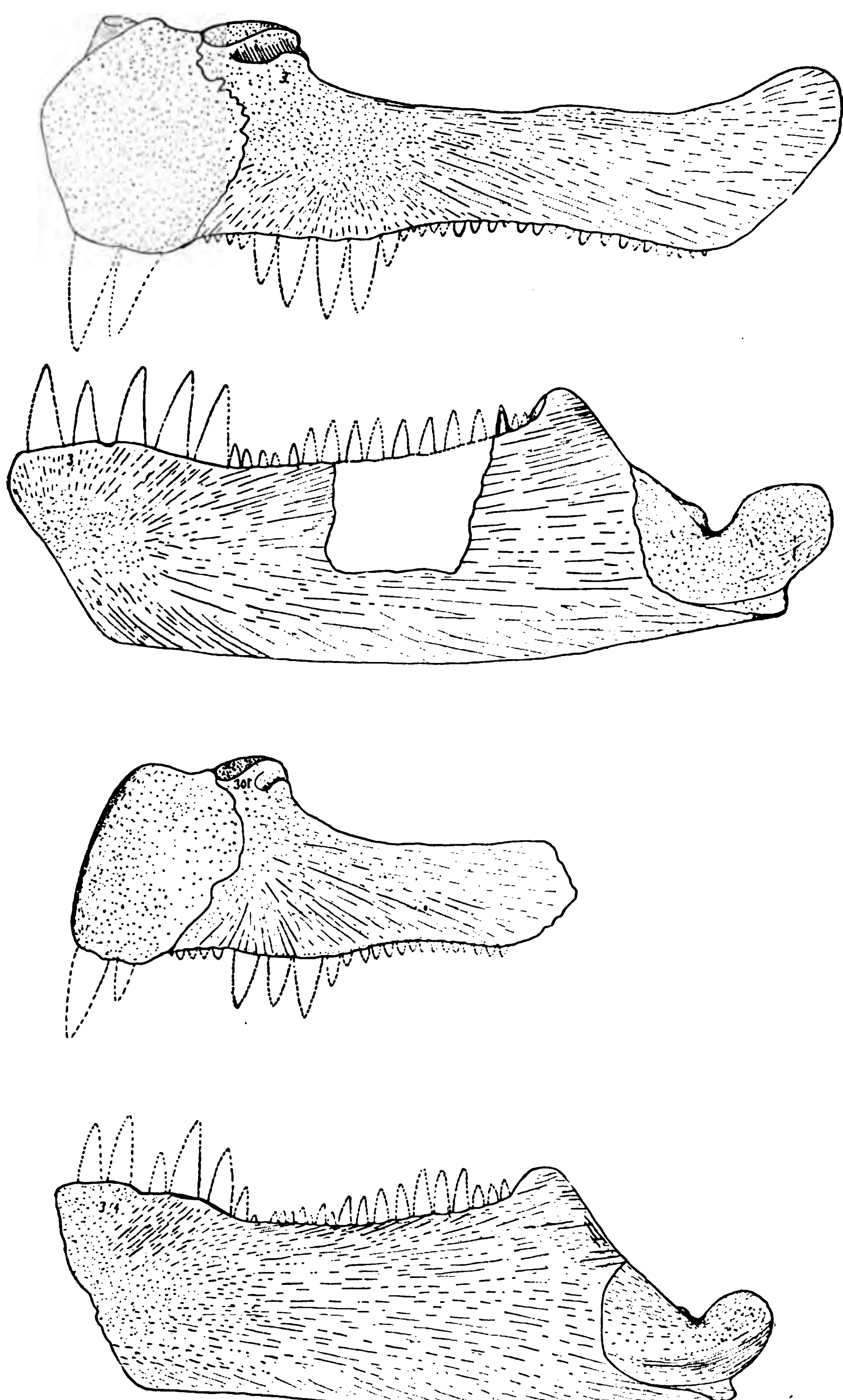
A. Stewart, from nature.



.A. Stewart, from nature.



A. Stewart, from nature.



A. Stewart, from nature

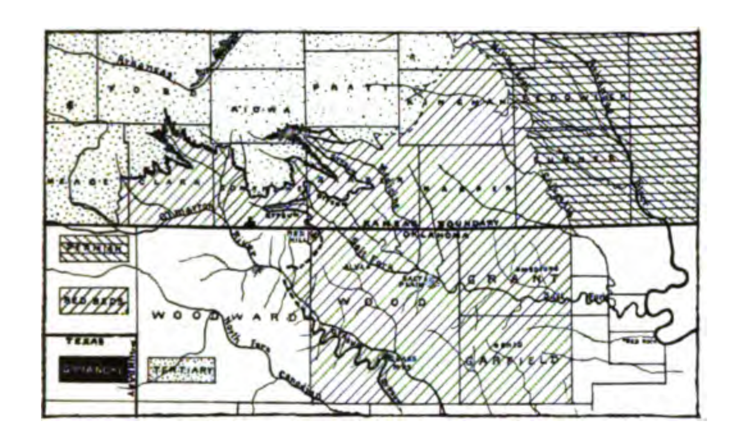
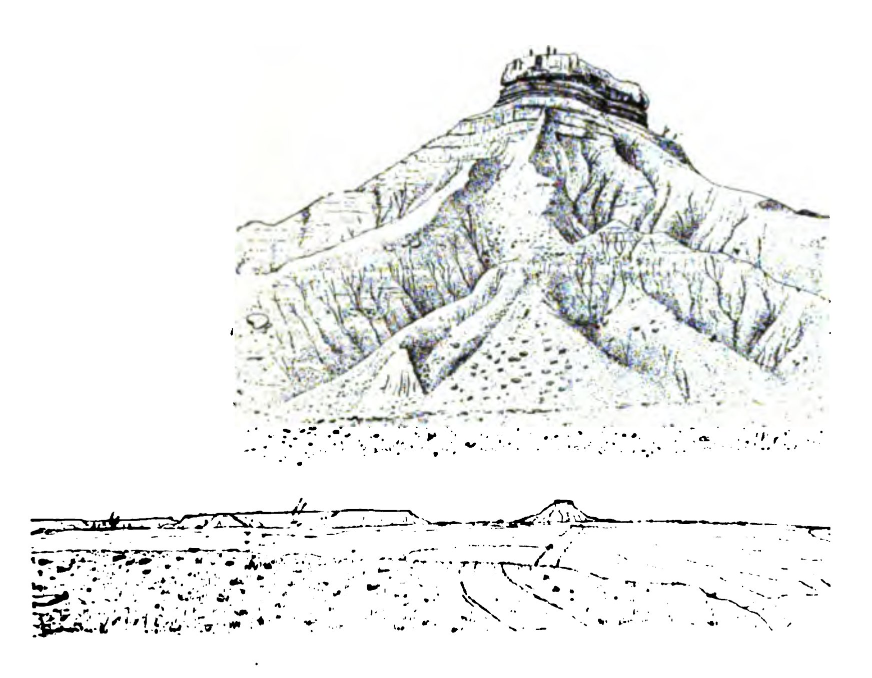

Arkansas
FORD
KIOWA
PRATT
CLARK
WOODWARD
WOOD
GRANT
GARFIELD
KANSAS BOUNDARY
OKLAHOMA
RED BEDS
TEXAS
TERTIARY

PLATE XII.







Vol. VII. OCTOBER, 1898. No. 4.



THE KANSAS UNIVERSITY QUARTERLY.

SERIES A:—SCIENCE AND MATHEMATICS.

CONTENTS.

PUBLISHED BY THE UNIVERSITY

LAWRENCE, KANSAS,

Price of this number, 50 cents.

Entered at the Post Office in Lawrence as Second-class Matter.

ADVERTISEMENT.

THE KANSAS UNIVERSITY QUARTERLY is maintained by the University of Kansas as a medium for the publication of the results of original research by members of the University. Papers will be published only on recommendation of the Committee of Publication. Contributed articles should be in the hands of the Committee at least one month prior to the date of publication. A limited number of author's *separata* will be furnished free to contributors.

Beginning with Vol. VI the QUARTERLY will appear in two Series: A, Science and Mathematics; B, Philology and History.

The QUARTERLY is issued regularly, as indicated by its title. Each number contains one hundred or more pages of reading matter, with necessary illustrations. The four numbers of each year constitute a volume. The price of subscription is two dollars a volume, single numbers varying in price with cost of publication Exchanges are solicited.

Communications should be addressed to

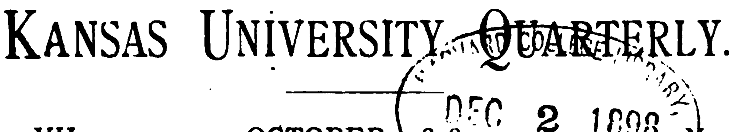
W. H. CARRUTH,
University of Kansas,
Lawrence.

This Journal is on file in the office of the *University Review*, New York City

JOURNAL PUBLISHING COMPANY
LAWRENCE, KANSAS

KANSAS UNIVERSITY QUARTERLY.

VOL. VII. OCTOBER, 1898. No. 4.



Some Notes on the Genus Saurodon and Allied Species.

Contribution from the Paleontological Laboratory No. 34.

BY ALBAN STEWART.

With Plates XIV, XV, XVI.

In the year 1824, Dr. Harlan* described the genus *Saurocephalus* from a fragment of a superior maxilla collected by Lewis and Clark in their expedition up the Missouri river in 1804. Six years later, Dr. Hays† described the jaws and a portion of the skull of a second form *Saurodon leanus*, from the Marl of New Jersey. He also examined the specimen described by Dr. Harlan and found "that the teeth, instead of being 'in a longitudinal groove' 'in close contact throughout' 'there being no distinct alveoli,' *are in fact placed in distinct alveoli.*"‡ Dr. Hays then reached the conclusion that the two genera were synonymous, and that since Dr. Harlan's genus was founded upon erroneous characters, the name Saurodon should take precedence over it. In the year 1856, Dr. Leidy redescribed both of the above genera in a paper read before the American Philosophical Society,|| and as there had been nothing new added to the knowledge of them in America up to that time, concluded that the name Saurodon should be abandoned, and that the type of this species should be known as *Saurocephalus leanus* Hays. Nothing further was done regarding either of the generic

*Jour. Acad. Nat. Sc., Phila., 1830, vol. iii, p. 331.
†Trans. Am. Phil. Soc., vol. iii, p. 471.
‡L. c. p. 476.
||Trans. Am. Phil. Soc., vol. xi, p. 91.

terms until 1875, when Prof. Cope* added the allied genus *Daptinus* from the cretaceous of Kansas, but which he later recognized as a synonym of *Saurodon* Hays.

The exact date of Prof. Cope's retraction I have been unable to exactly determine, but it was probably not until after 1878, as at this time Mr. E. T. Newton† described a fish from the lower chalk of Dover and provisionally placed it in *Daptinus*. A little later, in the same year, Mr. Newton published a paper entitled‡ "Remarks on *Saurocephalus*, and on the Species which have been referred to that Genus." In this paper Mr. Newton carefully goes over the ground and finally couchudes, as Dr. Leidy had already done, that the name Saurodon should be no longer used.

After carefully examining the material at my command I am led to the conclusion that there are two distinct genera, which should be known as *Saurocephalus* and *Saurodon;* the evidence for which the following descriptions, I think will make apparent.

During the past summer the museum was presented with a fine specimen of *Saurodon* by Mr. H. M. McDowell of this place, and was also loaned another specimen of this genus by Mr. W. O. Bourne of Scott City. The second specimen is not so complete as the first yet it shows many points of interest that are not visible in the first specimen mentioned. The two forms are new to science and will be called *Saurodon xiphirostris* and *Saurodon ferox* respectively.

Saurodon xiphirostris sp. nov.

This specimen consists of a skull crushed obliquely, the centra of several vertebrae, and also a portion of a shoulder girdle in a very bad state of preservation. The specimen is of nearly the same size as that of the type of *Saurodon* (*Daptinus*) *broadheadii*‖ described by myself.

The maxilla is short and deep, the depth not being as great as in *S. broadheadii.* The alveolar border is nearly straight and has alveoli for about thirty-one teeth, which are about the size of those described in the above species. The posterior extremity can not be examined as there is a suborbital bone covering this portion on each side of the skull, but it is probably very similar to that of the figures of *Saurodon ferox* described below. The superior border is sharp, and gives attachment to some bone, probably a sub-orbital or jugal. The palatine condyle seems to be very

*Cret. Vert. West., p. 213.
†Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc., 1878, No. 135, p. 439.
‡Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc., 1878, No. 136, p. 786.
‖Kans. Univ. Quart. vol. vii, p. 21-29.

similar to that of *S. broadheadii* already described. The bone, just above the alveolar border, presents a somewhat shagreened appearance. Farther than this, there seems to be no characteristic markings upon the external surface. As the maxilla is firmly attached to the skull, the internal surface can not be examined.

The premaxilla is plate-like, and nearly twice as deep as broad. The superior border is irregular and presents no condyle at this point. The external markings are very similar to those found in *Saurocephalus dentatus*, and the bone is directed more obliquely backward than in that form. The anterior border is directed sharply inward, giving the external surface of the bone a very convex appearance. This border is very rugose, probably for ligamentous union with its fellow of the opposite side. The alveolar border is very convex and has alveoli for twelve teeth, which are of about the same size as those on the maxillae.

MEASUREMENTS OF MAXILLA AND PREMAXILLA.

		mm.
Maxillary:	length of alveolar border	82*
"	depth at palatine condyle	33
"	number of teeth in 1. c. m.	4
Premaxillary:	greatest depth	50
"	greatest length	30
"	length of anterior border	30

In the mandible is found one of the chief characters that separate this genus from *Saurocephalus*; instead of the upper and lower jaws terminating at about the same vertical plane as in all other members of the *Saurodontidae*, the mandible projects fully an inch beyond this point. The dentary is long and slender throughout, in *Saurocephalus* it is short and deep. This difference is well illustrated by comparing the types of *Saurocephalus dentatus* and *Saurodon ferox*; the maxilla of the first is considerably longer than that of the second, but with the dentaries, the reverse is the case. Only a small portion of the dentary can be seen, as most of the external and superior portions are hidden by the overlying maxillae. The bones are irregular and shallow at the symphysis and seem to have given strong attachment for the predentary. The lower border is thin and sharp. Only twenty-seven millimeters of the alveolar border can be seen in the specimen upon which the teeth are small and twelve in number. At the base of each tooth is found the deep notch, for the nutrient vessels, so characteristic of this genus. As the articular portion does not seem to differ materially from that of *S. ferox*, its description may be deferred.

*Estimated.

Contrary to anticipations there is but one predentary, as is proven by the discovery of all of the parts in place. It is long and slender, triangular in outline, with a broad elliptical articular surface at the posterior extremity. When this element was first made known* in this genus, I was under the impression that it was paired, which is not the case. This slender projection was no doubt used as a weapon of offense, analogous to the rostrum of *Protosphyraena.* In connection with the description of *Saurodon broadheadii.*† I figured a predentary of an enterely different form from the above, which was found on the same slab with the maxilla described; the form is the same as that found in *Saurocephalus.* Whether the two bones belonged to the same individual or not, only future discoveries can determine. After carefully comparing the type of *S. dentatus* with that of the species under consideration and *S. ferox*, I am convinced that there is but one predentary in the mandible of this form, as one would expect from the great similarity of the two genera.

MEASUREMENTS.

	mm.
Mandible length from cotyloid cavity	155
" depth at symphysis	23
" number of teeth in 1., c. m.	4.5
Predentary; length	73‡
" depth of symphyseal surface	23
" width of symphyseal surface	12

The ethmoid is broad and flat posteriorly, becoming thickened and pointed at the anterior extremity. The lower surface can not be seen, but it probably is not materially different from that of *Ichthyodectes.* In Prof. E. T. Newton's description of *S. intermedius*‖ he says, concerning this part; "Anterior to the frontals, upon the upper surface of the skull, there are two bones (fig. 2) separated by a median longitudinal suture; towards the front of these an osseous band passes across at right angles, obliterating the suture." In our skull I am unable to detect any indication of a suture at this point such as is shown in the figure referred to above. I have also examined all of the specimens of *Xiphactinus* and *Ichthyodectes* in the museum, and find no trace of such a suture in any of them. It seems probable to me that the skull, described by Prof. Newton, was a younger individual than are any of ours.

*Kans. Univ. Quart., vol. vii, p. 24.
†L. c. pl. ii.
‡Estimated.
‖Quart. Journ. Geol. Soc., vol. xxxiv, No. 135, p. 444, pl. xix.

The frontals are broad, flat bones extending from the ethmoid, with which they are united by a squamose suture, back to the parietals. Laterally, they form the superior borders of the orbits. In the median line they are separated by a suture. The bones are probably in contact with the supraoccipital, but, owing to the crushed condition of this region, this point can not be definitely determined.

The parietals are small elements, in contact with the pterotics and the epiotics (?) posteriorly. The epiotics are probably coössified with the parietals; at the point where the suture should be, there is a crack, but the edges at no point show signs of sutural union with the opposite portion. If this be the case, the parietals nearly or quite meet in the median line. If the bones are not coössified, the parietals are separated by a long slender anterior process of the epiotic. There seems to be a faint suture between the parietals and the sphenotic. The epiotic process of the parietal* does not seem to be produced as far posteriorly in this species as in *S. intermedius*, described and figured by Newton.† They are heavy projections of bone and form the inner lateral processes of the skull as in other members of the *Saurodontidæ*. Mr. Newton‡ seems somewhat in doubt about the bones in this region, and is unwilling to accept the bone called parietal by Cope, stating for his reason that the lines indicative of the direction of growth were from the extreme posterior angle of the skull instead of from the anterior portion as we would expect if this bone were the parietal. In a skull of *Ichthyodectes*, before me, there is a distinct suture between the parietal and epiotic, and in this specimen the lines, indicating growth, radiate from the posterior portion of the bone as in *Saurodon intermedius* and the specimen under consideration. I also find the same condition in skulls of *Xiphactinus* which I have examined.

The pterotics are large bones. The line of separation between them and the parietal can not be traced throughout, but this is probably due to the crushed condition of this bone. The radiating lines pass upward and backward instead of upward and forward as in *S. intermedius* Newton. It seems to be very dense in structure.

The supraoccipital is very much crushed and broken away, but enough remains to show that the bone was raised into quite a prominent crest. It extends backward beyond the points of the

*I think it should be called thus until the presence or absence of the suture between this bone and the parietal is definitely determined.
†l c., p. 444, pl. xxxiv.
‡l c., p. 444-445.

epiotics, a condition different from that described by Newton.* It may join the frontals in front, but a small portion of the parietals may intervene.

The orbit is somewhat smaller than in *Ichthyodectes* and is surrounded by a thin ring of sclerotic bones similar to that found in the genus just mentioned. Just in front of the orbit there is a small triangular bone attached to the frontal above, which I take to be a preorbital. The same bone is figured by Newton† but not named or described by the author. Just in front of this there is a long slender bar of bone, which seems to articulate somewhere in the palatine region. On one side the anterior end is crushed down to near the posterior condyle of the maxillary, but on the other side it fits in just back of the superior condyle of the palatine, and as a palatine of another specimen shows a sutural surface at this point, I think it not unlikely that this is the correct position of the bone. This may be the bone that Newton† figured as a "nasal bone," (?) although it is of an entirely different shape from that shown in the cut of his specimen. The bone Newton calls "jugal"(?) I am inclined to think is one of the suborbital bones, as found in *Xiphactinus*, especially as there seems to be a suture indicated between this and a bone just above which articulates with the jugal, (probably a suborbital) above.

Owing to the crushed condition, the prefrontals are almost entirely covered by the ethmoid and frontal. The description of the palatine will be given with the next species. Parts of the opercular and preopercular bones are present. The first is a broad flat plate of bone which articulates with the hyomandibular in a manner similar to that found in *Xiphactinus* and *Ichthyodectes*. The anterior border of the preoperculum is deeply concave, the anterior inferior extremity reaching forward to the angle of the mandible. The hyomandibular of this species is not visible.

The vertebræ are deeply concave, with deep groves closely situated above for the neural arches. The ribs articulate with small ossicles set into deep pits on the side of the centrum. Just above these ossicles there is a deep pit on each side.

A part of the shoulder girdle, including a fragmentary fin, is present. The fin seems rather small.

The skull as a whole is especially remarkable for the extreme length of the mandible, and also the long predentary in front. This portion probably had a dermal covering similar to that cover-

*l c., p. 444.
†l c., pl. xxxiv.

ing the sword-fishes' sword and was no doubt used as a weapon of offense. In an animal with such a weapon as this, we might expect to find powerful fins, but this is not the case with this species. In other respects the skull does not materially differ, excepting in details, from the skull of other members of the *Saurodontidæ*.

Saurodon ferox sp. nov.

This species is represented by the jaws, including the predentary, and other disarticulated bones and vertebræ.

The maxillary is larger than the one just described. The posterior condyles above are somewhat elliptical in outline and but slightly convex from before backwards. Just anterior to this there is a large protuberance which may support a condyle above, and on the external side of this there is a small facet which probably gives articulation with the ethmoid. The surface for the premaxillary is very irregular and is directed inward, becoming thinner toward the anterior border which is sharp. The superior border is strongly concave and sharp, and presents a sutural surface on the external side probably for a supernumerary bone or jugal. The alveolar border is convex and has alveoli for forty or forty-one teeth which are non-striate and knife-like. Each tooth has the characteristic notch at the base. The posterior extremity of the bone is very shallow and turned slightly upward. Aside from the shagreened surface of the bone above the alveolar border the external surface has no characteristic markings.

The premaxmillary is very similar to that of the species described above, except that there are ten instead of twelve teeth. On the internal side the bone is bevelled off toward the posterior border in order to fit the surface for its reception on the maxillary.

MEASUREMENTS OF MAXILLARY AND PREMAXILLARY.

Maxillary;	length of alveolar border	115
"	depth at condyle for palatine	45
"	greatest length of bone	128
"	number of teeth in 1. c. m	3.5
Premaxillary;	depth	60
"	length	32

The dentary is elongate and slender. The alveolar border is slightly incurved at the sympyhsis and supports forty-six teeth, similar in form but about twice as large as those upon the maxilla. Just back of the last tooth there is a slight coronoid process, somewhat similar to that found in *Xiphactinus*.. The symphysis is very similar to that found in the last species described, and has

a long slender pit just back of it on the internal side. It is more elliptical than the corresponding pit in *Saurocephalus*. The lower border of the bone is sharp.

In a paper recently published by Prof. Hay *U. S. N. M. the author corrects some errors in the former descriptions of the jaws of *Xiphactinus*. I have for sometime been of the opinion that the bones of this region had not been correctly interpreted, and as the arrangement of the articular portion of this genus, seems to agree with the figure and description of this part of *Xiphactinus* as given by the author, I think it well to adopt his nomenclature.

The dermarticular supports only a small portion of the cotylus, in the lower portion of the cavity. It sends a long sword-shaped process forward internally, but does not encroach much upon the dentary externally. Posteriorly, it sends a lamina of bone backward, which I think would be well named the cotyloid process as in most of the genera of this family; it is the only portion of this bone which articulates directly with the quadrate. Just beneath the cotyloid process, there is a prominent angle.

The autarticular is a small element not extending forward beyond the sixth posterior tooth, and is fitted into a groove in the dermarticular. It supports nearly the whole of the cotylus, which is somewhat elliptical and concave from above downward. The predentary is not so elongated but is slightly deeper than in the species described above.

MEASUREMENTS OF MANDIBLE.

		mm.
Mandible;	length of alveolar border	149
"	length from cotyloid cavity	174
"	depth at symphysis	27
"	depth at coronoid	46
"	number of teeth in 1. c. m	3
Predentary;	length	55
"	length of symphyseal surface	24

The quadrate is a broad fan-shaped expansion. The condyle is elliptical in outline and convex. Extending upward from the condyle on the external side there is a ridge which ends above in a deep notch which accommodates a portion of the sympletic. This groove continues downward on the internal side for more than one-half the depth of the bone. The posterior border has a very slight groove and extends upward the whole extent of the sympletic. The superior border probably articulates with the pterygoid and metapterygoid as in *Xiphactinus*. The anterior border is sharp. Both the external and internal surfaces are covered with

*Zoological Bull., vol. II, No. 1, pp. 86-88.

minute striæ radiating upward from the condyle. The sympletic is a long slender element. The upper end presents an articular surface, similar to that found on the superior border of the quadrate.

The whole of the palatine is preserved. It is an irregular-shaped bone, presenting a ragged sutural surface above and below for the pterygoid and mesopterygoid. The bone is especially remarkable for the great depth of the maleolar portion, being nearly half as deep as the corresponding part in *Xiphactinus.* The superior articular surface is small and oval in outline, while the lower is larger and more elliptical. The depth of the maleolar portion is 20 mm.

The hyomandibular is very similar to that found in *Ichthyodectes.* The superior condyle is elongated and depressed in the central portion. In the skull of *S. intermedius*, figured by Newton*, this condyle is shown to be regularly rounded from before backward. As all the figures and descriptions of the Saurodont hyomandibular show the depression described above, I am inclined to think that this portion may have been distorted in the specimen figured by Mr. Newton. Extending downward from the anterior and posterior angles, there are two slight ridges which converge toward the center and form a much larger one which extends downward to nearly the lower extremity of the bone. It forms the outer border of the groove for the preoperculum. There is also another ridge on the internal side, just in front of the condyle for the operculum, but it is not so prominent as the one just mentioned. The condyle for the operculum is elongated as in *Ichthyodectes.*

The lower extremity of the bone presents an articular surface similar in size and character to that found at the upper end of the sympletic. I think it is very likely that these two bones articulate at this point.

A small portion of a scapula is preserved. It shows only two distinct articular condyles, one large and one small, instead of three as in *Xiphactinus.* Portions of several spines are preserved, of which one complete and a portion of another are shown in the figure and need no further consideration.

The first anterior vertebra has the posterior end deeply concave, but the anterior end is not so deep, and has a slight protuberance projecting forward above. On the superior surface there are two deep, rounded pits for the neurapophyses; aside from this there are no other grooves displayed upon the centra.

A small toothed element was found on the internal side of one of the maxillæ at about the point where the pterygoid should lie, but

*L. c. pl. xxxiv.

it is too large to be a portion of this bone. There are nine teeth upon it, which are about the size of those found upon the anterior portion of the maxilla.

Below are given the known American species of this and the related genus *Saurocephalus:*

Saurodon leanus Hays. Marl, New Jersey.
" **phlebotomus** Cope, Niobrara Cretaceous, Western Kansas.
" **broadheadi** Stewart, " " " "
" **xiphirostris** Stewart, " " " "
" **ferox** Stewart, " " " "
Saurocephalus lanciformis Harlan, Cretaceous, Missouri River.
" **arapahovius** Cope, Niobrara Cretaceous, Western Kansas.
" **dentatus** Stewart, " " " "

Lawrence, Kansas, Oct. 6, 1898.

Notes on Campophyllum torquium Owen, and a new Variety of Monopteria gibbosa Meek and Worthen.

Contributions from the Paleontological Laboratory, No. 35.

BY J. W. BEEDE.

Campophyllum torquium Owen.

"Corallum simple, attaining a rather large size, elongate conical, and often variously geniculated or bent when two or three inches in length, but becoming nearly straight, subcylindrical, and considerably elongated in the larger half of adult individuals. Epitheca thin with small encircling wrinkles and strong undulations of growth, showing no traces of the septal costæ when unabraided, but, where even slightly worn, exposing the regularly disposed septa and thin intervening dissepiments distinctly. Calice circular or slightly oval, comparatively shallow, with thin margins, from which its sides slope rather steeply inward for some distance and then descend very abruptly into a deeper, narrow, central depression; provided at the outer side of the general curve of the corallum with a moderately distinct septal fossula, formed by the shortening of one of the primary septa, and the bending down of the tabulæ at that point. Principal septa from 30 to 48, extending from about one-half to two-thirds the distance from the exterior toward the center, stout and usually straight inside of the outer vessicular zone, but becoming distinctly more attenuated (as seen in transverse sections) and somewhat curved or a little flexuous in crossing the vesicular area, where they alternate with an equal number of very short, thin ones; tabulæ very wide or occupying about two-thirds the entire breadth as seen in longitudinal sections, and passing nearly hortizontally across with a more or less upward arching; dissepiments thin and forming numerous obliquely ascending, small vesicles, in transverse sections seen to pass across

between the costae with an outward curve. Entire length unknown, but individuals incomplete in both extremities, 5 inches in length and 1.60 inches in breadth have been met with. Individuals of this size show at the thickest part 9 costæ in a space of .50 inches."*

In addition to the above characters may be mentioned: In young specimens the cardinal septum and all the other septa on that side of the corallum are very greatly developed laterally after passing inward from the vesicular zone; the inner wall of the vesicular zone is also thickened on that side of the corallum. As a result of this great thickening of the septa the interspaces are small, producing a peculiar appearance in cross sections as shown in figure 1. The septal development becomes less and less marked as the specimen advances in age until in old specimens it is hardly noticeable, save in the cardinal septum, though a close comparison generally shows them a little larger on the outside of the general curve. These peculiarities may be seen by sectioning the large and small ends of any adult specimen. The thickness of the dissepimental zone and also the number of tabular dissepiments are variable, as will be seen by comparing figures 2 and 3 with those of Meek.† Some specimens in the collections of the University are about 9 inches long and apparently incomplete at both ends. Such specimens are generally a litlle crooked throughout their entire length. The young specimens are either rather slender or quite turbinate; the latter form is shown in figure 4, which is twice natural size. Through the courtesy of Mr. Gharles Schuchert of the U. S. National Museum I have had the pleasure of examining some specimens from Rock Bluff, Nebraska, belonging to the collection studied by Meek, and upon which he based his description. These show the above mentioned pecularities quite distinctly. Specimens from Jefferson, Douglas, and Chatauqua counties, Kansas (all from about the horizon of the Lecompton Limestone of Bennett), show these characters equally well, as does also a specimen collected in a quarry in "Northrop's Woods" about three miles west of Kansas City, Kansas. The horizon of the Rock Bluff locality is probably above that of the Lecompton limestone. It is evident that the species has a considerable geological as well as geographical range in Kansas.

Among the many interesting fossils which the Turner Oōlite has produced are two right valves of a *Monopteria* apparently quite distinct from any species I have yet seen described.

---

*Meek. Fin. Rep. U. S. G. S. Neb. 1872, p. 145, pl. 1. Fig. 1.
†Loc cit.

Monopteria gibbosa alata. var. nov.

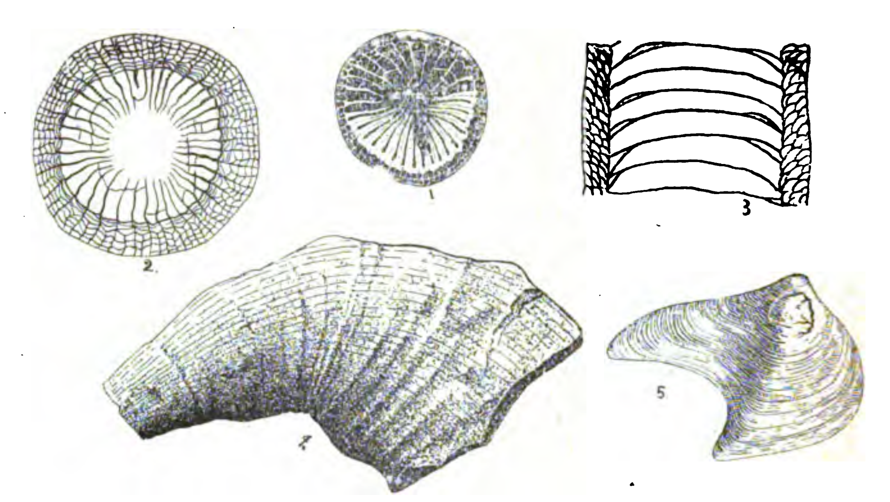
Shell small, not very gibbous; beak extending a trifle beyond the hinge-line. Prominent on account of lunule, but not much elevated, and placed well back for this genus; umbonal ridge less prominent than in any other species of this genus and less curved. Posterior ear very greatly developed, about equalling the entire body of the shell in area. Antero-dorsal margin sinuate on account of the turning down of the margin to form the lunule; anterior margin circular nearly to the postero-ventral extremity of the shell, which is acute; the posterior margin consists of a broad shallow sinus, extending from the postero-ventral end to the point of the ear which is apparently rounded and obtuse. The ear is not separated from the shell by a distinct depression, but slopes gradually from the umbonal swell, save to the extreme lower edge where the depression is more abrupt. Very fine, concentric lines of growth are visible, all of which pass around the shell with a double curve to the ear, where they again curve backward, and then forward to the hinge-line. Length 20 mm., depth 18 mm., convexity of single valve a trifle less than 4 mm.

This shell differs from *M. gibbosa* M. and W. to which it is most closely related in some respects, in being much less gibbous, ear much larger and more obtuse, antero-dorsal outline more sinuous, umbonal ridge much straighter and less prominent, beak placed farther back and depression separating the ear from the umbonal ridge more shallow. These characters, if permanent, are amply sufficient upon which to base a species, but I refrain from assigning specific importance to them until more material has been studied. As a means of distinquishing the form I suggest the above varietal name.

It differs from *Monotis sp?* Keyes* in being more round on the anterior margin and more sinuate on the antero-dorsal margin; ear about twice as large, depression separating the ear from the umbonal ridge less distinct; beak placed farther back; postero-ventral extremity more acute, and the umbonal ridge a little less prominent, though of about the same degree of curvature.

In figure 5, herewith given (twice natural size), the artist has represented the hinge-line as slightly curved, which gives the beak undue prominence. The margin is embedded in the matrix and the shell is too thin and frail to admit of its removal. The artist followed the outline as it appears in the matrix.

*Geol. Surv., Mo. vol. v. pl. xlvi, Fig. 10.



Campophyllum torquium and Monopteria gibbosa alata.

A Preliminary Description of Seven New Species of Fish from the Cretaceous of Kansas.

Contributions from the Paleontological Laboratory, No. 36.

BY ALBAN STEWART.

With Plate XVII.

The following are descriptions of some specimens of Cretaceous fishes contained in the museum of the University of Kansas, which I think are new to science.

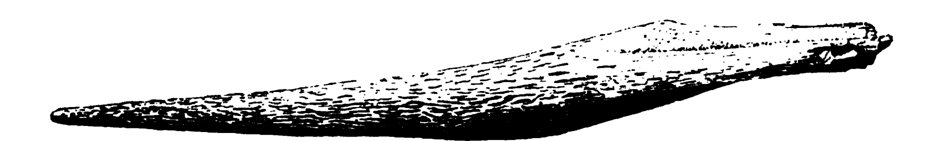


Fig. 1. Rostrum of P. recurvirostris.

PROTOSPHYRÆNA Leidy.

Protosphyræna recurvirostris sp. nov.

The material upon which this species is based consists of a complete rostrum, No. 373, with the adjoining portions of the vomer and parasphenoid, and differs from *P. nitida* in the following important characters. The superior distal surface is regularly rounded and not flat as in the species mentioned, and the cross-section at this point is round instead of semi-circular or oval. The specimen corresponds in some respects with *P. penetrans*, and to this species it is more closely allied than to any of the other forms which have been described. I was inclined to call it *P. penetrans* until I found a specimen of this species, when I discovered that it differed from it in a number of points which were sufficiently great to be called specific. The rostrum is more slender as a whole and is contracted to a more acute point than in

P. penetrans. The markings are more sharply defined and the ridges inosculate with each other but rarely. In *P. penetrans* the markings are more or less reticulate. In the anterior portion of the species under consideration the ridges are closely placed to each other, while posteriorly they become scattered and are not so well marked as in the anterior portion of the bone. The direction also becomes more varied in this region. On the posterior half of the inferior surface the ridges become less numerous and are larger than those on the upper surface and upon the sides. In *P. penetrans* there is no difference of marking on the superior and inferior surfaces. A part of one of the large teeth at the base of the rostrum is preserved. It presents a smooth enameled surface and probably had anterior and posterior cutting edges.

The space intervening between the two teeth seems to be hardly so great as in *P. penetrans*. A point that I have noticed is, that all the figures and specimens show only one tooth on this portion, the alveola for the other seeming to be filled with bone or matrix. This would lead to the belief that these teeth were alternately functional. The rostrum as a whole is recurved and from this character the name of the species, recurvirostris, is derived.

Locality; Niobrara Cretaceous, Gove county, Kansas.

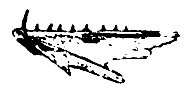


Fig. 2. Right dentary of E. parvus.

ENCHODUS Agassiz.

Enchodus parvus sp. nov.

Represented by the right dentary of a single individual, No. 321. This species differs from *E. shumardii* Leidy in having nine or ten teeth upon the internal side of the dentary, and in having the most anterior of these smaller than in this species. The specimen is small as the name indicates.

Locality; Niobrara Cretaceous, Gove county, Kansas; collector, E. P. West.

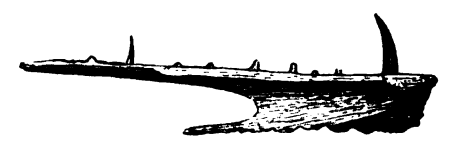


Fig. 3. Right dentary of E. amicrodus.

Enchodus amicrodus sp. nov.

This species is based upon the right dentary bone of a single individual, No. 324. The dentary is shallow and supports ten or eleven large teeth upon the alveolar border, the anterior of which is slightly recurved. The external border bears no fringe of minute teeth, and the symphysis is not so rugose as in other species of this genus.

PACHYRHIZODUS Agassiz.

Pachyrhizodus leptognathus sp. nov.

This species is based upon the left mandible, quadrate, symplectic (?) preoperculum, and two broad flat plates which probably represent two more of the opercular bones. The museum number of the specimen is 75. With the exception of the symphyseal portion of the mandible only the internal sides of the bones can be seen. The dentary is long and very slender and bears eighteen small conical teeth upon its superior border each of which is set upon a small bony tubercle similar to that found in *P. caninus*. The symphysis is more or less tubercular and is similar in many respects to *P. latimentum*. There are no teeth arranged in a triangle on this portion as in *P. caninus*. The cotylus is concave from before backwards and strongly convex laterally.

The quadrate is triangular in outline and assumes a somewhat twisted appearance towards the condyle. The condyle is somewhat bifurcated in order to fit the cotylus. Just back of the quadrate and closely applied to it there is a small element which probably is the sympletic.

The preoperculum consists of a vertical and a horizontal portion which meet each other at almost right angles. The vertical portion is broad below, becoming much more narrow above. Just back of the anterior border of this part there is a well defined ridge extending downward to the horizontal portion. The two flat bones mentioned above possess no characters other than are shown in the figure.

MEASUREMENTS.

		mm.
Mandible:	length of alveolar border	110.5
"	length of cotyloid cavity	123
"	number of teeth in one inch	5
Quadrate:	depth	32
"	length of superior border	34.5

Pachyrhizodus velox sp. nov.

Represented by a maxillary, both mandibles, quadrate, numerous branchiostegal rays, and a rather long bone, partially concealed by

the rays, which is probably one of the hyoids. The museum number of the specimen is 316.

The maxillary is long and slender and of about equal depth from the superior condyle backward. The condyle is elevated, but how much can not be determined as the superior portion is not preserved. Just beneath the condyle the bone thickens and the outer surface contracts inward. External to the condyle there is a broad shelf of bone which is very roughly striated. The premaxilary surface is not preserved. The alveolar border supports about forty-seven teeth as near as can be estimated. They are conical, directed slightly inward, and closely set. The crowns present a smooth enameled surface. The whole of the posterior portion of the bone is finely striated. Just above the alveolar border in the anterior half of the bone there are many small nutritious foramina leading inward.

The mandible differs from that of *P. latimentum* Cope in not having a tooth on the symphysis within the anterior one, and in having a greater depth at the coronoid with reference to its length.

The dentary is short and strongly incurved at the symphysis. The symphysis is divided by a groove into an external and an internal portion. The external is small and tubercular in its nature. The internal is probably the only part that is in contact with its fellow on the opposite side and it has a well marked ridge extending backward which becomes more indistinct toward the posterior portion. This ridge causes the bone to be thickened just below the alveolar border. The lower portion of the dentary is thin and smooth externally, except on the lower border, where there are short and deep striæ extending backward. The alveolar border supports probably thirty-eight or forty teeth. These are closely set, non-striated and directed inward The external alveolar wall rises considerably above the internal.

The character of the cotyloid cavity can not be made out owing to the quadrate being firmly in place. The outer surface of the articular is covered with striæ which become coarser toward the lower portion.

The head of the quadrate seems to be broad and bifurcated as in *P. leptognathus*. Above the head the bone broadens anteriorly and has a strong ridge extending upward along the posterior border. The bone supposed to be one of the hyoids, has a broad flat bifurcated extremity, which soon contracts and becomes rod like. The other extremity is not preserved. Between the jaws there are several pieces of ossified cartilag covered with minute denticles somewhat resembling shagreen.

MEASUREMENTS.

Maxillary:	length from premaxillary surface	135
"	depth of condyle	26*
Mandible:	length from cotyloid cavity	157
"	length of alveolar border	122
"	depth at coronoid angle	48.3
"	number of teeth in one inch	8
Hyoid (?):	distance across anterior end	23*

In addition to the above the following species have been described from Kansas:

P. kingii Cope. Proc. Am. Phil. Soc., 1872. p. 344.
P. latimentum Cope. l, c., p. 346.
P. sheareri Cope. l. c., p. 347.
P. caninus Cope. l. c., p. 344.
P. leptopsis Cope, Hayden's bull. U. S. Geol. Surv. Terr. No. 2, 1874, p. 42.

BERYX(?) Cuvier.

The material referred to this genus consists of fragments of several individuals, including two species. The bones are different from those of any of the Cretaceous fishes heretofore described from America, but resemble somewhat the figures of *Beryx* from the chalk of England. For the present I will leave it in this genus.

Beryx polymicrodus sp. nov.

This species is represented by the mandibles, maxillaries, premaxillaries, and other fragments of several individuals.

The maxillary is elongated and slightly concave on the alveolar border, which is rather broad in front and narrow behind, and is covered with numerous villiform teeth directed inward. Just above the most anterior of these there is an elevated articular portion which probably binds the jaw to the skull. The posterior portion is expanded and covered with very coarse striæ.

The premaxillary resembles in a general way some of the recent cat-fishes. The alveolar portion is covered with villiform teeth slightly larger than those upon the maxilla. They are directed inward and increase in size from before backward.

The dentary is rather light in structure and is covered above with teeth similar to those found upon the maxilla and premaxilla. The symphysis consists of an internal and an anterior portion. The first of these is a flat facet, the second a well rounded condyle. The alveolar surface is projected forward over this portion as well as overhanging all the external side of the dentary. Below the alveolar portion the bone is covered with large longitudinal ridges on both the external and internal sides of the bone.

*Estimated.

The cotylus has a small facet for the quadrate, with a prominent hook of bone extending upward and backward on the external side.

Beryx multidentatus sp. nov.

Represented by a fragmentary mandible and a portion of a maxilla. These indicate a fish about one-third larger than the species just described, and differing from this in not having the symphysis divided into two parts, and in having no anterior projection of the alveolar portion over the symphysis. The teeth continue over the external side of the bone instead of overhanging it as in the form just described. The cotylus is larger than in *B. polymicrodus*, concave from above downward and convex from side to side.

Lawrence, Kans., Sept. 29, 1898.

Refractive Index and Alcohol-solvent Power of a Number of Clearing and Mounting Media.

Contributions from the Zoological Laboratory No. 3.

BY C. E. M'CLUNG.

As far as the author's observation goes there has not been published any very extensive list of the refractive index and clearing value of the reagents commonly used by microscopists. Such a want is noted by Lee in the fourth edition of his "Vade Mecum," page 66. In the hope of assisting in the compilation of such valuable information, the writer has experimented on the reagents named in the following table with the results there noted. The instrument employed in the determination of the refractive index was the Pulfrich refractometer, the sodium flame being used as the source of illumination and the conditions of temperature being kept as nearly constant as possible.

In ascertaining the clearing value of the substances a number of methods were tried but finally abandoned for the simple one of testing the strength of alcohol that would dissolve in the reagent and produce a clear solution. While this method does not truly represent the conditions present in a tissue where the clearing agent is replacing the absorbed alcohol, yet actual practice indicates that the results are approximately correct, at least nearly enough so to make the figures of practical value. Strengths of alcohol varying by 5 per cent. were employed, and the weakest one that the reagent would dissolve is given in the table as the lowest grade of alcohol from which it will clear.

The different substances tested were taken from the ordinary laboratory supply and supplemented by others obtained from the Pharmacy department of the University. The latter consisted almost entirely of essential oils from the house of Lehn & Fink, New York. When possible, more than one sample of each reagent was obtained and tested.

Following is the table:

	Refractive Index.	Strength of Alcohol dissolved.	Price per pound.
Chloroform	1.4395	95 per cent.	$ .65
Linalool	1.45941	80 "	....
Oil Eucalyptus	1.46090	90 "	1.25
Linaloe	1.46090	85 "	....
Oil Petitgrains	1.46090	90 "	....
" Coriander	1.46288	85 "	.75 oz.
" Peppermint	1.46327	85 "	1.25
" Cedar	1.46626	95 "	.30
" Pinus sylvestris	1.46882	100 "	1.10
Turpentine	1.46882	100 "	1.40 gal.
Oil Lemon	1.47078	95 "	1.25
" Eucalyptus glob.	1.47097	90 "	....
" Orange	1.47176	95 "	4.00
" Pinus picea	1.47274	100 "	....
" Juniper berries	1.47394	95 "	1.75
" Pinus pimlionis	1.47620	100 "	....
" Citronella	1.47909	90 "	1.25
" Origanum	1.47919	95 "	1.10
Turpineol	1.48005	75 "	....
Oil Celery	1.48054	95 "	1.20
" Nutmeg	1.48054	95 "	.30 oz.
" Origanum	1.48103	95 "	1.10
" Caraway	1.48441	90 "	1.75
" Ginger	1.48807	95 "	.65 oz.
Xylene	1.49348	95 "	....
Benzene	1.49488	95 "	.45
Carvol	1.49535	85 "	....
Oil Thyme	1.49638	95 "	1.49
" Copaiva	1.49723	Immisc.	1.10
" Cedarwood	1.50188	95 per cent.	....
" "	1.50326	95 "	....
" Cumin	1.50373	90 "	4.50
" Sandalwood (E. In.)	1.50510	90 "	6.00
" Calamus	1.50602	95 "	.30 oz.
" Sandalwood (W. In.)	1.50820	80 "	3.50
" Cedarwood	1.51533	95 "	....
Xylene Balsam	1.52397	.. "	....
Oil Sassafras	1.52724	95 "	.50
" Allspice	1.53062	85 "	.25 oz.

	Refractive Index.	Strength of Alcohol dissolved.	Price per pound.
Oil Cloves	1.53171	80 "	.65
" Sweet Birch	1.53329	90 "	....
" Cinnamon leaves	1.53535	85 "	....
Safrol (sp. gr. 1.108)	1.53584	95 "	....
Oil Fennel	1.53885	95 "	1.75
" Cloves	1.53723	80 "	.65
" Mirbane*	1.54982	95 "	.35
" Anise	1.55795	95 "	2.25
Anethol	1.55208	90 "	....
Anilin	1.58457	60 "	....
Oil Cassia	1.60160	80 "	1.80

The table speaks for itself, so that comment is scarcely necessary. From the list given, a series of clearing agents may be selected in which almost any refractive index from 1.44 up to 1.60 is obtainable. Since many of these are suitable agents in which to mount objects, the proper refractive power for most structures may be selected. Where it could be found, the price of the reagent per pound is given.

Particular attention is called to the value of the oil of cassia, which has a refractive index of 1.60160 and clears from 80 per cent. alcohol. It is a most excellent reagent according to all experience in the laboratory, and in addition to its other good qualities it dries hard enough to make permanent mounts.

On Some Turtle Remains from the Ft. Pierre.

Contributions from the Paleontological Laboratory, No. 37.

BY GEORGE WAGNER.

Among the material collected this summer (1898) by the University Geological Expedition are some remains of turtles, from the Ft. Pierre. Though fragmentary, they are worthy of study; firstly, because they seem to be the first material of this nature collected from this horizon in Kansas, and almost the first from any locality; and secondly, because of their remarkable relation to the turtles described from the underlying Niobrara.

Toxochelys latiremis Cope.

A specimen consisting chiefly of the back part of the skull and a part of the upper jaw must evidently be referred to this species. The material (Kas. Univ. Museum, No. 1221) is in the poor state of preservation so common with Ft. Pierre fossils; it shows, however, fairly well most of the quadrate, the basisphenoid, and parts of the pterygoid, maxillary, basi and supra-occipital, and parietal. The sutures are indistinct except between the quadrate and pterygoid. (See fig. 1.)

On comparison of these elements with the corresponding parts of two skull of *T. latiremis* collected from the Niobrara, (Kans. Univ. Mus. Nos. 1214 and 1215),* I fail to find any difference in specific characters; even in size they are nearly identical. A difference in the appearance of the articular surface of the quadrate is undoubtedly due to difference in compression. This specimen was discovered by Professor Williston at Eagle Tail Creek, near Sharon Springs, Kas.

Another specimen (Kansas University Museum 1222) consists of fragments of a lower jaw, including one nearly complete

*See University Geol. Survey of Kas, Vol. 4. Plate 79.

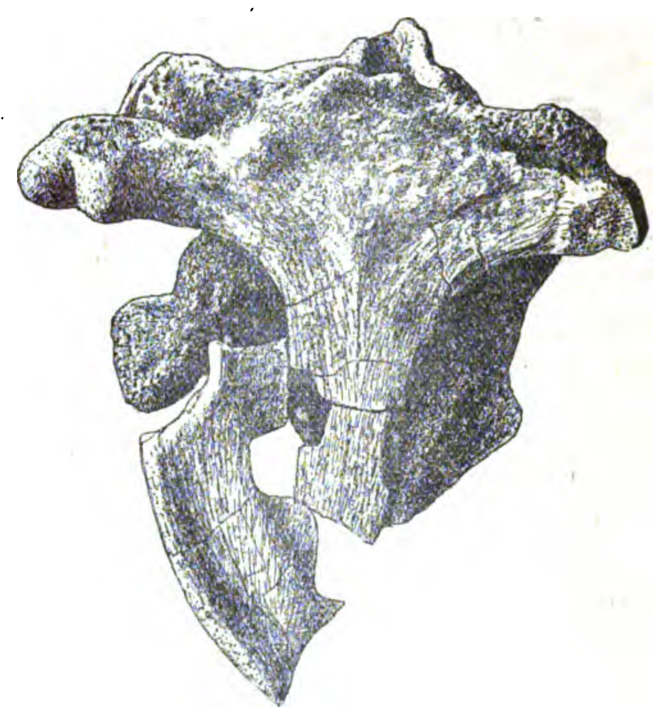


Fig. 1.

ramus. The sutures can be traced fairly well and the jaw is but little distorted (See fig. 2.). In the interrelation of the bones and in the slender symphysis this ramus greatly resembles that of *T. latiremis*, but the ramus as a whole is very much stouter than that of *latiremis*. Its length is about twice that of the only *latiremis* jaw in the University museum (No. 1215), and even exceeds that of



Fig. 2.

a specimen figured by Cope.* The specimen was discovered by Mr. Sydney Prentice near Lisbon, Wallace county, Kas.

The discovery of the same species of vertebrates in the Ft. Pierre and Niobrara, of which the first mentioned above is one of

*Cretaceous Vertebrates, Plate VIII, Figs. 1, 1a.

several examples, is certainly worthy of note, and throws doubt upon the propriety of the terms *Colorado* and *Montana* in Cretaceous stratigraphy. That the formation whence the specimen came is Ft. Pierre is evident from the invertebrate fauna. Prof. Williston also informs me that the genus *Platecarpus*, and possibly the species *coryphæus*, occur in the same horizon. Furthermore Prof. Case considers* Mr. Wieland's *Archelon ischyros*,† from the Ft. Pierre of South Dakota, congeneric, if not conspecific, with the *Protostega* of the Niobrara.

Prof. S. W. Williston has furnished me with the above specimens, as well as with constant aid and encouragement in this and other work. To him my deepest gratitude is due.

*Journal of Morphology, Vol. 14, P. 52, (1897).
†Am. Jour. Sc. Vol. II, Dec., 1896. P. 399, 1 Plate.

Parasitic Influences on Melanoplus.

Contribution from the Entomological Laboratory. No. 63.

BY S. J. HUNTER.

The relations existing between the host and its parasite is an ever interesting source of study from a biologic standpoint. Multiplied numbers of the former tend toward greater increase of the latter. When the parasites predominate, the individuals of the host tribe decrease; should the host disappear, the parasite must follow or adapt itself to new environments. Absence of the parasite grants license to the increase of the host. The prevalence of one is directly dependent upon the other.

In order that an estimate of the influence of this condition upon *Menaloplus differentialis* might be gained, the writer while conducting the summer field work of this department during the two seasons past, collected a number of the differential locust. Fifty were taken the first week of October, 1897, one hundred and thirty were collected September 3, 1898. 12 per cent. of those captured in 1897 had been parasitized by diptera. Of those taken in 1898, 20 per cent. had been attacked by parasite diptera. When it is taken into consideration that the dates of capture were before the close of the active season of the the parasites, and that by reason of capture and confinement, some of the locusts taken were doubtless saved from attack, the estimate can be regarded as conservative. The duration of observation and number of individuals considered will not yet allow favorable deductions to be made from the 8 per cent. increase recorded this year. In localities where this locust was superabundant in October, 1897, the number of dead forms showing an unmistakable evidence of the work of dipterous parasites was nearly equal to those moving about. The number of *Melanoplus differentialis* that appeared in the same localities this season was equal to, if not greater than, those existing the year previous. This species of locust has been of economic importance annually in those regions for some years past. This

is in a measure due to the peculiarly favorable condition existing there, environments which appear to be highly suitable to the rapid multiplication of this species. The ultimate effect of parasitism upon *Melanoplus differentialis* with such surroundings is yet to be demonstrated.

Observations on this subject will be continued by the department. It is the purpose of this paper to record the data observed and diptera concerned. Dr. S. W. Williston and Dr. Garry de N. Hough have very kindly examined the specimens bred. The descriptions and determinations of the Sarcophagidæ made by Dr. Hough appear below. The description of the Tachinidæ which appear to be new, will shortly be given by Dr. Williston in a paper on the museum types of Tachinidæ.

Concerning the life history of the diptera described in this article, the following notes have been made. Careful and continued watching for the act and time of oviposition was not fully rewarded. During the period of the last moult of *Melanoplus differentialis*, when frequently a dozen individuals could be seen at one time in various stages of this change, the writer noted numbers of Sarcophagidæ flitting nervously over and about, alighting near the soft viscid locust, then taking wing again. While no act of oviposition or darting downward was observed, as is the case with many parasitic Hymenoptera when placing their eggs, it is the writer's opinion that some at least of the eggs are placed upon the locust at this time. This belief is strengthened by the fact that the insect, during the moult, is quiescent, is soft and lightly coated with a sebaceous fluid and therefore is an easier prey and a greater attraction for parasitic flies in quest of a host than the active and fully chitinized insect.

The lot of specimens from which *Sarcophaga cimbicis* was bred was collected on September 30, 1897; the larva came forth from the host four days later. It emerged October 23, 1897. The material from which *Sarcophaga hunteri* was bred was taken on September 1, 1898. Three of these dipterous larvæ pupated on the 3d, one on the 6th, and the last of the five on the 9th of September. They emerged in the following order: two on September 6, one on September 8, the remaining two, a male and a female, now in Dr. Hough's collection, hold the labels giving date of emergence, a copy of which I did not retain. There elapsed, however, in each case but a few days between pupation and maturation.

Sarcophaga cimbicis Town. Can, Ent. Vol. 24, pp. 126, 127, 1892.

This specimen, a female, was determined by Dr. Hough from

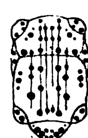
material in his collection. He wrote that the description by Townsend was not then accessible. Upon looking up the list of types in our collection, I found the material, a male and a female, upon which Townsend based his description. A careful comparison with literature at hand, made by Dr. Williston, shows the three specimens to be without doubt identical It is interesting to note, as showing the range of adaptability of this species, that the types were bred from cocoons of *Cimbex Americana*.

Here follows Dr. Hough's description:

Sarcophaga (Tephromyia) hunteri nov. sp. Three males and two females, bred from *Melanoplus differentialis* by Mr. S. J. Hunter in whose honor I have named it. Habitat Kansas.

Length five and one-half to seven millimetres. Color gray; the male rather brownish, the female whitish. Abdomen without the usual variable spots of a *Sarcophaga* but with three black stripes, a median and on each side a lateral; in the female the lateral stripes are quite faint and can only be seen well with a favorable incidence of light. Anal segments gray, retracted within the fourth segment in the males. Palpi yellow to yellowish brown. Antennæ brown with the apex of the second joint and the base of the third yellow to a varying extent. Squamulæ white. Wings grayish hyaline; first longitudinal vein not spinose, third spinose for two-thirds to three-fourths of the distance to the small cross vein. Legs black; in the male more or less brownish gray pollinose, in the female whitish gray pollinose. Hind tibiæ of male not bearded.





Head—Front of male at narrowest point one-sixth the width of the head, from this point which is about at the junction of the dorsal and middle thirds the front widens both dorsad and ventrad. Front of female of uniform width, six-twentieths the width of the head. The exact measurements are: Male front 0.4 mm., head 2.5; female front 0.6 mm , head 2.0 mm.

Antennæ—Third joint more than twice as long as the second. Arista fully as long as the second and third joints together, composed apparently of but two joints of which the basal is very small and about as long as broad, the terminal tapering as usual (its basal and apical thirds black, its middle third whitish) and feathered for rather more than half its length with rather long, fine hairs. The yellow, or perhaps I should say reddish yellow, color is more extensive on the antennæ of the female than of the male.

The vibrissal angle is a little above the mouth edge and slightly but distinctly narrows the cypeus. Dorsad the principal vibrissa the vibrissal ridge is beset with small or minute bristles its entire length. Ventrad the principal vibrissa are about three smaller vibrissæ.

The dorso-ventral diameter of the bucca is one-third that of the eye. It is quite evenly beset with small bristles which are larger toward the edge of the mouth opening where they form a distinct bordering row.

Macrochætæ of vertex, front, etc. Male: By far the largest of the vertical bristles is the inner vertical, the outer vertical is scarcely if at all larger than the cilia of the posterior orbit. The greater ocellar are small, the lesser ocellar very small; of the latter there are several pairs and they extend over upon the occipital surface of the head beyond the postvertical pair which is small and very evidently a member of the ocellar group. The occipito-central is present and is about as large as the postvertical. There are two or three ascending and about eight decussating transverse frontals. The latter extend down upon the gena about as far as the apex of the second antennal joint. Upon the geno plate laterad the frontals there are no large bristles but an irregular row of exceedingly minute hairs which begins at or a little dorsad of the middle of the geno-vertical plate and extends ventrad on the geno-vertical plate and on the gena nearly or quite to the ventral end of the latter. On the gena this row has a tendency to become double and the last three to five members of the anterior row are much larger than the rest, thus forming a rather prominent little group near the lower corner of the eye. The ciliæ of the posterior orbit are small, closely set and well aligned. Parallel to them is a second distinct row of bristles of about the same size.

Female: The bristles of the head of the female differ from those of the male as follows. The outer vertical is almost as wel ldeveloped as the inner vertical. The transverse frontals number but five or six. The row of minute hairs on the geno-vertical plate and gena has a lesser tendency to become doubled on the gena. Two good sized orbital bristles are present.

Thorax—The thorax is striped as is usual in *Sarcophagæ* The stripes are very distinct in the male and quite faint in the female. The chætotaxy of the thorax is alike in the two sexes and is indicated in the accompanying diagram The female has a smaller number of minute bristles than the male and consequently its chætotaxy is more easily made out. In the diagram I have indicated three post

humeral bristles. The two smaller ones are in but one specimen large enough to be distinguished from the other hairs or microchætæ. This variation of the posthumerals is common in *Sarcophagæ*.

Abdomen—The macrochætæ of the abdomen are marginal only. Each segment has a complete row. On the first and second segments they are all of insignificant size except two or three at the lateral border. On the third segment all are of good size and they number twelve to fourteen. On the fourth segment all are of good size ond they number fourteen to sixteen.

The bristles of the legs are arranged as is usual in *Sarcophagæ* I can make out nothing worthy of especial notice here.

Wing—First longitudinal vein not spinose. Third vein not spinose for two-thirds to three-quarters of the distance to the small cross vein. Elbow of fourth almost exactly rectangular and provided with an apparent appendix which, however, is not a stump of a vein but a slight fold or wrinkle of the wing. Hind cross vein sinuous, longer than, but hardly twice as long as, that segment of the fourth vein between it and the elbow. Hind cross vein and apical cross vein almost exactly parallel.

This species belongs to Brauer's subgenus *Tephromyia* of *Sarcophaga* (sens. lat.). In this subgenus the vibrissal angles are distinctly above the mouth edge and, projecting somewhat mesad, distinctly narrow the clypeus. The abdomen does not have the changeable spots, maculæ spuriæ, of *Sarcophaga* but is either unicolorous or marked with fixed spots or lines. The European species of this group are *T. grisea* Meig., *T. lineata* Fall., *T. affinis* Fall., and *T. obsoleta* Fall. As far as I am aware *hunteri* is the first Tephromyia to be observed outside of Europe. Through the kindness of Herr Paul Stein of Genthin, Germany I have now in my possession specimens of *grisea, affinis* and *obsoleta*. From these specimens and the accessible descriptions of *lineata* I am able to construct the following table for separating the species of this group,

A—Abdomen unicolorous, squamulæ yellow, wings strongly yellow at base—*grisea* Meig.

AA—Abdomen with distinct black markings, squamulæ not yellow, wings not strongly yellow at base. B.

B—Palpi black. C.

C—Each abdominal segment with a black dorsal line and on each side withe a narrow, oblique, black spot. These spots often

united so that the abdomen presents three black stripes. Front of male one-third the width of the head.—*lineata* Fall.

CC—First abdominal segment blackish, other segments each with a dorsal black line and on each side with a large irregularly shaped black spot. Front of male one-fifth the width of the head; of female one-third the width of the head—*affinis* Fall.

BB—Palpi yellow or brownish yellow.

D—Front of male one-fourth as wide as the head; third antennal joint less than one and a half times as long as the second; no intraalar bristle in front of the suture—*obsoleta* Fall.

DD—Front of male one-sixth, of female less than a third as wide as the head; third antennal joint more than twice as long as second; with an intraalar bristle in front of suture—*hunteri* n. sp.

A Graphical Method for Constructing the Catenary.

BY WALTER K. PALMER.

INTRODUCTION.

An inspection of the various works on mathematics, mechanics, graphics and drafting will reveal the fact that, while ready drawing-board constructions are available for most of the curves encountered in engineering drafting, no method has been presented for constructing the catenary which is applicable to all the sets of conditions that may from physical considerations be imposed. Many discussions of the curve are offered; but, with no exception thus far noted, they either deal with one or two simple cases of construction, neglecting wholly the more general cases, or presume some kind of an approximation or involve a series of tedious computations which, in the end, yield only an approximate result; and in most instances these objections are all present. No purely graphical construction, such as is desirable from the standpoint of the draftsman, has been given, it is believed, even for the mere plotting of the curve when it is not required to conform to fixed conditions.

While this curve is, perhaps, not of such general importance or wide application in engineering drafting as some others for which ready constructions are available, it would still seem that a direct and exact drawing-board construction for it, such as the constructions for the parabola, hyperbola, etc., would be of interest and value to draftsmen generally.

An examination of the equation of the catenary would seem at first to show conclusively that the objections mentioned are entirely unavoidable. It would appear that no means can be had for determining the curve in conformity to given conditions, which does not involve approximations of some sort, since the parameter of the catenary is involved in a transcendental equation, impossible to solve by ordinary algebraic methods; and the form of this equa-

tion is not such as to suggest at once a graphical method for plotting even the simplest case of the curve.

But a closer study of the equation makes possible a method not only suitable for drawing the simple cases of the curve, but likewise for plotting a catenary to conform to any set of conditions which may have a physical realization, with exactness, and with no computing whatever.

To make clear the meaning of all features of this equation, and to lead logically to the demonstration of the rules which are to be presented for the various cases, the equation of the catenary will be deduced and some of its most notable properties considered with their graphical illustrations.

EQUATION OF THE CATENARY.

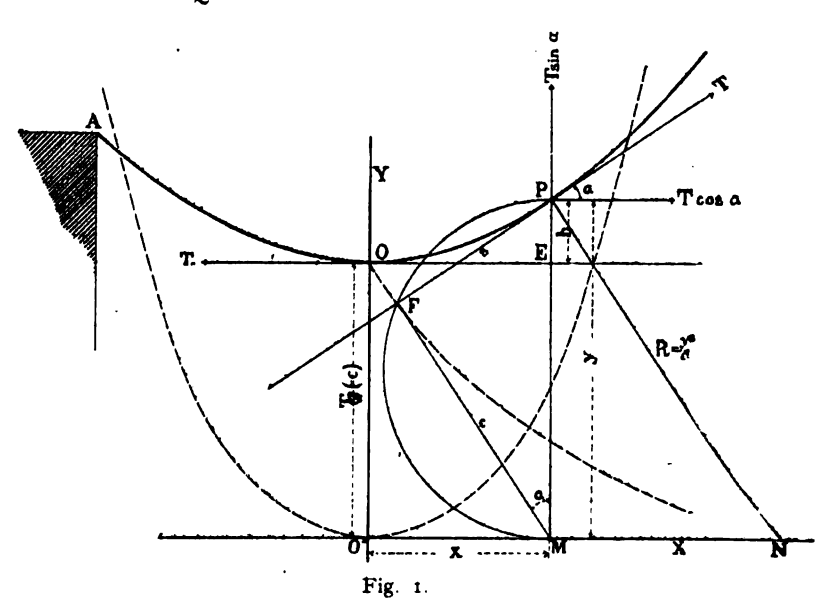


Fig. 1.

Fig. 1 shows the cord of uniform weight suspended from a support, A, falling to a lowest point, O, called the vertex, and rising to another support omitted from the figure.

Take for the origin of coördinates the lowest point, O. Now consider a portion of the cord, as it hangs in equilibrium, between the lowest point O and any point P, the coördinates of which, with reference to O, are x and y.

Let T be the tension in the cord at this point P, and T_0 the tension at the lowest point O.

Letting also

w=weight of cord, per unit of length,

W=total weight of cord from O to any point P, and

s=the length of the cord from O to P,

we have the following relations regarding the piece of cord as a body in equilibrium:

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} T_0 = T\cos\alpha \\ W = T\sin\alpha \\ W = ws. \end{array}\right\} \quad (1)$$

From which, by dividing,

$$\frac{T\sin\alpha}{T\cos\alpha} = \tan\alpha = \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{W}{T_0} = \frac{ws}{T_0}. \quad (2)$$

$$\therefore \quad \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{w}{T_0}\int_0^x\left[\left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2 + 1\right]^{\frac{1}{2}}dx.$$

Differentiating, we have

$$\frac{d\left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)}{\left[\left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2 + 1\right]^{\frac{1}{2}}} = \frac{w}{T_0}dx,$$

which integrates to

$$\frac{w}{T_0}x = \log\left\{\left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right) + \sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2}\right\} + C.$$

But, since when $x=0$, $\frac{dy}{dx}=0$, we have $C=0$, and

$$\therefore \quad \frac{dy}{dx} + \sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2} = e^{\frac{w}{T_0}x}.$$

Transposing $\left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)$ and squaring,

$$1 = e^{\frac{2wx}{T_0}} - 2e^{\frac{wx}{T_0}}\left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right).$$

From which

$$\left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right) = \frac{e^{\frac{2wx}{T_0}} - 1}{2e^{\frac{wx}{T_0}}} = \frac{1}{2}\left(e^{\frac{w}{T_0}x} - e^{-\frac{w}{T_0}x}\right). \quad (3)$$

Then, integrating again, we have

$$y = \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{T_0}{w}\right)\left(e^{\frac{w}{T_0}x} + e^{-\frac{w}{T_0}x}\right) - \left(\frac{T_0}{w}\right). \quad (4)$$

which is the general equation of the Catenary, referred to O as the origin.

By shifting the origin to O″, a distance $\frac{T_0}{w}$ below O, the constant of integration disappears, and we have the form

$$y = \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{T_0}{w}\left(e^{\frac{w}{T_0}x} + e^{-\frac{w}{T_0}x}\right). \tag{5}$$

For convenience, represent $\frac{T_0}{w}$ in the equation by c. Then

$$y = \frac{c}{2}\left(e^{\frac{x}{c}} + e^{-\frac{x}{c}}\right), \tag{6}$$

which is the usual form for the equation.

ANALYTICAL PROPERTIES OF THE CURVE.

Combining equations (2) and (3) we have

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{w}{T_0} \cdot s = \frac{1}{2}\left(e^{\frac{w}{T_0}x} - e^{-\frac{w}{T_0}x}\right).$$

$$\therefore \quad s = \frac{1}{2} \frac{T_0}{w}\left(e^{\frac{w}{T_0}x} - e^{-\frac{w}{T_0}x}\right),$$

or

$$s = \frac{c}{2}\left(e^{\frac{x}{c}} - e^{-\frac{x}{c}}\right). \tag{7}$$

Squaring (6) and (7) and subtracting,

$$y^2 = s^2 + c^2; \tag{8}$$

and equation (2) is

$$\tan \alpha = \frac{s}{c}. \tag{9}$$

According to (8) and (9), then, we may draw a tangent at any point on the curve, or find at once, graphically, the angle α, Fig. 1, and also the length of the curve from O to the point, when we have the parameter c known. It is only necessary to draw a semi-circle upon y at the point, and strike an arc with c as a radius from M, Fig. 1, thus forming a right triangle with y, s and c for sides, and determining the tangent at P. Then from the figure, if

$$\left.\begin{aligned}\tan a &= \frac{s}{c}\\ \sin a &= \frac{s}{y}\\ \cos a &= \frac{c}{y}\end{aligned}\right\} \quad (10)$$

From (1) with (10) we have

$$T_0 = T \cos a = \frac{Tc}{y}.$$

And $c = \frac{T_0}{w}$ when the origin was changed,

$$\left.\begin{aligned}\therefore \quad T &= wy\\ T_0 &= wc.\end{aligned}\right\} \quad (11)$$

This means that the tension at any point in the cord is equal the ordinate of that point, multiplied by the weight per unit length of the cord. From which we see that if a material cord be hung over two smooth pins, as represented in Fig. 2, the position for equilibrium for the cord is such that its extremities are upon the same horizontal line, and that this line is the directrix of the particular catenary formed

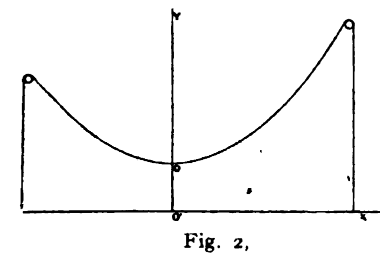


Fig. 2,

From equation (8) and Fig. 1,

$$y^2 = (h + c)^2 = s^2 + c^2.$$

$$\therefore \quad h^2 + 2hc = s^2.$$

$$\therefore \quad c = \frac{s^2 - h^2}{2h}.$$

$$\therefore \quad T_0 = w\left(\frac{s^2 - h^2}{2h}\right). \quad (12)$$

Radius of Curvature.

$$\rho = \frac{\left\{1 + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2\right\}^{\frac{3}{2}}}{\frac{d^2y}{dx}}.$$

From (2) $$\left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right) = \frac{s}{c};$$

and, differentiating, bearing in mind equations (7) and (6)

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx} = \frac{y}{c^2}. \qquad (13)$$

Substituting in the above expression

$$\rho = \frac{\left(\frac{s^2+c^2}{c^2}\right)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{\frac{y}{c^2}} = \left(\frac{y}{c}\right)^3 \times \frac{c^2}{y} = \frac{y^2}{c}. \qquad (14)$$

This is represented by the length of the normal at point P, between the point and the directrix, that is by $\overline{PN}$, Fig. 1.

For $PN \cos \alpha = y = PN \cdot \frac{c}{y}$ by the figure and (10).

$$\therefore \quad PN = \frac{y^2}{c} = \rho.$$

Hence the radius of curvature for any point is readily obtained.

Area Under the Curve.

$$A = \int y dx = \int \frac{c}{2}\left(e^{\frac{x}{c}} + e^{-\frac{x}{c}}\right) dx$$

$$= \frac{c^2}{2}\left(e^{\frac{x}{c}} - e^{-\frac{x}{c}}\right) + C$$

$$= cs + (C = o).$$

$$\therefore \quad A = cs. \qquad (15)$$

That is, in Fig. 1, the area O″OPM = 2 × the triangle MFP, or = a rectangle with c and s for sides.

And the area OPE = cs—cx = c(s—x).

Other Properties.

Other properties that may readily be demonstrated directly from the foregoing are:

I. The Involute of the Catenary is the tractrix.

Point F, Fig. 1, is always on the involute of the catenary from the vertex. For FP is constantly equal s, the length of curve OP. FM is constantly tangent to this involute and is of constant length equal c, which is O″O of the figure. The curve, which is the locus of F, is hence the equi-tangential curve, the tractrix.

II. A parabola, with vertex at O″, Fig. 1, and focus at O, when rolled on O″X will generate a catenary, the focus O tracing the curve.

Proof:

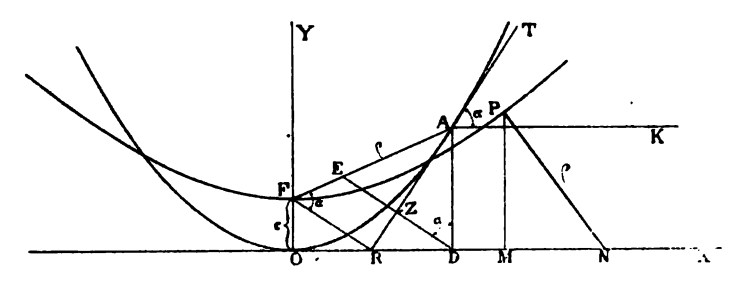


Fig. 3.

Let OA, Fig. 3, be a parabola with focus at F. If the focus of the parabola traces the catenary FP as the parabola rolls on its tangent ON, at O, it must be that when F is at any point P on the catenary, arc OA of the parabola must equal ON, FA must equal the radius of curvature of the catenary at P, PN; and FR, the perpendicular from F upon the tangent to the parabola at A must equal PM, or y of the catenary.

Call the coördinates of A on the parabola (x′,y′) and those of the point P on the catenary (x,y). Call the radius of curvature of the catenary ρ, and the angle the tangent makes at A, α.

Now, from the properties of the parabola, RA bisects ∠ FAD, AE=AD, EF=c, R is always on ON, and ∠ RFA= ∠ KAT=α.

Then from the figure $$\rho=y'+c \qquad (16)$$

$$\tan\alpha=\frac{dy'}{dx'}=\frac{\sqrt{\rho^2-y^2}}{y}$$

and

$\frac{dy'}{dx'}$ for the parabola $x^2=4cy$ is $\sqrt{\frac{y'}{c}}$.

$$\therefore \quad \frac{y'}{c}=\frac{\rho^2-y^2}{y^2}. \qquad (17)$$

Eliminating y′ with (16) and (17)

$$\frac{\rho-c}{c}=\frac{\rho^2-y^2}{y^2},$$

which gives

$$\rho=\frac{y^2}{c}.$$

Equation (14) for the catenary gives the radius of curvature ρ equal $\frac{y^2}{c}$. Therefore the curve traced by the focus of the parabola is the catenary.

III. The center of gravity of the catenary is lower than that of any other curve which can be formed from the same length of line between the two fixed points in space. If this were not so the cord would of its own weight fall in to the form having a lower center of gravity.

The center of gravity for any catenary may be located at once, very easily, thus; Fig. 1.

Bisect ON. From this middle point of ON draw a parallel to PN. When this line cuts OY is the center of gravity,

For by the usual method of mechanics the height of the center of gravity of the catenary above the X axis is

$$\bar{y}=\frac{1}{2}\left(y_1+\frac{cx_1}{s_1}\right),$$

and by similar triangles it can easily be shown that NP produced, Fig. 1, cuts OY produced in a point which is at a vertical distance above y_1, or point P, equal to $\frac{cx_1}{s_1}$.

PLOTTING THE CURVE.

CATENARY THE SUM OF TWO EXPONENTIAL CURVES.

Analyzing the equation of the catenary

$$y=\frac{c}{2}\left(e^{\frac{x}{c}}+e^{-\frac{x}{c}}\right),$$

it will be noticed that the ordinate y may be considered as the sum of two portions y' and y'', such that

$$y'=\frac{c}{2}e^{\frac{x}{c}}$$

$$y''=\frac{c}{2}e^{-\frac{x}{c}}. \qquad (18)$$

Now $y'=\frac{c}{2}e^{\frac{x}{c}}$ is recognizable at once as the well known exponential or logarithmic curve. And y'' is plainly the ordinate of the same curve, at the same x distance from the vertical axis on the opposite side of the origin.

So if an exponential curve of the form $y=\frac{c}{2}e^{\frac{x}{c}}$ were obtainable, a catenary could be produced from it as in Fig. 4.

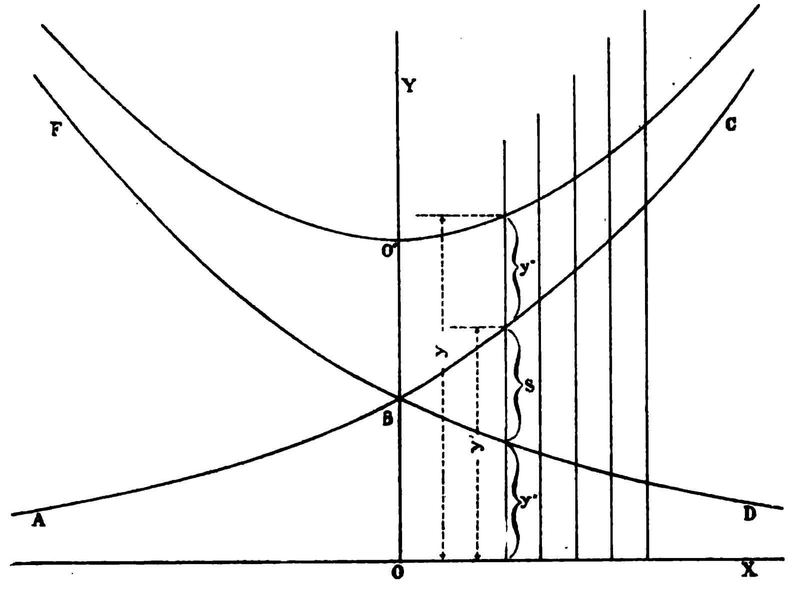


Fig. 4.

It is merely necessary to reverse the curve ABC on the drawing, which can be done readily by transferring points to symmetrical positions by use of the dividers, when the result is the symmetrical curve DBF, whose equation is

$$y=\frac{c}{2}e^{-\frac{x}{c}}.$$

Then, with these two curves plotted in position as shown, a catenary can be quickly obtained by adding ordinates. To do this draw a series of vertical lines conveniently spaced, and with the dividers set off the ordinate of the curve DPF, upward from the curve ABC, on each vertical. Join the points thus plotted with a smooth curve and the result is the catenary.

It will be noticed, also, that the value of s, the length of the catenary, is at once shown at every point along the curve by this figure. For, by equation (7),

$$s=\frac{c}{2}\left(e^{\frac{x}{c}}-e^{-\frac{x}{c}}\right).$$

That is, s is the difference of ordinates at each point, as shown in Fig. 4. These considerations show then that if a satisfactory drawing-board construction can be found for this exponential curve a means is already at hand for plotting the catenary, at least for the simple case of a given parameter.

To discover the desired kind of construction for this exponential curve—one which will admit of the curve being drawn with as much facility as the parabola or ellipse—necessitates leaving the question of the catenary itself for a time to investigate the properties of this exponential curve.

CONSTRUCTION FOR THE EXPONENTIAL CURVE.

The perfectly general form of this curve is

$$y = a\,e^{mx} \qquad (19)$$

Its most notable property is that its sub-tangent is constant.

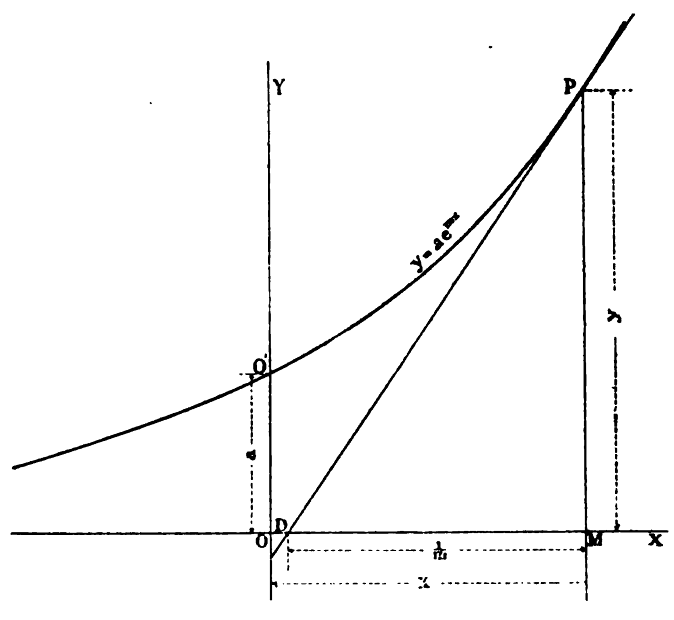


Fig. 5.

That is, DM, Fig. 5, is the same for a given curve wherever the point P may be chosen. For

$$\frac{PM}{DM} = \frac{y}{DM} = \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right) = a\,m\,e^{mx} = my.$$

$$\therefore \quad DM=\frac{1}{m}. \qquad (20)$$

$OO'=a$, for when $x=o$, $y=a$. If instead of the perfectly general form of the equation we have the form

$$y=\frac{c}{2}e^{\frac{x}{c}},$$

which we should have when employing this curve in a construction for the common catenary, then

$$OO'=\frac{c}{2}$$

and the constant sub-tangent $DM=c$.

It would seem now that this fact of a constant sub-tangent should afford the means for the kind of construction desired for this curve. And it is found that the curve may be drawn in a most satisfactory way by its use, as follows:

In Fig. 6 let OY and OX be the axis. Lay off OO′ equal to the constant a and make $OD=\frac{1}{m}$. Or if the form

$$y=\frac{c}{2}e^{\frac{x}{c}}$$

is to be drawn, make

$$OO'=\frac{c}{2},$$

and

$$OD=c.$$

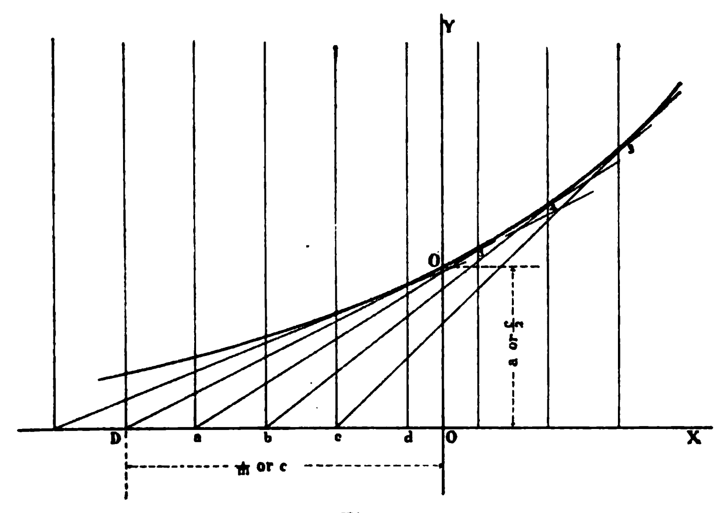


Fig. 6

Divide OD into an *odd* number of small equal divisions, say approximately $\frac{1''}{10}$. Then draw vertical lines through every other division point, as shown in the figure, Fig. 6, so that OY will come in the middle of a space between verticals. Draw a straight line through D and O′. Then draw through a and 1, b and 2, c and 3, etc. The resulting series of lines then envelopes the curve, which will be found determined with accuracy without the necessity of drawing a curved line, if the spaces between verticals be made small. The figure will make clear that the curve touching each of these straight lines goes through point O′ and that the condition of a constant sub-tangent equal $\frac{1}{m}$, or c, obtains throughout, and hence that the curve is correctly and satisfactorily drawn.

Having now a simple construction for this exponential curve, and understanding the derivation of the catenary from it, we may easily construct a catenary of any desired parameter; and are, therefore, ready to pass to the consideration of the question of adapting this method to more general cases of the catenary conforming to given sets of conditions as to points, length of cord, etc.

CONSTRUCTIONS FOR THE CATENARY CONFORMING TO GIVEN CONDITIONS.

Aside from the case already noticed of plotting a catenary with a given or assumed parameter, we have from purely physical considerations the following important cases:

CASE I.—SUPPORTS THE SAME HEIGHT GIVEN.

(a) Given a certain length of cord greater than the distance between supports, required the level to which the curve will fall and a plotting of the catenary formed.

(b) Given the level to which the curve is to fall, required the length of cord and a plotting of the catenary.

CASE II.—SUPPORTS AT DIFFERENT LEVELS.

(a) Same as under I.

(b) Same as under I.

Remarks: It should be noticed that the weight per unit length of the cord does not affect the form of the curve, but does determine the tension in the cord.

The tension of the cord on the abutment or at any point, total weight of cord, etc., can, of course, all be readily determined graphically for each of the cases above mentioned, when once the curve is plotted, by means of the properties already considered, so these features will not be treated again in the discussion of these cases.

Discussion of the Cases.

Preliminary to undertaking the treatment of these four cases, prepare as permanent diagrams which will serve for the solution of all problems that may be met so long as the same system of units is used, the following auxiliary drawings:

(1) On one sheet an accurate plotting of a catenary with the constant equal one, that is with equation

$$y = \frac{1}{2}\left(e^{x} + e^{-x}\right).$$

This may be called the "simple catenary."

(2) On another sheet plot from the same construction work which gave the simple catenary a curve of values of s of this curve. That is obtain a plotting of

$$s = \frac{1}{2}\left(e^{x} - e^{-x}\right)$$

by taking the difference of ordinates, Fig. 4, instead of the sum, as already explained.

The one-half of each of these curves is sufficient. By means of these two plottings any problem in connection with the construction of a catenary may now be treated.

Constructions for the Four Cases.

CASE I.—SUPPORTS OF THE SAME HEIGHT.

(*a*) *Having given a length of cord and fixed abutments to plot the curve of the cord.*

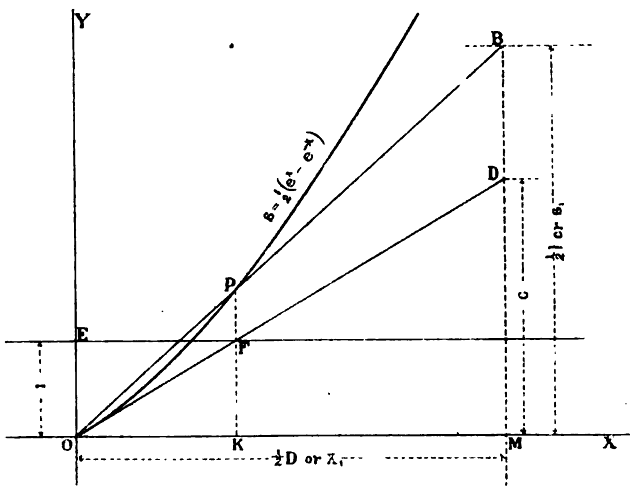


Fig. 7.

For this take the "s-curve" plotting, already prepared, as shown in Fig. 7.

Lay off one-half the distance D between the given abutments along OX and $\frac{1}{2}$l, the length of cord given, upward from M to B.

$$\frac{1}{2}D = x_1$$

$$\frac{1}{2}l = s_1.$$

Join B to O and from P, where BO cuts the s-curve drop a perpendicular PK upon OX.

Draw EF parallel to OM at unit's distance above it. Draw OF to D, when DM is the value of c, the parameter to be used in plotting the required catenary. With this value for c the curve will have the given length between the fixed abutments at given distance, D, apart.

It only remains to lay off c downward from O on another drawing and proceed to construct the catenary by the method already explained.

Proof: The required catenary will, we know from previous considerations, have an equation for s

$$s = \frac{c}{2}\left(e^{\frac{x}{c}} - e^{-\frac{x}{c}}\right).$$

It will be of such proportions that if plotted on Fig. 7 OM and MB would be coördinates of it, when O is the origin. Manifestly we can not substitute

$$OM = x_1 \text{ and } MB = s_1,$$

for x and s, respectively, and solve for c, as we should do in the case of an equation of ordinary kind, owing to form of this equation, but the constant c must be determined in order to plot the catenary. And it may now be readily seen that the graphical steps just indicated do give c correctly.

By the equation of the simple s-curve

$$PK = \frac{1}{2}\left(e^{\overline{OK}} - e^{-\overline{OK}}\right).$$

Now $\quad PK \times$ some constant $c = BM$

and $\quad OK \times$ the same constant $c = OM$

by similar triangles.

Substituting in the above equation we have

$$\overline{BM}=\frac{c}{2}\left(e^{\frac{\overline{OM}}{c}}-e^{\frac{OM}{c}}\right).$$

That is

$$s_1=\frac{c}{2}\left(e^{\frac{x_1}{c}}-e^{-\frac{x_1}{c}}\right).$$

which is just the equation of our s-curve for the required catenary when passing through the given point. And c is simply the ratio of BM to PK or OM to OK, which ratio is easily obtainable by the use of the unit's line as explained. Since FK is one unit DM is the ratio OM : OK.

With the curve plotted, the level to which it drops is easily measured at once, and all other facts in regard to it readily derived.

(*b*) *Having given fixed abutments and the level to which the curve is to drop, to find the length of cord required and to plot the catenary.*

Here instead of the s-curve use the drawing of the "simple catenary." Proceed just as in the first case, and find c, when the curve can be plotted at once and s found, and all the other features as in Fig. 1.

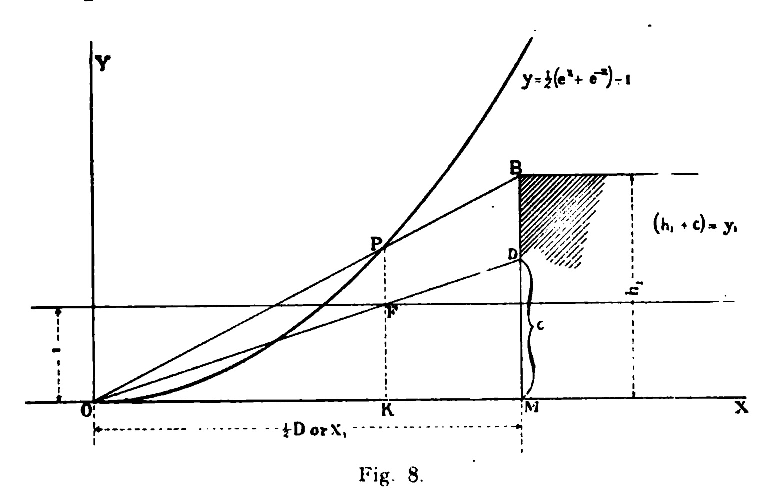


Fig. 8.

Fig 8 shows fully the steps taken on the sheet of the simple catenary. These are precisely the same as in the case first considered.

Proof: For here we know that the required catenary, since it must go through the point of support B, will have an equation such that

$$h_1=\frac{c}{2}\left(e^{\frac{x_1}{c}}+e^{-\frac{x_1}{c}}\right)-c.$$

And from the simple catenary we have

$$PK=\frac{1}{2}\left(e^{\overline{OK}}+e^{-\overline{OK}}\right)-1.$$

But, as before

$$PK=\frac{BM}{c}$$

$$OK=\frac{OM}{c}.$$

Then substituting

$$\frac{BM}{c}=\frac{1}{2}\left(e^{\frac{OM}{c}}+e^{-\frac{OK}{c}}\right)-1.$$

$$\therefore\ h_1=\frac{c}{2}\left(e^{\frac{x_1}{c}}+e^{-\frac{x_1}{c}}\right)-c,$$

where c is the ratio OM : OK, which is easily found.

CASE II.—SUPPORTS AT UNEQUAL HEIGHTS.

(*a*) *Given the fixed abutments and l, the length of the cord, to find the level to which the curve will fall and to plot the catenary.*

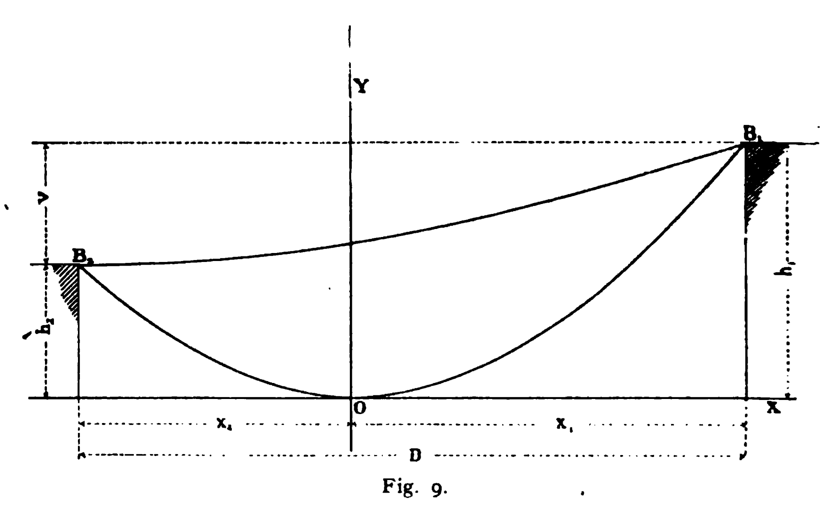


Fig. 9.

Fig. 9 shows the abutments as assumed at a distance apart D, and a difference of level v.

For this case we may discover the relation

$$\sqrt{l^2-v^2}=c\left(e^{\frac{D}{2c}}-e^{-\frac{D}{2c}}\right), \qquad (21)$$

in which l, v and D are given quantities, and c is the parameter of the desired catenary. Inspecting this equation we see that it is of just the form of the s-curve, so that c may be obtained from this equation by the same steps as taken in Case I (a), merely noticing that the result derived by these steps will here be twice c, and hence must be divided for the value of c to use in plotting the desired catenary. Simply construct a right triangle to scale, with l for hypotenuse and v for one side. The other side will at once be $\sqrt{l^2-v^2}$, and should be used precisely as s_1 was in Case I (a). Then D is to be used as x_1 was, when the resulting value will be 2c.

Proof of Equation: Referring to Fig. 9

$$x_1+x_2=D.$$

Let $$x_1-x_2=k \text{ (a constant)}$$

$$\therefore \quad x_1=\frac{D+k}{2}$$

$$x_2=\frac{D-k}{2},$$

$$l=s_1+s_2=\frac{c}{2}\left(e^{\frac{x_1}{c}}-e^{-\frac{x_1}{c}}+e^{\frac{x_2}{c}}-e^{-\frac{x_2}{c}}\right),$$

$$v=h_1-h_2=\frac{c}{2}\left(e^{\frac{x_1}{c}}+e^{-\frac{x_1}{c}}-e^{\frac{x_2}{c}}-e^{-\frac{x_2}{c}}\right).$$

Now substitute above values of x_1 and x_2 and obtain

$$l=\frac{c}{2}\left(e^{\frac{D}{2c}}e^{\frac{k}{2c}}-e^{-\frac{D}{2c}}e^{-\frac{k}{2c}}+e^{\frac{D}{2c}}e^{-\frac{k}{2c}}-e^{-\frac{D}{2c}}e^{\frac{k}{2c}}\right),$$

$$v=\frac{c}{2}\left(e^{\frac{D}{2c}}e^{\frac{k}{2c}}+e^{-\frac{D}{2c}}e^{-\frac{k}{2c}}-e^{\frac{D}{2c}}e^{-\frac{k}{2c}}-e^{-\frac{D}{2c}}e^{\frac{k}{2c}}\right).$$

From which

$$l=\frac{c}{2}\left(e^{\frac{D}{2c}}-e^{-\frac{D}{2c}}\right)\left(e^{\frac{k}{2c}}+e^{-\frac{k}{2c}}\right),$$

$$v=\frac{c}{2}\left(e^{\frac{D}{2c}}-e^{-\frac{D}{2c}}\right)\left(e^{\frac{k}{2c}}-e^{-\frac{k}{2c}}\right).$$

Now, squaring, subtracting and extracting the square root

$$\sqrt{l^2-v^2}=c\left(e^{\frac{D}{2c}}-e^{-\frac{D}{2c}}\right).$$

Case (a) Continued.

It is evident that another series of catenarys can be drawn through the two abutments B_1 and B_2 of Fig. 9 in a different way from those of the class considered. We may have a series of curves of varying parameter through B_1 and B_2, the axis of which are to the left of B_2, and which consequently do not have their lowest points, or vertices, within the limits of the figure.

If analyzed independently it will be found that they may be treated in the same way as those with axis between B_2 and B_1, as would be supposed. They are indeed no different in any way from the other class. Simply, as the cord is made shorter the catenary becomes flatter, removing the axis nearer to the lower abutment, until when a certain length is reached the axis is at the lower abutment. Then with the shortening of the cord the axis moves farther beyond the lower abutment, until finally when the length is too short to reach from one abutment to the other, that is less than the straight line B_2B_1, the construction fails altogether, as it should.

An inspection of Figs. 7 and 9 will show this final limit very satisfactorily. Looking at Fig. 7 it is plain that the line OB will become tangent to the s-curve at some limit as $\angle$ XOB decreases. The limit for XOB, below which the construction fails, can be seen at once by differentiating the s-curve and making x in $\left(\frac{ds}{dx}\right)$ equal zero. This shows that at x=o, that is at point O, the angle of the tangent to the curve is 45°. Now notice that this fixes the limit for the length of the cord just where it would be found from a consideration of the physical conditions of the problem, as shown in Fig. 9.

If $\angle$ XOB is 45° at the limit, then there

$$BM = OM.$$

$\therefore$ for this case,

$$\sqrt{l^2 - v^2} = D;$$

or

$$l = \sqrt{D^2 + v^2}.$$

$\sqrt{D^2+v^2}$ is the length of a straight line from B_2 to B_1, Fig. 9, evidently the extreme minimum limit for the length of cord.

The length of the cord which brings the axis just at the line of the lower abutment can be seen thus:

Substitute in equation of the catenary the values from Fig. 9 and

$$v = \frac{c}{2}\left(e^{\frac{D}{c}} + e^{-\frac{D}{c}}\right) - c. \qquad (22)$$

$$=\frac{c}{2}\left(e^{\frac{D}{2c}}-e^{-\frac{D}{2c}}\right)^2$$

This, with equation (21), gives

$$\frac{l^2-v^2}{c^2}=\frac{2}{c}v.$$

For which

$$l=\sqrt{v(v+2c)}. \qquad (23)$$

(*b*) *The level to which the curve shall fall being given, required the length of cord which will just reach that level, and also the plotting of the curve.*

For this case it appears to be wholly impossible to derive an equation similar to (21) which will serve as a method, as in Case II (a).

But the problem may be solved in a manner entirely satisfactory from the standpoint of the draftsman by resorting to what has not thus far been found necessary—the drawing of a few tentative lines on the "simple catenary" diagram.

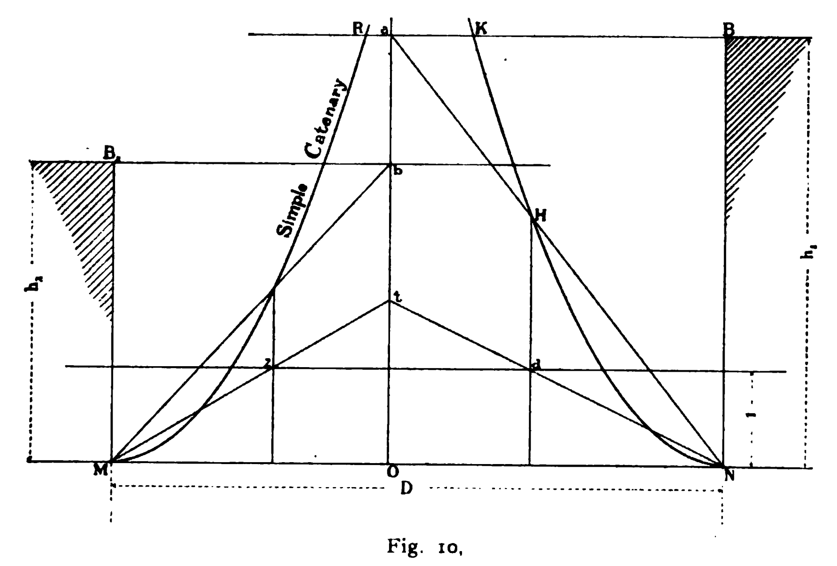


Fig. 10,

Fig. 10, B_1 and B_2 are the given abutments and MN the horizontal line to which the curve is to be tangent.

Lay out this figure on the plotting of the simple catenary already prepared, MFR being the curve. Then transfer a sufficient number of points across by means of horizontal lines and the dividers,

to obtain NHK, the other half of the curve, only plotting so much as will evidently be needed. This can be done very readily.

Now from a study of Fig. 8, and the steps there taken it can be plainly seen that the position for the Y-axis, in the case represented in Fig. 10, must be such as to make possible the diagram of straight lines shown here in this figure.

The portion of the figure on the one side of OY is merely the construction of Fig. 8, applied to the conditions of this half of the curve, and the portion on the other side is the same construction applied to the conditions of that half.

The values determined for c from the two portions of the diagram, must, of course, be the same here, so Mz and Nd must meet OY in the common point t. That is, the vertical axis OY of the required catenary must be so located that lines from a and b, points determined by it, to N and M respectively will give intersecting points, H and F, properly situated, so that the points d and z, dependent upon them, will give Nd and Mz, intersecting at the point t on the axis. Then Ot is the constant c, and may be laid off at once downward from O on OY and the required curve plotted.

It is plain that all of the quantities of this diagram are so involved in each other that the position of OY fulfilling the necessary conditions cannot be located at once definitely. But when the two halves of the simple catenary have been drawn at their proper distance, D, apart, it is possible to see within a very small limit of error just where OY should be for the fulfillment of these conditions. Estimate its position closely thus and draw the diagram, when it will be found that Mz and Nd do not quite meet in the same point on OY. A slight change of the position, now, will bring the two intersections on OY much nearer to coincidence and a very few such trials will locate OY to a degree of accuracy equal to that which could be attained by any method.

Conclusion.

All of the cases which would actually be encountered in the plotting of the curve of a material cord of uniform weight have now been considered and solved entirely by graphical steps. The rules outlined under each case, having been demonstrated, may hereafter be taken as satisfactorily established and a catenary plotted to conform to any set of conditions which may be physically possible, with no computing whatever.

Preliminary Notice on the Correlation of the Meek and Marcou Section at Nebraska City, Nebraska, with the Kansas Coal Measures.*

Contribution from the Paleontological Laboratory, No. 38.

BY J. W. BEEDE.

The appearance of Meek and Hayden's Final Report of the U. S. Geological Survey of Nebraska practically settled the prolonged Meek-Marcou controversy concerning the age of the rocks at Nebraska City, and showed them to be of the typical Upper Coal Measures of the west. Professor Prosser, after an extended study of the Upper Coal Measures and Permian in Kansas, visited Nebraska and studied the relation of the Upper Coal Measures there to those of Kansas, taking the Cottonwood limestone above as a basis. He locates the Cottonwood limestone four miles west of Auburn, Nebraska, about 365 feet above the Missouri river, and refers the Nebraska City rocks, provisionally, to the lower half of the Wabaunsee formation; stating that these rocks have great resemblance to the rocks of that formation as exposed above Topeka, Kansas, on the Kansas river.†

During a short visit at Nebraska City the writer secured nearly all of Meek's species from that locality and Otoe (now Minersville) and the strata of the place were examined as carefully as time would permit. As Professor Prosser had stated, the rocks bore a remarkable resemblance to those near Topeka. Their lithological character, their succession, their fossils and the grouping and preservation of the fossils, bear a striking resemblance to the rocks above and below the Topeka (Osage) coal. At the top of the section there is a calcareous sandstone underlaid by bluish or drab shales,

*For a complete discussion of the subject see the forthcoming Transactions, (vol. 16,) of the Kansas Academy of Science.
†Jour. Geol. Jan.-March, 1897, p. 1, et sec.

which rest upon an argillaceous limestone one to two feet in thickness, which overlies a stratum of very poor coal, or highly carbonaceous shales, beneath which are argillaceous and arenaceous shales and sandstones. The next succeeding strata are covered by the railroad. About thirteen feet above the river (low water mark) there are two thin strata of limestone exposed, beneath which are green and red shales for about four feet.

At Otoe (now Minersville) there are over a hundred feet of variously colored shales and sandstones exposed, which Meek thought to be immediately above the Nebraska City rocks. I was unable to substantiate this by actual observation, but as far as I was able to judge, by looking from the car window and the appearance of the Minersville section, I am inclined to think him correct. He also mentions a stratum of highly carbonaceous shales at one place enclosing a six inch seam of coal in this section. The section has now, I think, practically the same appearance that it had when Meek studied it.

During the past summer the Burlingame limestone was traced from near Topeka to the Nebraska line. Its eastern extension passes northeast from Martin's Hill to near Meriden, where it turns north for about ten miles to the latitude of Valley Falls. East of here it appears in the top of the eminence, on which stands the town of Winchester. From here it trends north nearly to the Nebraska line, but bends westward before crossing the line on account of the valley of the Great Nemaha. It appears, if I have been correct in following it (the disappearance of the escarpments and the great thickness of the drift after entering Brown county, Kansas, and the scarcity of exposures makes it difficult to trace a formation with much certainty) near the base of the bluff on the north side of the Great Nemaha north of the bridge, which is a trifle east of the west line of Irving township in Kansas. Several feet below this, coal is mined at this place.

This is the same coal, with the sandstone below, observed by Hayden on the bluffs of the Missouri, at the mouth of the Great Nemaha, a little east of here. Meek was of the opinion, though not certain, that this sandstone was the same as the sandstone seen at Peru and Brownville, which he places above the Nebraska City section. If this be true it throws the section at Nebraska City in the same general horizon with the Topeka-Osage coal, if it be not identical with it, and the limestone at the base of the section would then represent the Topeka limestone or a part of it. While I have not been over the ground between Minersville and Rulo,

Neb., I am of the opinion that this conclusion is correct. It agrees in the lower part with Prosser's location of the Cottonwood limestone four miles west of Auburn, Neb., and also with his ideas as to the stratigraphic position of the Nebraska City beds.

Editorial Notes.

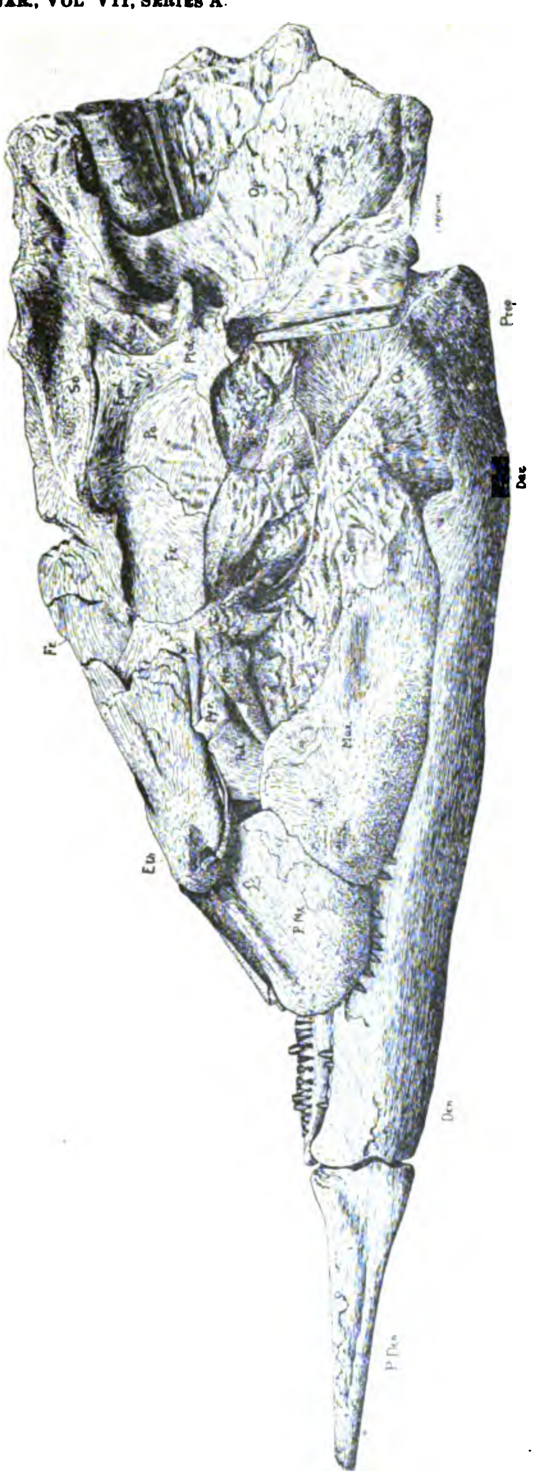
During the past summer the University Geological Expedition in western Kansas was very fortunate in securing a most extraordinarily good specimen of a ***Platecarpus***, which adds, unexpectedly, some new facts in their structure. The specimen was discovered by Mr. A, Stewart a mile and a half from Elkader on the Smoky Hill River, and includes the complete animal to the base of the tail. The skin was preserved entire, but, when exposed to the air, very much of it has flaked off. By the use of shellac, however, considerable patches have been preserved. The scales are similar to those of *Tylosaurus*, but are somewhat larger, and apparently lack a prominent carina. A remarkable peculiarity is the presence of a row of dermal processes along the nucha, from the skull at least as far back as the thoracic region. How much further they may go it is impossible to say, since the bones lie above the posterior end of them. They are about three millimeters in diameter and four or five, perhaps six, inches in length, forming a thick fringe or mane, and resembling very much the thongs along the legs of buckskin trowsers. The sternal apparatus is preserved entire and apparently, like most of the bones, nearly in position. There is a true, bony sternum, of crescentic shape, with a projecting, flattened, spatulate episternum. The paddle shows the outline of the membrane, which joins the body broadly, and has the fifth finger divaricated. There are five carpal bones. Photographic figures of the nuchal fringe, the sternal apparatus and the skin, together with some observations on the food-habits of the animal will be given in the next number of this Quarterly.

S. W. WILLISTON.

PLATE XIV.

Plate XIV. Skull of *Saurodon xiphirostris*, about three-fifths natural size.

PDen Predentary. *Den* Dentary. *DAr* Dermarticular of mandible. *Max* Maxilla. *PMax* Premaxilla. *Eth* Ethmoid. *Fr* Frontal. *PFr* Prefrontal. *Pa* Parietal. *SO* Supraoccipital. *EpOt* Epiotic process of parietal? *PtOt* Pterotic. *SpOt* Sphenotic. *HM* Hyomandibular. *Qu* Quadrate. *Na* Nasal? *PrOp* Praeoperculum. *Op* Operculum. *Pal* Palatine. *Sc* A portion of the sclerotic ring. *1, 2, 3.* Vertebræ.



S. Prentice, from nature.

PLATE XV.

Saurodon ferox.

Plate XV. Fig. 1. Upper and lower jaws, one-half natural size. *Max* Maxilla. *PMax* Premaxilla. *Den* Dentary. *PDen* Predentary. *DAr* Dermarticular.

Fig. 2. A small toothed element, the exact location of which is not known, natural size.

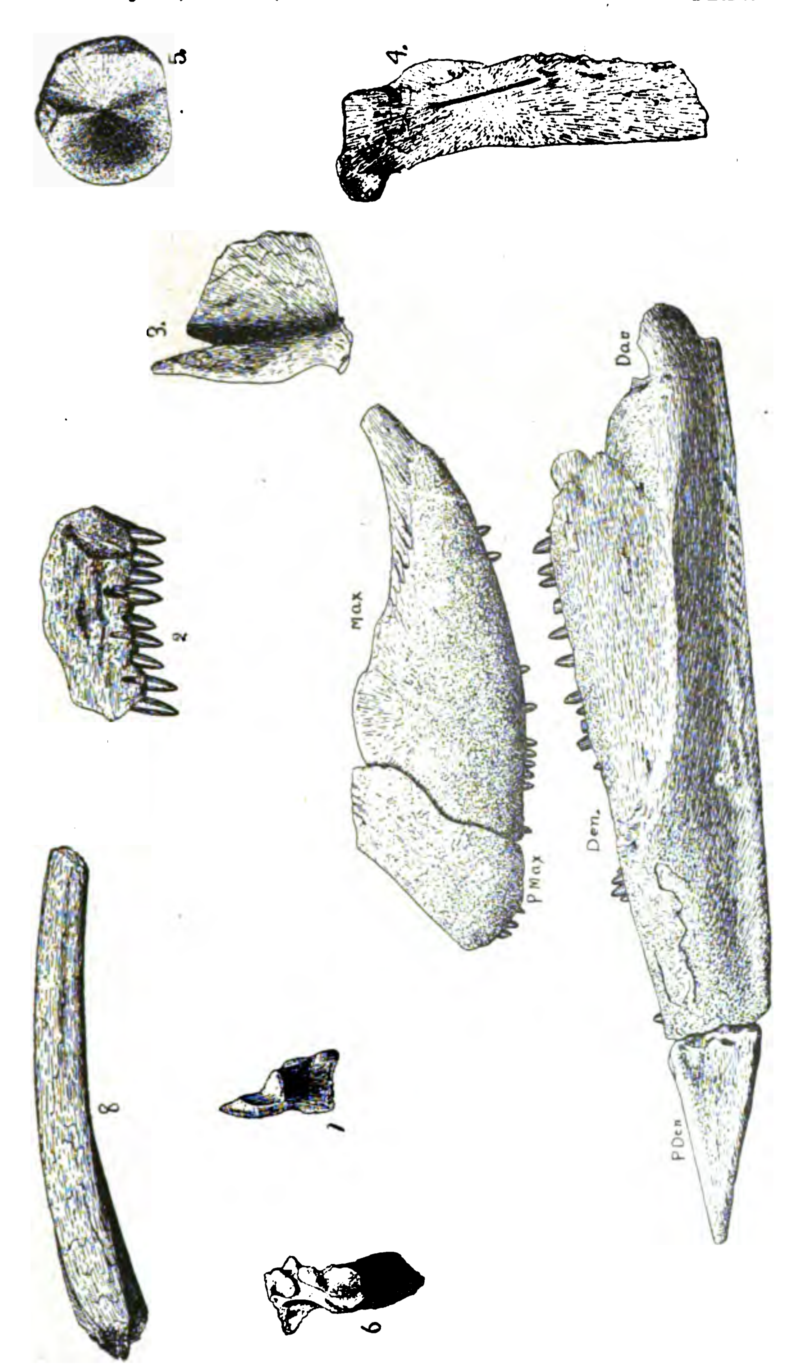
Fig. 3. Right quadrate, one-half natural size.

Fig. 4. Interoperculum?, one-half natural size.

Fig. 5. Centra of first anterior vertebræ from the front, natural size.

Fig. 6. Glenoid portion of scapula, natural size.

Figs. 7 and 8. Portions of fin rays.



S. Prentice, from nature.

PLATE XVI.

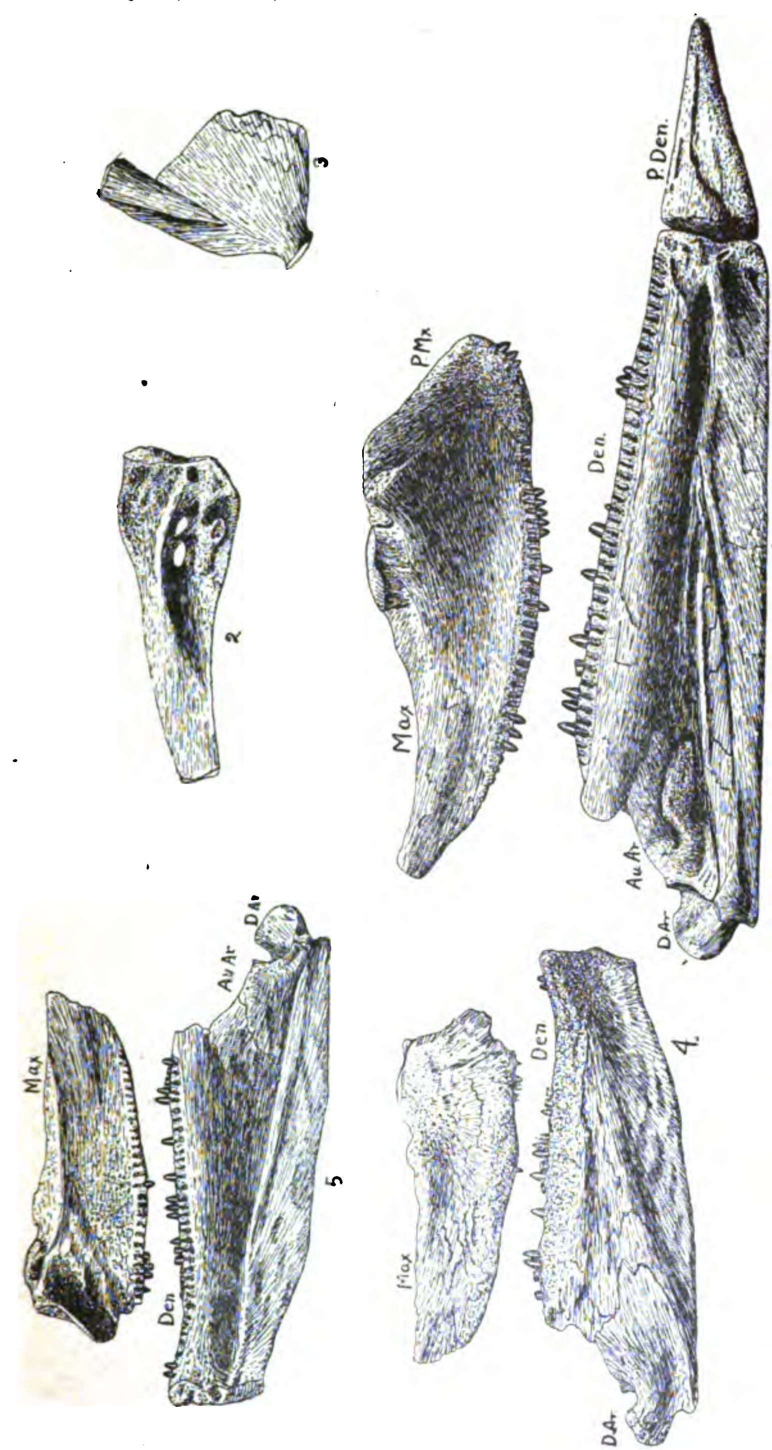
Saurodon farox.

Piatc XVI. Fig. 1. Upper and lower jaws, one-half natural size. *Max* Maxilla. *PMax* Premaxilla. *Den* Dentary. *PDen* Predentary. *DAr* Dermarticular. *AuAr* Auarticular.

Figs. 2 and 3. Right quadrate and hyomandibuiar, internal side, one-half natural size.

Saurodon Phlebotomus Cope.

Figs. 4 and 5. External and internal view of the right maxilla and mandible, one-half natural size.

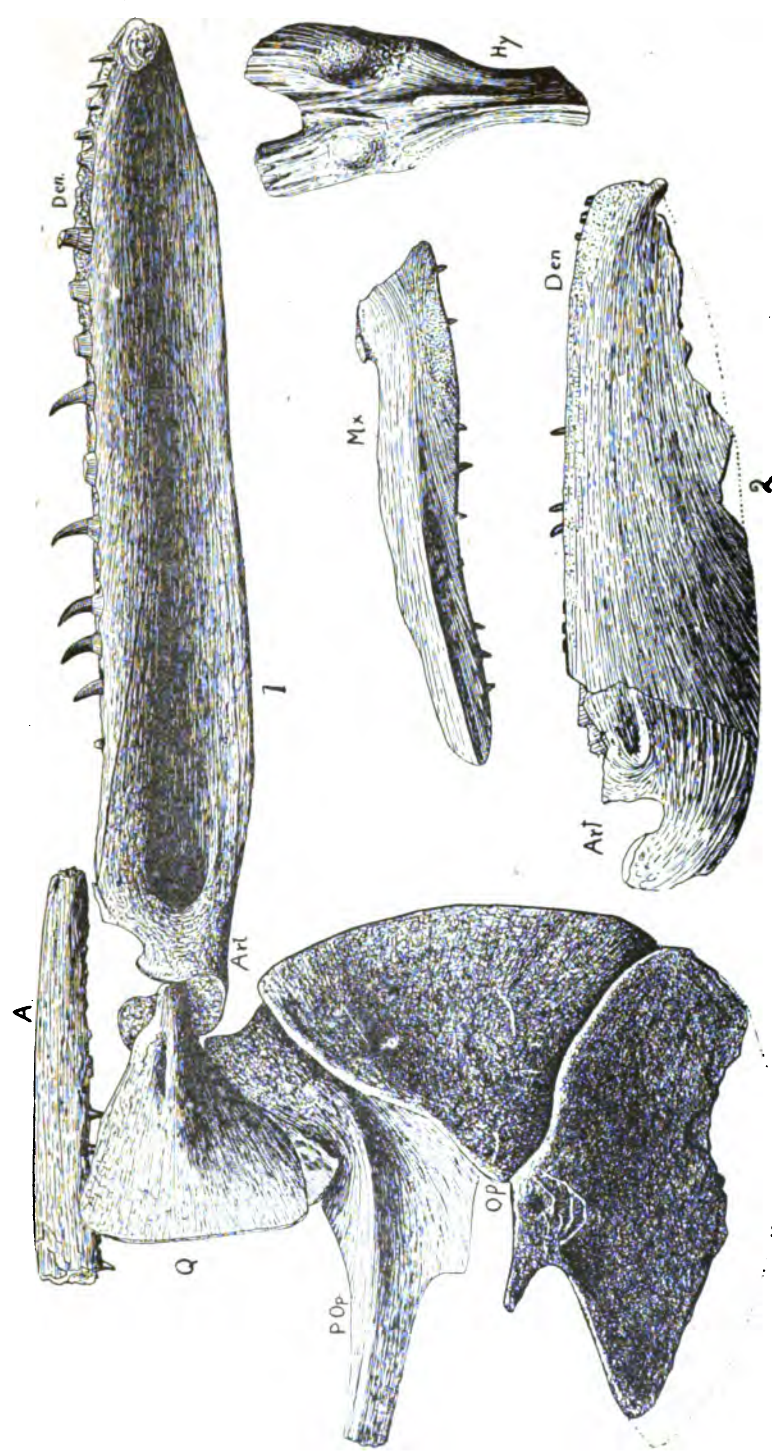


S. Prentice, from nature.

PLATE XVII.

Plate XVII. Fig. 1, *Pachyrhizodus leptognathus,* **sp. nov. natural size.** *Den* Dentary. *Art* Articular. *Q* Quadrate. *POp* Preoperculum. *Op* Operculum. *A* A small toothed element, the exact significance of which is not known.

Fig. 2. *Pachyrhizodus velox*, sp. nov. *Mx* Maxilla. *Den* Dentary, one-half natural size. *Hy* Supposed hyoid, natural size.



S. Prentice, from nature.

THE

KANSAS UNIVERSITY

QUARTERLY.

DEVOTED TO THE PUBLICATION OF THE RESULTS OF RESEARCH
BY MEMBERS OF THE UNIVERSITY OF KANSAS.

VOL. VII, SERIES B.

PUBLISHED BY THE UNIVERSITY,

LAWRENCE, KANSAS.

1899.

CONTENTS.

NOS. 1 AND 2.

VII.

K

Vol. VII. APRIL, 1898. Nos. 1 & 2.

THE KANSAS UNIVERSITY QUARTERLY.

SERIES B:—PHILOLOGY AND HISTORY.

CONTENTS.

PUBLISHED BY THE UNIVERSITY

LAWRENCE, KANSAS.

Price of this number, 50 cents.

Entered at the Post Office in Lawrence as Second-class Matter.

ADVERTISEMENT.

THE KANSAS UNIVERSITY QUARTERLY is maintained by the University of Kansas as a medium for the publication of the results of original research by members of the University. Papers will be published only on recommendation of the Committee of Publication. Contributed articles should be in the hands of the Committee at least one month prior to the date of publication. A limited number of author's *separata* will be furnished free to contributors.

Beginning with Vol. VI the QUARTERLY will appear in two Series: A, Science and Mathematics; B, Philology and History.

The QUARTERLY is issued regularly, as indicated by its title. Each number contains one hundred or more pages of reading matter, with necessary illustrations. The four numbers of each year constitute a volume. The price of subscription is two dollars a volume, single numbers varying in price with cost of publication Exchanges are solicited.

Communications should be addressed to

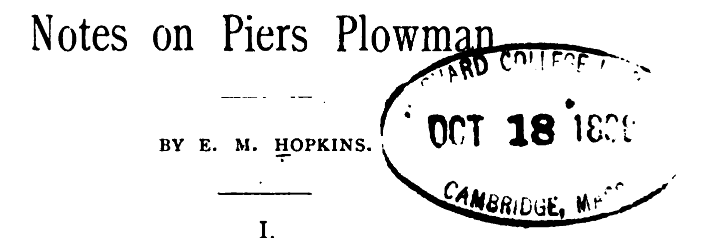
W. H. CARRUTH,
University of Kansas,
Lawrence.

This Journal is on file in the office of the *University Review*, New York City

JOURNAL PUBLISHING COMPANY
LAWRENCE, KANSAS

KANSAS UNIVERSITY QUARTERLY.

VOL. VII. APRIL, 1898. NOS. 1 AND 2.



Notes on Piers Plowman

BY E. M. HOPKINS.

I.

Who Wrote Piers Plowman?

Literature of the poem.

It may be said that when less is known of an author of standing, more is likely to be written about him. If this proposition be a true one, there must remain a great deal to be written in regard to the author of the "Vision of William concerning Piers the Plowman;" first, because his work is of such acknowledged importance, and second, because his identity remains, after all efforts to determine it, an unsolved if not an unsolvable problem. Even as to the poem itself, although it has been termed a mine of wealth, the literature upon it evidences that the mine is as yet largely unworked. It is not surprising to find that editions of the poem are limited in number, especially after the appearance of the monumental one of Professor W. W. Skeat; but it is surprising to find the total number of other works devoted exclusively to the poem to be so small, many of them merely students' monographs of a few pages each. It is not, therefore, attempting the impossible to undertake with ordinary library facilities a general survey of them with reference to matters of record or in dispute.*

List of references are here given.

*For convenient reference in this and succeeding papers, a list of editions, and a list, tentative, but believed to be nearly complete, of works monographs, and papers devoted exclusively to the poem. Works which mention the poem or treat of it incidentally, are of course very numerous, and no attempt is here made to tabulate them.

Manuscripts.

A. In such a list as this, the *manuscripts* of the poem should have a place. Of these there are forty-five now known to be in existence; ten of the A-text, thirteen of the B-text, fifteen of the C-text, four of a mixed A- and C-text, and three of a mixed B and C-text. One has been lost, and perhaps another; one, a B-text, was used by Crowley in preparing his edition of

Such a survey is not likely to be fruitful of valuable results because practically all information touching poem and author must come from the work itself rather than from any outside source.

Disputed points. But the study of disputed points in literary history has a fascination all its own, as is shown in Professor Lounsbury's "Studies in Chaucer;" and though there are fewer such points to be noted in connection with the author of Piers Plowman, and though there is a minimum of evidence to base a discussion upon, there are nevertheless a few that are not unworthy of attention; and perhaps chief among these, because of

---

the poem; the other is simply mentioned by Crowley as seen and bearing date 1409. Still others may yet be discovered. Of these manuscripts the following are referred to in this paper:

MS. Trinity College, Dublin. D. 4. I (C-text), Skeat's No. XLI.
Ashburnham MS. No. 130 (B-text), No. XX, Skeat.
Earl of Ilchester's MS. (C-text), No. XXXII, Skeat.
MS. Douce 104, Bodleian Library (C-text), No. XXXVIII.
MS. Digby 102, Bodleian Library (C-text), No. XXXIX.

Editions. B. *Printed editions of the poem.* (In citations, those of Skeat will be designated by the date of publication.)

1550. Robert Crowley. Three impressions in the same year; based principally upon a B-text, but showing that the editor had access to at least four MSS. and to all three texts. Includes the printer's address to the reader. The first edition is most carefully printed; the second and third contain an abstract of the poem.

1561. Owen Rogers. An unimportant and defective reprint of Crowley's third edition.

1813. Thomas Dunham Whitaker. Based on a C-text, now and then compared with two other MSS. Introduction, notes, and glossary.

1842. Thomas Wright. Based on B-text. Introduction, notes, and glossary.

1856. Thomas Wright. Second and revised edition.

1866. W. W. Skeat. Parallel Extracts from Twenty-nine MSS. (Early English Text Society.)

1867. W. W. Skeat. A-text. (Early English Text Society.)

1869. W. W. Skeat. B-text. (E. E. T. S.)

1869. W. W. Skeat. First part of B-text, for school use. Other editions of the same have appeared in 1874, 1879, 1886, 1888, 1891, and 1893.

1873. W. W. Skeat. C-text and Richard the Redeless. (E. E. T. S.)

1877. W. W. Skeat. Notes on the poem, section I. (E. E. T. S.)

1884. W. W. Skeat. Notes on the poem, section II. General preface and glossary. (E. E. T. S.)

1885. W. W. Skeat. Parallel Extracts from Forty-five MSS. (E. E. T. S.)

1886. W. W. Skeat. Three texts parallel, and Richard the Redeless. Introduction, notes, and glossary.

1893. W. W. Skeat. Seventh edition, revised, of the school text first published in 1869.

1895. Kate M. Warren. A prose translation of the first part of text B.

1896. J. F. Davis. First part of text B. For school use.

1898. Katharine Comans. (A popular rendering of the poem in preparation.)

Other works and papers. C. *Critical works, monographs, and other papers.*

1870. C. H. Pearson. Unsigned article in North British Review of April, on "Contemporary Literature, No. 18," reviewing Skeat's edition of 1869.

1874. Emil Bernard. William Langland; a Grammatical Treatise.

1877. F. Rosenthal. Die Alliterierende Englische Langzeile im xiv. Jahrhundert.

1879. J. J. Jusserand. Observations sur la Vision de Piers Plowman, a propos des "Notes to text A, B, and C," du Rev. W. W. Skeat.

1885. Richard Kron. William Langley's Buch von Peter dem Pflueger.

1887. Athenæum, March 19. Unsigned review of Skeat's three-text (1886) edition.

1887. Wilhelm Wandschneider. Zur Syntax des Verbes in Langley's Vision of William.

1887. Eduard Teichmann. Die Verbalflexion in William Langley's Buch von Peter dem Pflueger.

1889. Ernst Guenther. Englisches Leben im Vierzehnten Jahrhundert.

1890. Ludwig Klapprott. Das End-e in W. Langland's Buch von Peter dem Pflueger.

1894. J. J. Jusserand. Piers Plowman; a Contribution to the history of English Mysticism.

1894. E. M. Hopkins. Character and Opinions of William Langland.

1895. Elizabeth Deering Hanscom. The Argument of the Vision of Piers Plowman.

1895. E. M. Hopkins. Education of William Langland. (Princeton College Bulletin, April.)

1897. A. A. Jack. The Autobiographical Elements in Piers Plowman. (Paper read before the Central Division of the Modern Language Association.)

the attention it has received, is the question as to the author's name. The details of his life are fully as uncertain; but are obtained from what is apparently his own statement and there is little difference of opinion about them; while the amount of his work is so limited, under twenty thousand lines as against nearly forty-five thousand of Chaucer's, and his style and method are so distinct, that there is scarcely an opportunity to question the authorship of any part of it as the work of others is so often questioned.

Author's name. But as to his name, a mere glance at the titles of the various monographs devoted to a study of the poem will show that here at least, there is open divergence of opinion. It may indeed be a slight divergence quantitatively considered, but it has a history that is somewhat extended and not altogether devoid of interest; and it is the history of this divergence that this paper proposes to trace.

If there were no other evidence bearing upon this subject than that to be obtained from the poem itself, which is of course the highest and oldest authority, the name would doubtless have received much less attention, but would nevertheless remain undetermined. **Evidence of poem.** The poem contains no formal or direct reference whatever to the poet's surname, but invariably speaks of him as Will (Wil or Wille). This seems conclusive proof that his first name was William; but it must at the same time be remembered that the poem is allegorical throughout, and that every character in it, with apparently but two or three exceptions, is allegorical or invented to correspond with existing types; and the character names likewise. The principal exceptions are the names of the author himself, his wife and his daughter; and while not much doubt has been expressed of the authenticity of these names and the characters described under them, there is yet room for doubt, because, if these are authentic, he has in these few instances reversed his usual practice.

Copyists. However, the scriveners who multiplied copies of the several versions of his poem might be supposed to know something of the matter, and these agreed in calling him William, if they made occasion to mention him by name. *Hic incipit Visio Willelmi de Petro Plouhman*, they wrote; and, *Hic explicit visio Willelmi de Petro Plouhman;* and, *Incipit visio ejusdem Willelmi de Dowel.* All titles and colophons which mention the author agree in this; but it is noticeable that the MSS. of the B-text, one of which (Laud Misc. 581, Bodleian Library) was very possibly the author's own autograph copy, contain fewer of these

extratextual references to him. It is also possible that all the copyists knew about the matter was derived from the text itself.

Occasionally a copyist, or more probably the owner, of a manuscript added a note concerning the author; but very few manuscripts containing such notes have been discovered, and apparently only one of them was known before printed editions began to appear. If so, that one may have been the cause of beginning the long-continued discussion. For in the first printed edition, that of Crowley, 1550, the editor makes this brief deliverance, which in view of the direct statements in the text, is surprising. It is found at the beginning of his address to the reader:

Crowley, 1550.

"Beynge desyerous to knowe the name of the Autoure of this most worthy worke (gentle reader) and the tyme of the writynge of the same: I did not onely gather togyther suche aunciente copies as I could come by, but also consult such men as I knew to be more exercised in the studie of antiquities, then I my selfe haue been. And by some of them I haue learned that the Autour was named Roberte langelande, a Shropshere man borne in Cleybirie, about viii. myles from Maluerne hilles."

Crowley, then, obtained this information not from a manuscript but from some one "exercised in the study of antiquities." Who this person may have been appears in 1559. In that year John Bale published his *Scriptorum Illustrium majoris Brittanniae;* and in his catalogue of illustrious writers was included the name of Robert Langland. His statement, in translation, is in substance as follows:

Bale, 1559.

Robert Langland, a priest as it appears, was born in Shropshire in a village commonly called Cleobury Mortimer, in the clay land eight miles from the Malvern hills. I may not state with certainty whether in that rustic and retired place he became in maturity versed in letters, or whether he may not have studied at Oxford or Cambridge, since among the masters in those places learning especially flourished. Yet this is clearly agreed upon, that he was one of the first disciples of John Wyclif, and in a spiritual fervor against the open blasphemies of papists against God and his Christ, under delightful colors and types he issued in the English speech a noble work, worthy the perusal of all good men, which he called the Vision of Piers Plowman. . . . Nothing else written by him have I known. In this work, under various and pleasant similitudes, he has made many prophecies which we have seen fulfilled in our times. He finished his work in the year 1369, when John Chichester was mayor of London.

Undoubtedly John Bale was sufficiently "exercised in the study of antiquities" to answer to Crowley's description; but the question still remains: If Crowley's information came from Bale, from what source did Bale obtain his? Was it from record, tradition, or conjecture? Only a hint at the answer to the question has been obtained, and that relates to a very small part of Bale's statement.

Ashburnham MS. 130.

In the course of time it became known that inside the cover of Ashburnham MS. 130 there is a record to this effect:

"Robertus Langlande, natus in comitatu Salopie in villa Mortimers Clybery in the Clayland and within viij miles of Malvern hills, scripsit piers ploughman."

The handwriting of this note was recognized as that of Bale; but later still, it was found that immediately above this entry, in a much older handwriting and so placed that Bale's note had to be crowded in below it, was written, "Robert or william langland made pers ploughman;" a two-sided statement which may nevertheless, be Bale's authority for naming the poet *Robert* Langland. But if this was his authority for the name, still nothing is known as to the source from which he obtained the rest of his information. Part of it, that the poet was a Wycliffite, seems to be incorrect; but that part is not stated as matter of positive knowledge, and it seems as though Bale's entire account might have been based upon tradition.

In 1577, Holinshed, in his *Chronicles of England, Scotland, and Ireland*, refers to Bale and quotes his words, "Robert Langland, a secular priest, born in Salopshire, in Mortimers Cliburie." In

Stow, 1580.

1580 something new appears. Another chronicler, John Stow, in his *Annales* makes this entry:*

"This year, 1342, Iohn Maluerne, Fellow of Orial Colledge, in Oxford, made and finished his booke, entituled the Visions of Pierce Plowman."

This is another surprise, and another search for the source of the information is in order; a search that has hitherto been and is likely to be in vain. The date mentioned, 1342, has been proved wrong; but it has been found that a John Malverne, who was probably an Oxford man, lived contemporary with the author of the poem, and this and the reference in the poem to the Malvern hills may have been made by Stow the basis of a conjecture.

In a short time, in 1586, formal record is made of a pure blunder, a blunder of which Crowley himself was guilty in an unguarded moment,† and which is often repeated by those not familiar with the poem. It is set down by W. Webbe, who in the *Discourse of English Poetrie*, is of the opinion that the ancient poet is himself named Piers Plowman, "a very pithy wryter." It is easy to make this mistake, since the poem is often mentioned as the *Vision of Piers Plowman;* but the full title corrects it as easily. Puttenham (1589) does not make it; but F. Meres in a *Comparative*

*See Skeat, 1884, p. 867. Most of the accompanying citations are from this volume.
†In his abstract of Passus VIII, B-text. (Skeat, 1886, lxxvi, note.)

Discourse of our English Poets, printed in 1598, goes considerably further, and not only asserts that the author of the poem was Piers Plowman, but seems to imply that Piers Plowman was of Immanuel College, Cambridge.

Other chroniclers. By this time, chroniclers begin to discover that there are discrepant statements as to the matter under discussion, and there are some half-amusing attempts to reconcile them by placing them side by side, or as it were allowing them to face one another down. Selden (1613), in a note to song 7 of Drayton's *Polyolbion*, says that the Vision of Piers Plowman is done, as is thought, by Robert Langland, a Shropshire man; but that he has read that its author was John Malvern of Oriel College, Oxford. J. Pits (1619)* accepts John Malvern, and says what was perhaps true of the real John Malvern, that he was a Benedictine monk at Worcester. J. Weever, in *Ancient Funeral Monuments*, edition of 1631, takes the other side, following Bale. David Buchanan, in a manuscript, *Schrift de Scriptoribus Scotis*, written perhaps at about the year 1645, also calls the poet Robert Langland, but is willing to have him a Benedictine monk, which up to this point it is the province of John Malvern alone to be, and makes a new departure by calling him a Scotchman of Aberdeen; thinking, perhaps, that in the general confusion this statement is as likely as any to be accepted, and a poet gained for Scotland. And then follows the most heroic attempt of all to set matters right; that of Anthony Wood, *Historia et Antiquitates Universitatis Oxoniensis*, 1674, who makes the poet John Malvern, of Oriel College, then a Benedictine of Worcester, known also by the name Robert Langland; "Robertus de Langland, Johan. Malverne nonnullis appellatur."

So the changes are rung, while an occasional writer reiterates that Piers Plowman is the author, as for example, Dr. Hickes, *Linguarum Veterum Septentrionalium Thesaurus*, 1705. On the whole, however, the tide set in favor of the name Robert Langland. That the attention given the question had not been in any sense critical, the fact that the name William is not once suggested by any one of the chroniclers clearly demonstrates; they have simply copied from one another or have had recourse to guessing, without looking at the text itself.

Tyrwhitt, 1778. But a more critical age is approaching, and it is a pleasure to turn from the chroniclers to learn the opinion of such

*Relationum Historicarum de Rebus Anglicis (Skeat, 1884. p. 860).

a scholar as Thomas Tyrwhitt, who is disinclined to follow any of them. In a note to the essay prefatory to his edition of Chaucer's Canterbury Tales (1778),* he says

"The Visions of (i. e. concerning) Pierce Plowman are generally ascribed to one Robert Langland, but the best MSS. that I have seen make the Christian name of the author William, without mentioning his surname. So in MS. Cotton, Vesp. B. XVI, at the end of p. 1, is this rubric, 'Hic incipit secundus passus de visione Willelmi de Petro Plouhman.' And in Ver. 5 of p. 2, instead of 'And sayde: Sonne, slepest thou?' the MS. has 'And sayde: Wille, slepest thou?'"

Whitaker, 1813. The second important edition of Piers Plowman is that of Thomas Dunham Whitaker. He is content to accept Crowley's opinion that the author of the poem is "Robert Langland, a Secular Priest of the county of Salop." But at the same time he gives the title of the poem, not as the *Vision of Pierce Plowman*, after Crowley, but in full as the *Visio Willi de Petro Plouhman, Item Visiones ejusdem de Dowel, Dobet, et Dobest;* and having noted that there are differences of opinion as to the poet's name, he simply dismisses the matter with the statement, "Where-ever born and bred and by whatever name distinguished, the author of these Visions was an observer and a reflector of no common powers." He infers that he must have been similar in character to "his own visionary William," but does not draw the inference that the poet and his "visionary William" are the same. Invariably he calls the poet Langland, and believes him to have been an inhabitant of some of the Midland counties, because he finds in his style "vestiges of the dialect which was originally formed upon the Mercno-Saxon."

MS. Dnblin, D. 4, 1. Up to this point no new evidence had been discovered since the beginning of the discussion, but just as the little on hand was becoming almost threadbare, Sir Frederick Madden found something new, and possibly more authentic than anything known up to that time. This was a note, in a handwriting of the fifteenth century, in a manuscript in the library of Trinity College, Dublin (MS. Dublin, D. 4, 1); which may be thus translated:

Memorandum that Stacy de Rokayle was the father of William of Langland, that he was well born (generosus), and lived in Shipton-under-Wychwood, holding of Lord le Spenser in Oxfordshire, and that the aforesaid William made a book which is called Piers Plowman.

Here is evidence tending to discredit everything that has pre-

*Citation made from edition of 1798, by Mr. V. Lansing Collins, Reference Librarian of Princeton University, who has furnished also citations from Whitaker's and Wright's editions of Piers Plowman.

ceded except a single word of Bale's, and the note just above Bale's in the Ashburnham MS. 130; a note probably not yet known to exist. But this evidence the next editor of the poem, Thomas Wright, is disinclined to accept. He says in substance that a tradition as old as the 16th century, the grounds of which are unknown, asserts that the author was named Robert Longlande or Langlande, that he was born at Cleobury Mortimer in Shropshire, was educated at Oxford, and became a monk at Malvern. In this he accepts Bale's statement and Bale's conjecture, or possibly takes a hint from Stow. He does not agree with Tyrwhitt that "Wil" is an abbreviation of William and that it is the author's name; but believes instead that Will, his wife and his daughter, are all alike "visionary." He mentions the discovery made by Madden, and cites in full the note in the Dublin MS., but thinks that this should not overthrow the old tradition until Stacy de Rokayle is traced out. He also quotes in full the statement of Buchanan.

Wright, 1842.

Thus after three hundred years, a scholar familiar with all the data still holds to the opinion expressed by Crowley, the first editor. In all that time, there has been scarcely any one to believe that the Will of the poem is really William the author; the majority assuming that Will, and of course his wife and his daughter also, are invented or allegorical characters, like Wit, Study, Clergy, and Piers Plowman himself; and that the real author is named Robert Langland.

Skeat, 1866-1886.

Wright's second edition of the poem was published in 1856. Interest in the work grew so great that one of the first of living English scholars decided to give to it the time necessary to collect all discoverable manuscripts and to make a complete edition; a task that required more than twenty years for completion. In 1866 the Early English Text Society published for W. W. Skeat extracts from twenty-nine MSS. known at that date, and called for information concerning others. In the next year was published the first of Skeat's many volumes, containing the A-text. In this he tentatively advances the opinion that the author of the poem was named not Robert but William Langland. Discarding Stow's John Malvern as a mere guess, he says, "That his surname was Langland . . . seems to be generally agreed;" and he prefers William to Robert, Bale to the contrary notwithstanding, on the evidence of the note in the Dublin MS. and of the use of the name in the text itself. "The phrase 'oure Wille' is exactly the colloquial way of speaking of a

A-text, 1867.

friend or relation which may be heard any day in Shropshire still . . . and it seems to me utterly unlikely that a man would use a feigned name whilst he was speaking of himself in so familiar a manner. Hence the balance of evidence seems to me in favor of the name William Langland."

It may be noted that the preceding editor thought the very same evidence to balance very differently. But as his work advances, Professor Skeat finds new evidence. Before the B-text appeared in 1869, he had found in the Ashburnham MS. the note written above Bale's and previously overlooked, to the effect that the author was named Robert *or* William. In this edition he says that this note is of the fifteenth century. In a later edition (1886) he calls it simply an *old* note, and in a still later edition (1893) an *early* one: a change of phrase which seems to indicate uncertainty as to its actual age, although as it must for reasons already stated be older than Bale's note (see p. 5), its exact age would seem to be immaterial. This note, as it does not exclude the name William, is regarded by Skeat as confirming his view; and he finds further a way of accounting for the name Robert as an error in reading one line of the text (Skeat, 1869, p. xxviii, footnote). In one MS. (201 Corpus Christi College, Oxford) there is one line (B. viii, 1) in which the word which appears as *yrobed* in other manuscripts is written *y-Robt* with a stroke through the *b*. When so written, the line might be read or misread—

B-text, 1869.

"And y, Robert, in russet, gan rome a-bowhte;"

instead of as in other manuscripts—

"Thus yrobed in russet I romed aboute."

This is certainly ingenious if not convincing.

At this stage in the discussion an entirely new direction is given to it by an unsigned article in the North British Review of April, 1870,* written by Professor C. H. Pearson, reviewing Skeat's volume of the preceding year, and constituting a most important contribution to the literature of the subject. In substance, this article is as follows:

Pearson, 1870.

There have been three theories as to the authorship of the poem, "excluding Buchanan's arbitrary statement that the author was a Scot brought up in Aberdeen." The first, that of Stow, is overthrown by Skeat, who shows that the poem is of later date, and has no necessary connection with Oxford. The second is based on the 15th century note in the Ashburnham MS. followed by Bale and Crowley; Bale neglecting the name William given as an alternative for Robert,

*Citations made in part by Mr. F. N. Raymond of Columbia University.

and adding that the author was from Shropshire. The third is that based upon the 15th century note in the Dublin MS. Skeat accepts the last, but apparently without clear reason.

An investigation of the records of Oxfordshire and Shropshire ought to throw some light on the matter. In the Dublin MS. are mentioned the names Langland, Rokayle, and Stacy. Records show that that there was a Langland family in the southwestern counties of Somerset. Dorset, and Devon,* but there is no trace of such a name in Oxfordshire or Shropshire. The name Rokayle, in variant forms, is more common. As Rokesle it is familiar in Sussex, Surrey, Kent, and London. In Shropshire there is a hamlet called Ruckley or Rokele, and associated with it as part of the manor of Acton Burnel, another named, not Langland, but Langley or Langel'; and the name Burnel de Langley was sometimes given to the younger members of the Burnel family. There were still other Langleys, not members of the Burnel family, but engaged in its service. Seemingly there were two families, one of Langley and one of Rokesle, living in adjoining hamlets, and attached to the same manor; the Rokesles having been earlier connected with the service of the Mortimers, one of whom was lord of Cleobury Mortimer. In the Langley family the Christian name Stacia occurs in 1259.

There is also a hamlet named Langley in the parish of Shipton-under-Wychwood in Oxfordshire; and a family of Langleys lived for nearly two centuries in that county, were wardens of Wychwood, and owned land in Shipton-under-Wychwood. Another Langley family, of Warwickshire, received land in Oxfordshire under Edward I.

These facts, in connection with the statement of Bale and that of the Dublin MS. note, suggest that possibly the poet was named not Langland but Langley. However, he could hardly have been a Burnel de Langley, for the Burnel family of Acton Burnel became extinct in 1377. He could not have been an Oxfordshire Langley, for the last member bearing the name died in 1362. He could not have been a Warwickshire Langley, for that family is well known, and was not in any way connected with the counties of Oxford and Salop in the 14th century.

There remains to be considered only the Langleys who were tenants of the Burnels; and since this family is associated with the Rokesles, who in turn are connected with the village of Cleobury Mortimer, there seems to be here a clue to the statement that the poet's father was named Rokayle, and that the poet was born at Cleobury Mortimer. Moreover it is probable that members of this family of Langleys removed from Shropshire to Shipton-under-Wychwood. For a member of the Burnel family to which both Langleys and Rokesles were attached, married the daughter of one Hugh de Despenser,† and a Hugh de Despenser died in 1349, seized of the manor of Shipton-under-Wychwood. If one of the Burnels went to Oxfordshire, some of the attendant Langleys doubtless went also. The conclusion is possible that the poet's father was named Stacy de Langley, a name known in the family; that he removed to Oxfordshire from Shropshire, and in so doing took the name of the neighboring village of Rokele "to avoid confusion with the knightly family which, as we have seen, held land in Shipton-under-Wychwood."

It would be equally possible that the poet's father was of the Rokele family, and this would lend a shade more of plausibility to

*There is a village named Langlond in Somersetshire and another named Langland in Lancashire (Skeat, 1884, xxiv, note).

†Lord le Spenser; see note of Dublin MS., p. 7.

the poet's birth at Cleobury Mortimer. Rokeles, or Rokesles, were as likely to go with a Burnel to Wychwood as were Langleys. In that case the poet might have been named for either Langley village, and such a naming would have been by no means unusual. It is this view of the facts stated by Pearson that Skeat is inclined to take.

Skeat, Text C, 1873. But Professor Pearson's presentation of the case for Langley instead of Langland as the poet's name is so convincing that, for the time at least, Professor Skeat is inclined to accept it without reservation; the more readily that his confidence in the name Langland is further temporarily shaken by a discovery of his own, that in three MSS. of the C-text* the copyist has named the author William W.: "Explicit visio Willelmi. W. de Petro le Plowman." Of this Skeat can offer no interpretation beyond this comment:

"The signification of this mystic 'W' is still to seek. Professor Morley suggests 'Wychwood,' in allusion to the note in the Dublin MS. . . . My own guess is 'Wigorniensis,' from the connection between Great Malvern and the see of Worcester. But I fear that both guesses are wide of the mark."

At least twice afterwards, Skeat expressed the opinion that Langley was probably the poet's name. In Ward's English Poets, (1880), in the article on Piers Plowman, written by him, he states that the poet's name "should rather perhaps be read as Langley;" and in an article in the ninth edition of the Cyclopedia Brittanica,† though the heading is Langland, he says, "It would seem that Langland should rather be Langley."

Bernard, 1874. Meanwhile, in 1874, there had appeared Bernard's grammatical treatise upon the poem, which, so far as the author's name is concerned, merely accepts the view earlier expressed by Skeat, and shows that the writer knew nothing of Pearson's article. Bernard says, in part:

"The best and most trustworthy evidence that we have for supposing his Christian name to be William is that in nearly all the MSS. he is so designated; although in Crowley's edition, A. D. 1550, we meet with an interesting address to the Reader, in which the editor calls our poet '*Roberte langelande*' . . . He is also named *Robertus Langelande* by Bale. David Buchanan also calls him *Robertus Langland*. But as these testimonies are proved to be erroneous in other respects also, viz. in Bale's taking it for granted that he was a monk, when we have several evidences to convince us of the contrary; further in Buchanan's claiming him as a Scotchman, and in Crowley's uncertainty as to dates and distances, we prefer to adopt the universally received belief that our author's Christian name was *William*, the more so as he always alludes to himself as 'Wille' in his poems. * * * That his surname was *Langland* is ascertained

*Ilchester, Douce 104, and Digby 102. See Skeat, 1873, p. xxxvii.

†Publication begun in 1875.

by the following passage from the Dublin MS.* *Memorandum quod Stacy de Rokayle, pater Willielmi de Langland, qui Stacius fuit generosus et morabatur in Schiptone under Whicwode, tenens domini le Spenser in comitatu Oxon., qui praedictus Willielmus fecit librum qui vocatur Perys Ploughman.* Yet upon the whole the balance of evidence inclines in favor of *William Langland*—and as such has been generally received.

The probable place of his birth was Cleobury Mortimer in Shropshire, which is not far from the 'Shipton-under-Wychwood' mentioned by Bale."

This is chiefly interesting because of the artlessness with which the writer repeats the statements of Skeat with some minor blunders of his own; entirely unaware that in the meantime Skeat had changed his mind.

But Professor Skeat did not long remain a convert to Pearson's theory. He continued his investigations, reediting his school text in 1874 and in 1879, issuing the first part of his "Notes" on the poem in 1877, and the second part including a general preface in 1884. In this general preface his discussion of the entire question of name and birthplace is exhaustive, and since that time little or nothing has been added to the data which he there adduces. The result of all is that he returns to his original position that the poet's name was William Langland, while admitting that the position is not so strong as it might be.

Skeat, 1884.

He strengthens his original argument from the poem itself by showing that one line of the B-text (B, xv, 148) contains what may very possibly be a riddle upon the author's full name—

"I haue lyved in londe, quod I· my name is longe wille;"

though the suggestion that this possibly means *Wille Longelonde* is made only in a footnote (1884, p. xxvi). He points out that Crowley's information as to the name and birthplace of the author is probably obtained from Bale, and that the chroniclers have in general merely copied from these two. He accounts for Stow's naming the poet John Malvern by the theory that Stow might have associated the mention in the poem of the Malvern hills with the fact that there was a John Malvern living at about the time of the author, as shown by three quoted references; one to a John de Malverne, prior of Worcester in 1395; one to John Malvern who wrote a continuation of Higden's *Polychronicon*; and one to a John Malvern who was present at the examination of a W. Thorpe in 1407. Such a man might of course very easily have been a "fellow of Orial Colledge, in Oxford."

---

*See page 7.

Dismissing Buchanan, as before, without argument, he repeats the suggestion that the name Robert may have arisen from a misreading of the text (p. 9 preceding). As to the surname, he has no further explanation to offer of the "mystic W," noting only that it is found in MSS. of the latest text. He then states fully Professor Pearson's theory, noting that it was improbable that the poet belonged to the Langleys of Wychwood, as he was probably not of so good a family, but admitting that he might have belonged to the Shropshire family which presumably removed to Oxfordshire and took service with the Despensers, and that he might have been named Langley from either the hamlet in Shropshire or that in Oxfordshire. Notwithstanding, Skeat now holds to his own view that the surname is Langland, because he does not see how otherwise it could have been substituted for Langley, since Langland is so rare and Langley so common. He notes finally that the manors of Malvern and Wychwood were at one time in the hands of the same lord, a Despenser; a fact which does not of course affect the disputed name, but which may be interpreted as furnishing an additional reason why the poet may have been connected with both Oxfordshire and Shropshire. Practically, then, as the final result of his deliberations, Skeat accepts in full what is perhaps the oldest record, that in the Dublin MS., supplementing it by Bale's statement that the poet was born at Cleobury Mortimer.

Skeat, latest opinion

In the preface to the three-text edition of the poem in 1886, he added nothing to this statement; but in a later edition of the students' text first published in 1869, he calls attention to the fact that London records of the fourteenth century contain the name Langley and apparently not that of Langland. He quotes two excerpts, one relating to a butcher, and the other to one who was, apparently, a church official (capellanus) and at the same time a property-holder. The second of these was named Robert Langley, and thus is suggested the speculation that perhaps the poet had a brother Robert who helped him in the composition of the poem; whence the tradition that "Robert or William" made Piers Plowman. But despite everything, while stating that every theory presents difficulties which he is unable to explain, and tacitly admitting that Langley is more probable and best harmonizes the conflicting evidence, Professor Skeat cherishes his faith in the surname Langland.

This closes the case, so far as the presentation of evidence is concerned, and so far as Professor Skeat, the principal witness, is concerned; and what remains is of the nature of special pleading

Kron, 1885. by successive advocates. In 1885, Dr. Richard Kron published an admirable monograph, based on direct examination of the manuscripts of the poem, and dealing with their comparative ages and degrees of authenticity, the probable dialect of the author, and the general distinctions between the texts. In the last chapter he gives a complete survey of the case relating to the author's name, and concludes that it is not Langland but Langley. Following is a summary of his argument:

As to the first name of the poet, John and Robert must be rejected in favor of William for two reasons; first because the MS. titles give William, and second because the poet always calls himself Will. Further, two manuscripts (Ashburnham and Dublin) have marginal notes in which the name William appears. Ritson suggests that in the poem "wille" does not stand for the poet's name but for the will psychological: a theory untenable in view of the fact that in several MSS. William is written in the very places where others have "wille."*

In three MSS. of the latest text is written William W. instead of William. Skeat guesses that this W may stand for Wigorniensis; Morley that it stands for Wychwood.

The surname is written Langelande, Longlond, Langlond, Langland, and Malvern. [Here are quoted Bale, the Ashburnham and Dublin MSS., Stow, Wood, aud Holinshed.] The note in the Ashburnham MS. is more trustworthy than that of Bale directly below it. Stow says that the poem was finished in 1342, and that the author was John Malvern; but as he was wrong in the date, he may easily have been wrong in the name also. Five of six chroniclers agree that the name was Langland, but they show themselves more or less unreliable, and the statements of one are often based upon those of another.

The records of the Midland counties, especially of Shropshire, show no trace of the name Langland, while Langley is common. The investigations of Pearson have led him to conclude that the poet's father was named Langley, but that he changed his name to Rokayle on removing from Shropshire to Oxfordshire. His son, perhaps born at Cleobury Mortimer, was probably called William de Rokayle until he took up his residence in London, when he resumed his real name, William (de) Langley. In London at that time are found Langleys but no Langlands. Pearson's theory that Langley was the poet's name is supported by contemporary records, while Langland rests only upon the somewhat uncertain tradition of the next century. Until, therefore, the name Langland is substantiated by better authority than yet exists, Langley is to be given the preference.

In reply to Skeat's suggestion that the poet might have had a brother Robert who helped him in his work, Kron says that the unity of the work, and the uniform high level (Dichtergroesse) of its style, make such an assumption impossible.

Kron's position as to the surname would seem to be that which would necessarily be taken by all students of the question, in view of Pearson's argument and Skeat's reluctant admission that, although he doesn't believe in it himself, Langley is the more probable. But

*No examples are cited in support of this statement.

this is not by any means the case. On the contrary, the weight of later opinion, or rather of usage, follows Skeat and prefers Langland.

Athenaeum, 1887.

A reviewer of Skeat's three-text (1886) edition of the poem, in the Athenaeum of March 19, 1887, says that while Skeat is probably right in rejecting Pearson's conclusion, that conclusion follows almost necessarily from the premises which Skeat admitted; and it is implied that the premises should be rejected also. After stating the more important facts demonstrated by Pearson, he adds—

"A man who in the fourteenth century bore a local surname different from that of his father would almost certainly derive it from his own birthplace or early place of residence; so that if we adopt the statement that the author of 'Piers Plowman' was the son of Stacy de Rokayle, the presumption becomes strong that his surname was really Langley, from the hamlet so called in Shipton. On the other hand, however, all tradition is in favor of the form Langland, which appears even in the MS. note on which the contrary theory is based. On the whole, the probability seems to be that Stacy de Rokayle had a son named William Langley, and that the writer of the note wrongly identified this person with the famous poet, whom, notwithstanding, he correctly designates as Langland. This view seems to be absolutely required if we are to accept the traditional form of the name; but if it be correct, Prof. Skeat's statements as to the poet's parentage have no longer any foundation."

Jusserand, 1894.

The discussion is next taken up by J. J. Jusserand, 1894, in his *Piers Plowman, a Contribution to the History of English Mysticism*. In his chapter on the subject, as well as in the Athenaeum article, it is possible to find amusement as well as instruction, so novel are the applications made of the wellworn facts. He also takes the position that the poet's name was Langland:*

"His Christian name was William, as is attested by the title of several manuscripts, . . . moreover, the personages of his Visions, when they speak to him, always address him as William. . . . His surname appears to have been Langland (or Longland which is a different form of the same). Tradition is in favor of this name, and tradition is represented, firstly, in the XVth century, by annotations inscribed in some manuscripts by ancient possessors of them; and secondly, in the XVIth century, by John Bale. In his 'Catalogue of illustrious writers,' Bale affirms that 'Langelande' composed the 'Visionem Petri Aratoris, commencing: 'In aestivo tempore, cum sol caleret,' which is indeed the beginning of our poem:

In a somer sesun· whon softe was the sonne;

thirdly, there happens to be in a line of the Visions a succession of words which, put together, give, in a reversed order, the name of William Langland:

I have lyved in *londe*. quod I· my name is *longe Wille*.

It seems likely that that this is more than a mere accident; the poets of that time liked to play upon names, and often gave theirs to be divined in easy enigmas."

*Jusserand, Piers Plowman, Chap. III, p. 59.

M. Jusserand places more stress upon this third point than Skeat does; and quotes two illustrations. Of Pearson's argument in favor of the name Langley, he says—

"Tradition is opposed to this hypothesis, and the name is not to be found in any manuscript. He grounds his theory principally on a note in the handwriting of the XVth century, inscribed in a manuscript of the Visions preserved at Dublin. * * * According to this note, the author of Piers Plowman was the son of a sort of franklin or freeholder, a dependent of the family of Spenser, living at Shipton-under-Wychwood, in the county of Oxford. Mr. Pearson says that no family of the name of Langland has left any trace in the vicinity, but Langleys are there known, and there is a hamlet of that name. If, as is the case, Stacy's son did not take the name of his father, he must have adopted that of his village, and called himself Langley, after the locality.

"Everything in this theory is hypothesis, and tradition contradicts it. Concerning the man himself, the very note of the Dublin manuscript gives the name of Langland; concerning the village, no evidence connects the poet with a village of Langley. One only authority, that we might, it is true, wish weightier and more ancient, but which is better than nothing, mentions the place where our visionary is supposed to have been born. [Bale's statement follows].

" 'Langley' remains, therefore, a pure hypothesis; and, for a hypothesis to be resorted to instead of tradition, it would at least have been necessary to find tradition supplying data irreconcilable with facts known for certain to be true; but this is not the case. Tradition supplies us with 'Langland' as being the poet's name, and 'Cleobury Mortimer' as his birthplace; the fact of the poet receiving his name, though it be that of a locality, without having been born there, can be easily explained. Places of this name exist in several counties of England (Somerset, Devon, Dorset), and various ties—that of habitation, &c.—may have bound him to one of them, and been the cause of this surname. Cases of this kind were frequent in the Middle Ages. . . . If, therefore, 'Langley' is a possibility, 'Langland' is also a possibility, and one that is corroborated by tradition."

M. Jusserand is not, however, inclined to accept absolutely the authority of the Dublin MS. in all matters. He explains that in that note, "generosus" means "a kind of personage," of good family, a gentleman; and that Langland, if of such a parentage, would have had a social rank which he certainly did not possess, if, as is assumed by almost all students of the poem, the Will of the poem is the man who wrote it.

Recent opinions. The discussion still rests practically where M. Jusserand left it. In 1895, Miss Kate M. Warren, in a published translation of a part of the B-text, calls the poet Langland, and states that custom and tradition have tended to fix the name in this form, but that the question is not finally settled. Mr. J. F. Davis, editor of part of the B-text, 1896, summarizing the discussion briefly, adds another to the examples cited by Jusserand in support of the opinion that the poet intended to record his name in a line of the poem (B, xv, 148), and concludes:

"In the absence of more definite evidence there is no reason, therefore, for rejecting the traditional surname."

In 1887, Professor A. E. Jack is inclined to doubt the evidence of the poem itself, not only as touching the author's name, but as to all the supposed autobiographical elements therein; taking the position that the existence of such elements can neither be affirmed nor denied. He points out that all the earlier editors of the poem call the author Robert, notwithstanding titles and internal evidence; and that Wright dissents openly from the opinion that "the name 'Wil' given in the poem to the dreamer necessarily shows that the writer's name was William; and still less that the mention of 'Kytte my wyf' and 'Kalote my doughter' and of the dreamer's having resided at Cornhill, refer to the family and residence of the author of the poem." Morley, while accepting William as the author, doubts the genuineness of the names of wife and daughter, a doubt in which Skeat was once inclined to share. But a doubt of the genuineness of any of these names, and of other elements in the poem commonly accepted as autobiographical but shown by Professor Jack to be uncertain, involves the doubt that Will is the author's name, and tends to demonstrate that no assumption can be made touching either Christian name or surname.

In *Modern English Literature* (1898), Mr. Edmund Gosse says of the poet, "There is little doubt that his name was William Langland (or William Langley)." Professor Brandl also is content to accept the common view.

Miss Warren's statement accurately describes the situation; custom and tradition favor the name William Langland, but the question is not finally settled. Just how it is to be settled, unless new manuscript evidence comes to light, does not appear. At present it is easier to prove that nothing whatever is known about the name than to show that any name is a probable one; and the deflections or personal equations in the arguments of those who have tried to reach a definite conclusion are often easy to discover. Before attempting to point out any of them, it may be well to glance in review at some of the propositions that have been enunciated.

Resume of speculations and theories.

1. The author's name was Piers Plowman, once, at least, conjectured to be of Immanuel College, Cambridge.

This blunder is not too preposterous to be often made even yet by those who know the poem only in a general way; but it requires

no refutation. Piers Plowman is a character in the poem no more suggesting the author than do a hundred others, all evidently allegorical; and certainly Piers Plowman is not a college man, whatever the author of the poem may have been.

2. The author was John Malvern, of Oriel College, Oxford.

Skeat's objection to this proposition is fairly conclusive. There evidently was a John Malvern, of some scholarship, contemporary with the author of the poem. Stow, not taking the trouble to consult any authority now known, asserted that this man wrote the poem and finished it in 1342. The latter statement has been positively disproved; the former is thereby weakened, and is not authoritative in any particular, although often repeated.

3. The author was a Scotchman from Aberdeen (named Robert Langland).

A statement by an unreliable writer, at a date too late to have any weight whatever, contrary to the internal evidence of the poem and to all other evidence except itself. Scarcely any one has thought it worth a denial.

4. The author (sometimes called John Malvern) was of Worcester.

If he was John Malvern, that he was of Worcester is matter of record, since John Malvern was prior of Worcester in 1395. If the author was not John Malvern he might still at some time have been of Worcester, for Worcester is not far from the Malvern hills and the Shropshire village in which the poet is supposed to have been born. And if he was not of Worcester, he might have been so called by those who associated him with the name Malvern, which belongs to a Worcestershire village as well as to the Malvern hills. Upon this point there has been no discussion, beyond the suggestion by Skeat that the "W." after the poet's name in certain MSS. may stand for Wigorniensis; but it is possible, and perhaps even probable that the poet was in a certain sense "of Worcester."

5. The author's name was Robert.

This name is earliest mentioned in a manuscript note which is generally accepted as of the fifteenth century, although Skeat has withdrawn his positive statement to that effect; but in that note it is given as an alternative for William. Bale and Crowley accepted the Robert and ignored the William, and were followed by many others till Skeat took the matter up, showing that William is more probable, and suggesting that the name Robert might have originated in a misreading of a line of the text, or that the poet might have had a brother Robert.

6. The author's name was William.

This view is supported by the text itself, by manuscript titles, by a manuscript note of the fifteenth century, and is held by the great majority of later commentators. The statements of the poem have been doubted and are still doubtful, as shown by Professor Jack; but the name is the accepted one.

7. The author's surname was Langland.

The proposition is based on the two fifteenth century notes, the statement of Bale, and the doubtful evidence of one line in the poem itself. It is not confirmed by other internal evidence, or by manuscript titles or subscriptions; but it was not called in question till 1870. Since that time it has been generally regarded as doubtful, although commonly used.

8. The author's surname was Langley.

The theory advanced by Professor Pearson in 1870, based entirely on fourteenth century records which show that, tradition apart, Langley is more probable than Langland, and more easily reconcilable with other matters commonly accepted as facts. Langland rests on uncertain and comparatively late tradition; Langley on contemporary and authenticated records. To account for the existence of the name Langley is easy; to account for Langland is less so. Both names lack conclusive proof.

As to the poet's birth at Cleobury Mortimer and residence at Shipton-under-Wychwood, no exception has been taken. Pearson shows that, judging from records, both may easily be true. Internal evidence supports the first while not tending in any way to controvert the other.

Surely so extended a discussion of what is apparently so small a matter never yielded less in the way of definite results; and it seems hardly possible that identical data could be made by different examiners to justify such opposite conclusions. In such a discussion the burden of proof may well be ignored; and often it seems that too much of assumption has characterized the arguments, and especially those in favor of the name William Langland. As a matter of convenience it is of course right to regard precedent until precedent is shown to be wrong, and to call the poet William Langland, if that *be* precedent; but to assume that precedent is proof is not convincing.

Some arguments reexamined.

Bernard.

The discussion of Bernard (p. 11), for example, wears an air of independence, but is in fact a carelessly made copy of that of Skeat. He rejects the testimony of Bale, Crowley, and Buchanan as touching the name

Robert, because they are all guilty of making erroneous or uncertain statements about other matters. He then finds one remaining authority favoring the name Langland, and two favoring something else represented by a *W;* and concludes that the "balance of evidence" favors Langland. But this it does not do unless Bale, Crowley, and the rest are readmitted to the place which he has denied them.

Skeat. Professor Skeat makes no unwarranted assumptions of any kind, and reaches no positive conclusion. He bases his final opinion upon the direct statements of the text, not as to the author's name alone, but as to many other matters touching the author; and upon the fact that he can assign no reason why the poet should have been called William Langland if that was not actually his name. As to the first point recent discussion shows that it is not certain that the text can be directly depended upon; as to the second it is true that there is only the barest conjecture to account for the name William Langland if it is not the true one.

Pearson. Professor Pearson's induction is based upon a formidable array of records, and leads to a hypothesis which reconciles all the facts he has discovered with commonly received opinion except as to the name Langland. He makes it possible to account for that name as simply a mistake for the similar name Langley. While all this is probability and not proof, nothing has yet been discovered to weaken his argument except the one line in the poem which possibly contains a riddle upon the name Langland; and it still has to be met in some way by all who take an opposed position.

Kron. Dr. Kron finds himself compelled to agree with Pearson, on the ground that, as between tradition and records, especially when records are contemporary with the facts in question and tradition is not, the records have the advantage. This would be true if no middle position were possible, since the evidence of tradition is in this case scarcely more direct than that of the records, and since, if tradition and records contradict one another, tradition must give away. But the point of direct contradiction is not reached, and it is at least conceivable, although it may not be probable, that both tradition and record are in part authentic, relating to different individuals. Dr. Kron neglects to suggest how the name Langland might have originated if it is not the true one. He makes as to one minor point a misleading statement, saying that in some texts William is written where

Wille occurs in others. If this were true of the text proper, it would be of importance; but no citations are given, and the statement apparently is an error, or else refers to titles and subscriptions, and not to the body of the text.

Athenaeum. The writer of the Athenaeum article seeks for the middle way out of the dilemma by speculating that there were two persons—a William Langley, son of Stacy de Rokayle; and a William Langland of unknown parentage, the author of Piers Plowman—and that the writer of the Dublin MS. note confused their names. Unless this view be correct, the Athenaeum writer thinks it impossible to accept the name Langland. No especial objection can be made to this statement; but before the speculation can itself be accepted, it is necessary to account for what would follow from it: that a famous man named Langland was born and lived the greater part of his life where Langleys abounded, but where there is no trace in any official record of his own family name.

Jusserand. M. Jusserand's presentation of the case is more positive, perhaps dangerously so. He believes that the poet's Christian name was William, among other reasons because, he says, the personages of his visions always address him by that name. But, as it happens, they never call him William but always Will; and the distinction has come to be of some importance.

He has no doubt that the surname is Langland, because "everything in this (Langley) theory is hypothesis, and tradition contradicts it." Yet the hypothesis has something to rest upon, and the tradition has nothing except that line of the poem which contains an inversion of the poet's name; and this is doubtful corroboration, although it might be made stronger than Jusserand makes it. He objects that Langley does not appear in any manuscript. But, excepting in the very notes that are in question, neither does Langland. He says that if hypothesis is to be accepted instead of tradition, it is "necessary to find tradition supplying data irreconcilable with facts known for certain to be true; but this is not the case." And yet tradition, including Bale and the note in the Dublin MS. does make statements which have not been accepted, and which are even specifically rejected by Jusserand himself because they are "irreconcilable" with things that are at least believed to be true.

He says that no evidence connects the poet with a village of Langley. Nevertheless evidence brings him into the immediate

neighborhood of such villages; and among this is internal evidence that is independent of either hypothesis or tradition and of the direct statements made in the text. On the other side, there is no evidence to connect him with a village of Langland, but only the speculation made by Jusserand that he might at some time have been connected with Somersetshire or Devonshire or Dorsetshire or Lancashire by any one of "various ties," as for example "habitation;" and it is as easy to suppose that he was called Langland by mistake by some belated annotator, or that he assumed the name himself, for a purpose.

It does not seem, therefore, that Jusserand has really disturbed the adjustment of the two sides of the argument. On the contrary, if there is any choice between a hypothesis with plenty of records behind it and traditions which have no corroboration, are self-contradictory, and which in fact support the hypothesis in all points save the one at issue, the advantage would seem to be with the hypothesis. Or, to put it another way, since the traditions are such that they have not been fully accepted by any one, it would seem that the parts accepted should be those that have some direct confirmation.

Instead of establishing definite results, the preceding examination seems rather to demonstrate that from existing data almost any conclusion may be drawn to suit the taste; and in that event there is nothing to hinder the drawing of a new conclusion. Some of the grounds upon which such a conclusion might be based are as follows:

Possible grounds for a new hypothesis.

1. The poet's name is not certainly known to have been William.

A tendency is now showing itself to doubt the evidence of the text itself, hitherto regarded as unquestionable, and to regard the name and the details therein stated as purely allegorical; especially as the author represents his Will as doing many things which he himself most strongly condemns. Jusserand acccepts this inconsistency, while Professor Jack accounts for it as a half-humorous interpolation, and believes that if the author had been such a man as he represents himself to be, he could hardly have written the poem.

But if we doubt the direct statement of the text, the evidence of the titles is also doubtful, since they may be founded upon the text; and that of the two manuscript notes also becomes doubtful, for the same reason. Where Willam and Langland are found together, the argument against Langland to some extent discredits

William also; while even if Langland be accepted, it is still not necessary to accept William, since one of the manuscript notes offers the alternative of Robert, and since it has not been demonstrated that Will may not, after all, have had at least a remote connection with the "psychological" will as suggested by Ritson.*

2. The poet's name was not certainly Langland.

The evidence on this point has been presented; but, further, it is possible to account for the name Langland on the supposition that it was not the poet's real name. It is indeed barely possible that it might have been inferred by some student or copyist from the single line in the poem, in which, perhaps by chance, occurred the syllables now quoted as evidence; and this as easily as the name Robert might have been inferred, as suggested by Skeat, from a misreading of a line. The misreading of *Robert* for *robed* probably could have occurred only in connection with a single manuscript; while the line in which the name Langland is by design or accident buried, is found in several manuscripts. It might possibly have been a name assumed by the author, the more so if William was an assumed name; for taking as he did a position at variance with that of authorities in church and state, he might have desired to conceal his identity and evade responsibility. And it might have been merely a mistake of tradition for the name Langley, resembling it so closely. It may be added that the "mystic 'W'" does not stand for Langland, or for a place where Langlands were known; but it does possibly stand for localities in which there were numerous Langleys.

3. The name of the poet was possibly Robert.

If it was not William, it is of course more likely to have been Robert than anything else, since there is tradition to that effect. The chance of its having originated in a misreading of the text is a more minute one than that Langland so originated; and if it did not so originate, it is more difficult to account for on any other theory than that it was the actual name.

4. The poet's name was probably Langley.

To accept the name Langley makes it possible to harmonize the internal and external evidence as to all other points; while to accept the name Langland destroys the force of the traditions as to the poet's birthplace, themselves in harmony with internal evidence. To assume that there were two men leaves the difficulty unsolved.

*See argument of Kron, pp. 14 and 20.

5. The poet may have had a motive for concealing his name and identity.

He took a position in reference to religious and political matters that while popular with the mass of the people may not have been so popular with those in authority. Professor Jack shows that he was not widely known in London, and suggests that after all perhaps he did not live there; but it is easy to suppose that he did not wish to be widely known in London as the author of the poem, and took steps to that end.

6. The poet was not necessarily of the humble origin commonly ascribed to him on the evidence of direct assertions in the text.

If the character of Will is merely assumed or symbolical, then all that is said of him becomes symbolical, and we may then suppose whatever we please of the author that will not negative his interest in the deeper problems of the life of his time, and his opportunity of familiarizing himself with those problems by the study of that life. While not too well educated—his college training and even his spelling have been called in question—he knew something of law, more of books, and most of the church; and these things are consonant with a higher position than that usually assigned him. This makes more plausible the tradition that his father was of good family. He might therefore have been of a middle class, of serious disposition, and with leisure to look about him; or perhaps in more humble but comfortable circumstances. Doubting the assertions of the text, and remembering that these are not to be confused with a truer internal evidence to which reference has been made—evidence derived from the spirit and setting of the poem—we may reason that he was not necessarily poor; and that the leisure that he undoubtedly possessed was not the leisure of idleness or laziness. Doubting those assertions, we are no longer compelled to give him a wife and a daughter, and to keep him in the lower orders of the church. In short, he might have been serious, a devout churchman, familiar with country life and London life of the middle and lower classes, without being poor, shiftless, or married. If he was not poor, his father might have been "generosus" after all; and if he was not married, Bale's statement that he was a priest needs no qnalification; though it still seems probable that he belonged to the secular or parochial class.

7. A corollary already suggested is that the poet was not necessarily the hypocrite we might assume him to be if we accept him as the "visionary William" who lived by practices which he himself

condemns as wrong. We have now only to assume that he gave his Will this character to illustrate a peculiar weakness of human nature; a weakness which we may conclude on a better sort of internal evidence than direct assertion to have been foreign to the real character of the poet. It is certain that when we are no longer required to identify the poet with Will, we instinctively place him upon a still higher plane; and the respect which we already feel for him is greatly increased.

Name possibly Robert Langley.

A possible conclusion, apparently reconciling as many of the discrepancies and uncertainties as any other can, is this: That the author of Piers Plowman was a member of a lower or middle class, familiar with London, holding office in the church, serious, devout, perhaps in good circumstances, not of broad education, but yet a reading man. That he gave the name Will to himself in the poem, possibly because it was his real name, perhaps because he wished to conceal his real name, probably because it happened to suggest itself at the right time. That perhaps for a similar reason he assumed the name Langland and introduced it into the poem in a riddle; or more probably that he did not know that it is in the poem, and that its presence there is a mere chance. That his real name was neither William nor Langland, but that he was willing that that name should pass current, whether or not such had been his intention. That his Christian name was Robert, and that, known to a few only, and apparently contradicted by the text of the poem, it barely found its way to record, and after so long a time that it had come to be regarded as uncertain by one of those who set it down. That his surname was Langley; but that it was not known; or else that it was known, but in the course of a hundred years or so suffered an unhappy phonetic fate, came to be understood as Langland and was recorded as Langland. That it is highly probable that in course of time a Bacon-Shakespeare cipher can be invented to prove this hypothesis absolutely true, and to tell in detail the whole story as here outlined. That perhaps the improbable William Langland who was possibly William Langley or Robert Langland, but probably Robert Langley, was the very Robert Langley who was living in London up to about 1395, of whom it is written—"Robertus Langeleye, alias Robertus Parterick, capellanus, London," was owner of "unum messuag' et quatuor shope in Les Flesshambles in Parochia Sancti Nich*olai*, unum tenementum in parochia Sancti Nich*olai* in Veteri Piscaria, et redditus de 6*s*. exeunt' de quodam tenemento in Staninglane in parochia Beatae Marie" (*Inquis. post*

Mortem, ii, 90, 194; quoted in Skeat, 1893, xvii).

But if hypothesis-building is easy, so too is hypothesis unbuilding. That a Robert Langley was a "capellanus," which probably means a church official, and lived at the right time is plausible and encouraging, notwithstanding the unpoetic nature of his possessions; but the difficulty now is that this Robert Langley did not die at the right time. If the author of Piers Plowman was also the author of *Richard the Redeless*, as is fairly demonstrable, he lived at least until 1399; while the source from which the preceding quotation is made is such as to indicate that the Robert Langley therein named was already deceased in 1395. This one defective brick is enongh to endanger our entire structure; unless, having gone so far, we venture one thing more, and assume that perhaps late in life there developed in the poet, supposed to be Robert Langley, a new phase of religious feeling, under the influence of which, resolving upon a life of greater asceticism, he settled his affairs, gave up all his property for record and disposal, and so died to the world and buried himself in the church in a distant city; and that this and not his actual death is the cause of the record.

But, even if such an assumption were not altogether unwarrantable, it is not worth while to continue this long-extended quest since it must after all end where it began, in speculation; for it is suggested that with a little additional speculation one might almost as easily make out a case for the not quite forgotten John Malvern as the unknown poet. It is certain that he was an ecclesiastic, and that he lived at the right time and very nearly in the right place. All that can be demonstrated is, as already stated, that upon such evidence as is known an investigator can base practically any opinion that he will.

Traditional name convenient.

It is not proved that the author of the Vision of William concerning Piers the Plowman was named William. It seems likely that he was named Langley, but that is not proved either. Then, since he himself is chiefly responsible for the William, and it may be for the Langland also, and since that name is as convenient as any, we may as well assume that in calling him William Langland we are not only respecting tradition but perhaps his wishes also, and are therefore paying due honor to his memory.

Economic and Social Influences of Irrigation.

BY F. W. BLACKMAR.

The principles set forth in this paper may appear to be rather common-place, but they are fundamental in the consideration of any phase of the irrigation question. The land question lies at the foundation of all economic, social and political activities. For every industry and every branch of social organization rest ultimately upon the land. Progress in the accumulation of wealth, in religion, art, science and education depends upon the condition of the land and its uses. So important is this that the history of the land question in any nation furnishes the formal basis of all history for it is the foundation of all political, social, economic or military systems.

The first proposition that I wish to present is that:

1. *The density of population depends upon the abundance of the food supply.*

It is important to note that the beginnings of civilization were made in the fertile valleys of the Nile, and the Euphrates, and that civilization reached a high state of progress in the fertile valleys of Greece and Italy, and that the centers of modern civilization are formed according to the control of the fertile districts of the world. While some pastoral tribes and nations have been able to reach a state of barbarism, no nation has been well developed that has not taken on agriculture and struck its roots deep into the soil. If the origin and growth of nations is so dependent upon a fertile soil, it is also true that a decline in agriculture marks the first signs of the decay of the nation. If the fertile valleys of Italy laid the foundation of the Roman nation, the decline of agriculture and the fate of the land question mark the beginnings of its downfall.

In the progress of civilization the increase of the food supply is fundamental. It was a great step in advance when the early tribes learned how to fish, and thus add to their food supply; it was a much greater step when they learned to domesticate animals and use their flesh and milk for food. But the discovery and invention

of methods of agriculture yielded such a large supply of food that it gave leisure for other pursuits rather than to spend the whole time in the struggle for the satisfaction of hunger. It gave a permanency to life and this permitted the development of social and political organization. Yet a still more important step in the progress of the race was taken when man learned intensive agriculture, and through the process of fertilization, irrigation and improved methods of cultivating the soil was made to yield more abundantly. The philosophy of modern cultivation is to make the land yield its utmost during a period of years. The cultivated land today yields more per acre than ever before in the history of the world. It is intensive agriculture that must, in the future, supply a cheap food to the growing millions.

Through irrigation the means of sustaining life is greatly enhanced. It is difficult to make a cotrect estimate, but it is safe to say that under favorable climatic conditions an acre of irrigable land will support more than double the population of similar land without irrigation. But the irrigation problem is even greater than this, for it takes land that will scarcely support life, and makes it yield in abundance. The density of the population of Belgium is 535 per square mile; of Great Britain, 314.67; of the small German states 239.09; of France 181; and of the United States 21.5. Under present circumstances the United States is capable of supporting 250 people per square mile, which would make a population of nearly 1,000,000,000, and through the introduction of irrigation this could be greatly enhanced.

Modern irrigation, while it increases the means of the support of life, also has acted as a distributor of population. Nearly all irrigated lands have been divided into small tracts which by the use of water yield as great a return as larger farms without irrigation. This has made denser population in agricultural districts and thus relieved the congested districts. More than twenty years ago the writer rode over the plains of Fresno, California, where no house was to be seen, where a few sheep and cattle roved over land which furnished a scant pasture. Now, by the aid of water, densely populated rural districts with their schools and churches cover the land; villages and towns have sprung up and the land yields luxuriantly of nearly every fruit and vegetable product.

2. *Other things being equal, the progress and activity of society depends upon the density of population.*

Of course this must be within limits for an overcrowded population will be as detrimental to progress as a sparsely settled

population if the means of food supply is limited. But next to land, people are important for progress.

Educational facilities are not good in sparsely settled communities for it takes accumulation of wealth to furnish the means of education. The possibilities of higher education are only guaranteed in densley populated countries. The possibilities of a modern Yale, Harvard, Johns Hopkins, Chicago, and Leland Stanford and other educational centers are possible only to wealthy countries filled with people. Indeed the progress of state universities goes forward only with the increase of wealth and population.

Our public school system varies greatly with the population. It is found to be poorest in outlying sparsely settled districts. It is best in denseley populated districts that are not overcrowded. The point taken by our Superintendent of Public Instruction that it would be better to have fewer schools and better schools simply means that good schools connot be well maintained in a sparsely settled district. Wherever the lands of New England have been partially depopulated the first signs of decay are noticed in the decline of the school house and the church.

Where communities are well formed opportunities for lectures and other forms of amusement and instruction are furnished. The advancement of art, literature and science rest upon the association of individuals in compact groups. It is only through cooperative processes that these may be advanced. So likewise religion is to a large extent sustained by association. There are now scattered over different parts of the United States thousands of half-starved congregations with a miserable religious life and a stagnant condition of religious progress. The congregations are small and poor, laden with debt, and the ministers are poor in thought, poor in religious impulses, and poor in purse. True, much of this is due to the competition of various religious denominations who are persistent in planting a few poorly equipped church organizations instead of uniting to form one good one. But it is nevertheless illustrative of the point in question which shows that religious education cannot well be carried on without a tolerably dense population.

Among the evils of farm life is that of its isolation. There is a craving for social life. This craving is natural and in the line of all social development. The isolated condition of farm life is neither conducive to intellectual and moral growth nor to contentment and happiness. It certainly is not altogether the hard labor of farm life which causes so many young men to leave it for the

towns and cities. Could they feel that there was something of interest and elevation taking place in the farm communities as there is in cities and towns, there would be a greater inclination for them to remain upon the farm. And the fact that so many of our best young men leave farming communities for other pursuits is indeed a detriment to farm life and to farming communities in general. Nor is this the worst feature of isolation. A careful observer must have noticed the growth of crime and suicide in farming communities during recent years. It cannot be owing entirely to agricultural depression, for indeed people of the cities have suffered as bad business reverses as those of the farm. We can only attribute this rapid increase of crime and suicide to the lonely monotony of the isolated farm life without means of interest or elevation nor indeed common association. The best development of modern life must be accorded to social contact. Indeed our language, our religion, our education and all higher forms of culture come about through the association with our fellows. And if a denser population can be brought about by irrigation it will be a vast contribution to social advancement. The effect of a wider association is seen in the Grange movement which spread almost universally throughout the farming communities. In summing up the various influences of this movement it can readily be affirmed that its social influence is the greatest of all. So likewise might it be said for the Farmers' Alliance in its beginning. And I consider it very unfortunate that these two great organizations should have gone into politics and been subjected to the fortunes of political warfare.

Again a sparse population cannot have that rapid interchange of intelligence which is essential to all highly developed communities. The efforts of the United States government to perfect a rural mail delivery will have a vast influence in the development of better social and political condition throughout the Union. It will advance intelligence, education and general social culture. Good roads are among the best means of social and economic improvement. On account of the wear on wagons, harness, horses and men and the time consumed it frequently costs more to haul the grain to the freight depot than it does to transport from thence to the market. Good roads promote intelligent communication and association. The dense population caused by irrigation permits the establishment and maintenance of good roads.

A highly developed political life is found only in a relatively dense population. The perpetuation of liberty means a discussion

of the affairs of local as well as the affairs of the national government. And it is only through the discussion by men of varied interests looking from different standpoints that right ideas of popular government can be understood and maintained. The isolated conditions of farm life have been detrimental to every popular movement for the improvement of government that has ever sprung up in our Republic. It is strange to relate that all genuine movements for popular freedom have sprung up in towns and not in country places The condition of political government in the South prior to the war was owing largely to sparsely settled communities. And so much were they wanting in means of education and political development that a large portion of the youth were sent to the North to be educated. Even now the South has scarcely recovered from antiquated political, social and economic usages. In local government and in economic organization it is still far behind the northern and western sections of the country. But we have an illustration of the difficulties of local and state government when we turn our attention to the vast sparsley settled portions of the western part of the state of Kansas. Give those sparsely settled counties a relatively dense population and they will teem with new life. Political power will increase, better ideas of government will prevail, schools, colleges, churches, newspapers, publishing houses, libraries, museums, will flourish where now to day it is with difficulty that a government is maintained in good form and the public school system supported.

One of the most defective state governments of the whole Union is that of the sparsely settled community of Nevada. Were it thriving with as dense a population as California no doubt its government would be as good. If Nevada, Arizona and New Mexico could be irrigated so as to support as dense a population as Ohio the aspect of government would be entirely changed. Jack rabbits and sage hens may be important to a community but it takes something more than these to make a flourishing state. Water will make the desert to blossom as the rose. It will do more. It will build up a compact homogeneous society with a high social and political standard. I am reminded in this connection that France was one of the foremost nations of all Europe. It was thought at one time that all ideas of education and art, of literature, of science, in fact of civilization must pass through France before they could become utilized and recognized by the world. While several causes may have contributed to this fact none is more potent than that of the dense population of France. While Ger-

many and England were sparsely populated France had a dense and well organized population.

3. *Economic Life.*

But to turn more specifically to the economic conditions of agriculture we find it to be an industry of decreasing returns. Within a given territory the introduction of double the amount of capital and labor applied to agriculture will not yield double the amount of income. There is a limit to the amount which an acre will yield. Were it not so a few acres would supply products for the whole population. Owing to the fact that increased labor on farm lands may not bring a corresponding increase in production agriculture becomes an industry of decreasing returns. In reality agriculture becomes an industry of limited returns for a point is soon reached which, do all we may, the yield will not be increased. In the statement of this general law, it must be conceded, however, that through intensive agriculture, invention and discovery, farm lands as a whole are made to yield a larger return each succeeding year. A larger return in quantity if not in exchange value. It is this intensive agriculture which prevents in a measure the population from overtaking the food supply. Malthus demonstrated that unless there were positive and preventive checks on the population which increased in a geometrical ratio it would in time outrun the food supply which increases in an arithmetical ratio. Among the various phases of a highly developed civilization, none is more important than intensive agriculture as a check to over-population. Irrigation is an industry of intensive agriculture. It enables one acre of ground to yield a much larger food supply than it otherwise would. It is in line with scientific fertilization which forces Nature to yield her bounties more freely. A cheap food supply is beneficial to the human race and to all forms of progress. By a cheap food supply is meant the largest possible return of the land for the least possible effort, so that though the farmer may receive lower prices for his food, he is ultimately benefitted by being able to purchase manufactured articles at a lower price, for cheaper food makes cheaper manufactured articles. Suppose a man can by an ordinary method raise two bushels of wheat in a day, and another man can in the same time make a hat which is exchangeable for two bushels of wheat. If by the improved process of irrigation the man is enabled to raise four bushels of wheat in a day and the man can make two hats in the same time which are exchangeable for the four bushels of wheat, they are each advanced in wealth by

the sum of two bushels of wheat and a hat. Their amount of wealth is increased, their well-being has been advanced.

One of the important effects of a cheap food supply in the old world was that of dense population. Owing to the cheapness of food the population multiplied rapidly, and in the imperfect form of government this cheap food supply developed despotism. A few individuals could under these circumstances rule the masses. But under enlightened government there need be no fear of a race of serfs. All densely populated districts are in danger of the oppression of bad government although the possibility is for the best government. In a country where the people are jealous of their liberties there can be no danger of the development of despotism on account of thickly populated communities. Indeed the permanency of agriculture tends to develop permanent social and political relations. And one of the chief economic as well as social blessings of irrigation is that the yield shall be permanent. A farmer practicing irrigation knows about what his income will be each year. That is he rises above the uncertainty of drought and the fickleness of climate in general.

But what will be the effect of irrigation on prices?

Prices are regulated according to the law of supply and demand, and if a large amount of agricultural produce is thrown upon the market it will have a tendency to lower prices until through the development of other industries it should be absorbed. But a small amount of irrigable land in the United States could scarcely be the controlling element in the establishment of prices. Should Kansas develop the arid lands of the West, she would be able to throw agricultural products into eastern markets and the markets of the world more cheaply than could be done by agriculture in eastern Kansas, Missouri, or any other territory where irrigation is not resorted to. The products of the irrigable lands would receive the same price regardless of cost of production as those of other lands where the cost of production is greater. The result would be that larger profits would come to the irrigated land, or else prices would fall. Should irrigation be carried to such an extent that the farm produce should be increased sufficiently to cause a fall in prices, the poorer classes of farms would go out of use while still the irrigated lands would continue to be cultivated at a profit. Whichever result might occur, the irrigated lands would profit at the expense of other territory less favorably situated.

A high state of industrial organization can only occur in rela-

tively dense population, and the rapid accumulation of wealth is dependent upon a highly organized industrial community. The separation of producers into natural classes and their subdivision into specialized labor represent one of the most potent means for the accumulation of wealth. A successful division of labor can only be had in a relatively dense and well organized community. This is marked not only in the utilization of the labor force but also in utilization of capital. Capital seeks its best use and highest remuneration in a company of diversified industries and interests represented in a highly organized industrial community.

Thus we shall find that irrigation may become a means of developing a permanent industrial life; of reducing uncertainty of agriculture to certainty; of removing restlessness and discontent. It will furnish a means of development of a higher industrial organization including a division of labor which shall furnish a means of the rapid accumulation of wealth. It will insure better educational facilities and a higher educational standard. It will develop better social conditions. It will elevate the religious life and develop the religious nature. It will furnish an opportunity for a higher political development which shall be conducive to good government and the administration of justice. Therefore with better schools and churches, with better means of social enjoyment, with a more perfect and satisfactory government, with good roads for rapid communication, with the use of the telephone and the electric light, with a better water supply and a more perfect sanitation, with a daily mail, carrying the news to every farm house, all of which are dependent upon a relatively dense population, farm life will be made the most attractive and wholesome life of the land. And these conditions brought about by irrigation may be extended to the fertile districts receiving sufficient natural rainfall until we shall find that farm life, so uncertain and unattractive in the past, shall become the most attractive of all occupations on account of its freedom and its social and political conditions. Then let us hope that the young man shall return from the college to the farm and help his fellow in building up the most free, enlightened and attractive communities found anywhere in this broad land. It is dangerous to prophesy but I will venture the conjecture that within fifty years in the United States there will be a change in the attitude of young men of good ability. Instead of seeking the law and medicine, and commercial and educational positions, they will return to the farm where they will find full scope for their educated abilities in the industrial, social, economic and political life which it offers.

Editorial Notes.

The supply of short stories and plays for supplementary and sight reading in German is constantly increasing. Within the last few months D. C. Heath & Co., have published in their neat paste-board covers: Helbig's Komodie auf der Hochschule, 100 pages, edited by Professor Wells, of the University of the South; Baumbach's Nicotiana und andere Erzahlungen, 38 pages, edited by Wm. Bernhardt, of the Washington High School; Zschokke's Der Zerbrochene Krug, 30 pages, with composition exercises, edited by Professor Joynes, of South Carolina College; Wildenbruch's Das edle Blut, 40 pages, edited by Professor Schmidt, of the University of Oregon; Ebner-Eschenbach's Die Freiherren von Gemperlein, und Krambambuli, 90 pages, edited by Professor Hohlfeld, of Vanderbilt University,—all supplied with biographical introductions and notes, the second and third with vocabularies.

In the same line Carl Schoenhof has published Spyri's Rosenresli und Der Toni von Kandergrund, 77 pages, in paper, without notes.

Ginn & Co., contribute to the supply of the same demand Rosegger's Waldheimat, 84 pages, in boards, with careful notes by Professor Fossler, of the University of Nebraska. The same house has recently published for Dr. Bernhardt a handsome little volume of exercises in German Composition, consisting of brief German extracts, with outlines for turning the substance of them into independent German constructions either written or oral. While these exercises are molded on the editor's strong individuality, they would prove helpful to many other teachers.

Ginn & Co. also send out a handy French text in Moireau's La Guerre de l' Independance en Amerique, edited by Professor van Daell, of the Institute of Technology.

Professor Hempl's book on German Orthography and Phonology (Ginn & Co.) fills a long felt want. It is very complete, down to date, and above all it is the only popular treatment of the subject in English which is fair and unprejudiced. In this book, for the first time, is the fact frankly faced that there is no such thing as a rigidly fixed and only-correct pronunciation of German. Teachers and students who have molded their pronunciation after that of some educated German and been taken to task by one from another province for not speaking correctly, may find comfort in Professor Hempl's book when they read of the pronunciation of Brandenburg, of Westphalia, of Hesse, of Meissen, of Bavaria, but nowhere of the pronunciation of Germany. If only English dictionaries would be as unprovincial regarding the pronunciation of English!

The Stedman Club, of Topeka, Kansas, has published a pretty souvenir volume containing original verse by the members of the club.

To the monumental work entitled *The New England States*, published by D. H. Hurd & Co., Boston, Rev. E. E. Hale contributes a chapter on "New England in the Colonization of Kansas." Many interesting facts are recorded to spite the rust of time, and Dr. Hale's persistent liking for Kansas finds renewed expression.

"The Trumpeters and other poems," is a volume of unpretentious verses by a Kansan, Mr. Andrew Downing, now of Washington. Poetry is only an avocation with Mr. Downing, but some of his pieces have a finish and a simple truthfulness that are marks of genuine poetry.

Mr. D. A. Ellsworth has printed a "Second Book in Prairie Phrase." There was a decided originality in the first volume, and the quality is not lacking in this, but the dialect is due too much to the spelling. Mr. Ellsworth could write better in plain English,

The special catalogue of the Bartlett Collection in the Harvard Library, on Angling, Fishes and Fish Culture, fills 180 pages, and includes a fac simile of Lowell's poem to John Bartlett.

"Exercises in Conversational German," and "German Grammatical Drill," by Josepha Schrakamp, (Henry Holt & Co.) contain each some good points, especially in the latter the list of words often incorrectly translated. But in both the English sentences are stiff and even sometimes un-English.

The Essentials of Argumentation, by Elias J. MacEwan, Boston, D. C. Heath & Co, $1.12. This book fairly meets the general desire of teachers for a special treatise on argumentation, not too long and technical, easily read and yet adequate in its treatment of the fundamental principles. It occupies a middle ground between the treatises on rhetoric and a more elaborate work on argumentation that has become widely known, and will make a satisfactory text-book for many classes and a valuable reference for all. It is synthetic rather than analytic, being devoted especially to presentation, the uses of the several parts of an argument and the means of making them effective; and while some of its conclusions are questionable from the analytic standpoint, this is merely an incidental matter. Of value to students and teachers are the illustrative selections, outlines, questions for debate, and the glossary of logical terms. E. M. H.

Specimens of the pre-Shaksperean Drama, edited by John Matthews Manly, Athenæum Press Series, Ginn & Co., 1897. Probably superlative adjectives count for rather less in notices of new books than anywhere else in the world. They come easily, they cost nothing, and in the majority of cases they are soon deservedly forgotten, along with the "indispensable," "brilliant," or "remarkable" books that called them forth. No competent person, however, who makes the acquaintance or Professor Manly's work will feel that any praise bestowed upon it is merely the utterance of conventional superlatives and set phrases. It seems not too much to say that the scholarly student of the development of the English drama—in these days there are others—will find it the most helpful single work in the whole range of the literature dealing with the subject. Of the three volumes of which the work is to consist, volumes I and II have now appeared, and in the preface to volume I Professor Manly expresses the hope that the appearance of volume III will not be much longer postponed. The contents of volumes I and II consist of carefully edited texts illustrating the growth and character of the successive dramatic types in England, from the purely ecclesiastical and religious drama of the tenth century to the purely secular drama of the latter part of the sixteenth. Slightly more than one-third of volume I is made up of complete plays taken from the various craft-cycles of scripture plays arranged, as Professor Manly says, in "the order of the subjects in cosmical history." Two of the Digby plays follow, after which some thirty pages are devoted to a class of plays that Professor Manly thinks has been unduly neglected, and of which the Robin Hood plays may

in a loose way be taken as a type. Three short Robin Hood plays are given here among others. Five of the most interesting or characteristic of the English Moralities follow. In spite of the editor's explanation the student will probably regret that the plan of the work could not be made to include the publication of Every Man here. The fiercely satirical *Four PP* of John Heywood and John Bale's morality-chronicle-history *Kynge Johan*, make up the rest of the contents of volume I. Volume II includes eight plays, no one of which is without its peculiar interest to the student of the pre-Shaksperean drama. Among these may be mentioned *Roister Doister*, *Gammer Gurton's Needle Gorboduc*, and *The Spanish Tragedy*. In the preface in volume I Professor Manly announces that the remaining volume will "contain an Introduction, with certain appendices, a body of Notes and a Glossary. "It is to be hoped that the neglect to mention an Index here does not indicate an intention to omit that most necessary feature of a book intended for the use of scholars. R. D. O'L.

Because of the wide interest in the meeting of the National Educational Association at Washington, it should not be forgotten that an important meeting of the same general character, the Trans-Mississippi Educational Convention, planned especially for the educators of the Middle West, was held at Omaha during the last three days of June. General meetings were held in the Omaha Coliseum; and there were numerous department meetings and conferences. Among these may be named tbe following with their managers- Rural Schools, Hon. John R. Kirk. State Superintendent of Public Instruction. Missouri; Colleges and Secondary Schools, President Wm. F. Slocum, Colorado College; Science Teachers, Professor Chas. E. Bessey. University of Nebraska; Manual and Industrial Training, Principal Gilbert B. Morrison, Kansas City; Teachers of Music, Professor C. H. Congdon, St. Paul; History. Professor F. M. Fling, Lincoln, Neb. A Conference in English was under the direction of Professor Edwin M. Hopkins of the University of Kansas, and papers were presented by Dr. L. A. Sherman of Lincoln, Superintendent W. H. Skinner of Nebraska City, Dr. E. A. Allen of the University of Missouri, Profsssor A. E. Jack of Lake Forest, Ill., Professor W. Scott Clark of Northwestern University, and Professor J. V. Denney of Ohio State Universsty.

Vol. VII. JULY, 1898. No. 3.

THE KANSAS UNIVERSITY QUARTERLY.

SERIES B:—PHILOLOGY AND HISTORY.

CONTENTS.

PUBLISHED BY THE UNIVERSITY

Lawrence, Kansas.

Price of this number, 50 cents.

Entered at the Post Office in Lawrence as Second-class Matter.

ADVERTISEMENT.

THE KANSAS UNIVERSITY QUARTERLY is maintained by the University of Kansas as a medium for the publication of the results of original research by members of the University. Papers will be published only on recommendation of the Committee of Publication. Contributed articles should be in the hands of the Committee at least one month prior to the date of publication. A limited number of author's *separata* will be furnished free to contributors.

Beginning with Vol. VI the QUARTERLY will appear in two Series: A, Science and Mathematics; B, Philology and History.

The QUARTERLY is issued regularly, as indicated by its title. Each number contains one hundred or more pages of reading matter, with necessary illustrations. The four numbers of each year constitute a volume. The price of subscription is two dollars a volume, single numbers varying in price with cost of publication Exchanges are solicited.

Communications should be addressed to

W. H. CARRUTH,
University of Kansas,
Lawrence.

This Journal is on file in the office of the *University Review*, New York City

JOURNAL PUBLISHING COMPANY
LAWRENCE, KANSAS

KANSAS UNIVERSITY QUARTERLY.

VOL. VII. JULY, 1898. No. 3.

The Tone of Literature and the Writer's Responsibility.*

BY ARTHUR GRAVES CANFIELD.

I presume that I need offer no excuse for choosing as my subject on this occasion what may be considered a literary theme. Common opinion attributes to the Phi Beta Kappa society a more or less pronounced literary aim. The traditions of the public exercises of its older chapters are in accord with this opinion. Such a leaning towards literature was rather implied by the founding of the sister society of Sigma Xi, with its special devotion to the cause of mathematical, physical and natural sciences. No doubt common opinion is right. The society of Phi Beta Kappa does cultivate and foster a distinctly literary tradition. Among its ends and interests literature does hold a high place,—perhaps one would not be wrong in saying the highest place. But what it understands by literature is no mere pastime and play of the mind, no adornment of elegant leisure, no superior and refined accomplishment of a formal culture. It would take issue directly with every opinion, common or otherwise, that views literature as a kind of intellectual dissipation, a kind of fancy-work and embroidery of the intellectual life, or as a thing apart from every day life, not to be taken home to men's "business and bosoms," or as merely a technical and professional affair, a matter of special rules and principles. It deplores the implication of antagonism or opposition contained in the division of the domain of scholarship into two

*An address before the Phi Beta Kappa Society of the University of Kansas.

portions, one scientific and one literary. It contends that what we call science and what we call literature are parts of one great and indivisible knowledge. It recognizes the rare interest and charm and the exceedingly great and peculiar value of the part called science. But it has also the conviction that literature too is a kind of knowledge, and it is deeply impressed with a sense of the interest, charm and value of this kind of knowledge. It echoes the declaration of Sir Philip Sidney when he says in his sober and eloquent Defence of Poesie: "I still and utterly deny that there is sprung out of the earth a more fruitful knowledge." It welcomes the broadening conquest of the world we live in and is glad of each recruit for the army that is storming the fortresses of the physical unknown. But it also longs for the conquest of the world that lives in us, and echoes eagerly the call of Clough for soldiers to reduce the strongholds of our moral and spiritual darkness.

Come, poet, come:
A thousand laborers ply their task,
And what it tends to scarcely ask,
And trembling thinkers on the brink
Shiver, and know not how to think.
To tell the purport of their pain
And what our silly joys contain;
In lasting lineaments portray
The substance of the shadowy day;
Our real and inner deeds rehearse,
And make our meaning clear in verse:
Come, poet, come! for but in vain
We do the work or feel the pain,
And gather up the seeming gain,
Unless before the end thou come
To take, ere they be lost, their sum.

This telling of the purport of our pain, this portraying of the substance of the shadowy day, this taking of the sum of what we do and feel, this interpretation of life, of the common life that we all lead, what is it but the very essence of literature? And is it not a real and a fruitful knowledge?

This is the idea of literature, I am sure, that has inspired the traditions of Phi Beta Kappa—a fruitful knowledge, an interpretation of life, an application of ideas to the business of living. And viewing literature in this way, is it not clear that a literary discussion, if it goes to the root of the matter, must always have a vital practical kernel, can never be altogether a technical affair, like the discussion of the construction of a machine or the rules of a game? Beyond and beneath every question of form will be

the question of substance and idea, and every discussion beginning in a question of art will be found to end in a question of truth and of life.

Holding such opinions of the work upon which the writer is nearly or remotely engaged, I venture to think that a discussion of the tone of our literature and of the individual writer's responsibility therefor may not be without some general interest and some chance of profit.

I may as well say at the outset that *our* literature is not taken in any narrow sense, as if what we are specially concerned with were only the literature of our State or even of our Nation. Young communities are wont to be very sensitive on the point of literary independence, and to seek to make apparent for literature the boundaries of their domains. They feel more or less clearly that political independence is only a means, not an end; that a commonwealth is not distinguished merely by not being governed by outsiders, by regulating the forms of its own civil life. They are conscious, if only dimly, that the real distinction of a people or of a community is to be found in the moral substance beneath its forms, in the vitality and power of its ideal life, which will find a measure in its achievements in science, art and letters; and they are eager to claim for their life in the moral and intellectual region the same independence that they have achieved in their political relations. This is very apparent in the discussions about the nationality of literature. We in the United States have never ceased to be troubled with the question whether there is an American literature, and essays addressed to this question continue to appear in our magazines and to give alternately affirmative and negative answers. Not much over a year ago Mr. Woodrow Wilson answered it in the negative, and bewailed the "conservatism and timidity of our American literature." He would allow but two men of letters to claim a place in his "calendar of Great Americans," Curtis and Lowell; and even Lowell allowed his real self to speak but twice, and then in dialect. Of all the rest, Irving, Cooper, Poe, Bryant, Hawthorne, Longfellow, Emerson, Whittier, Holmes, Prescott, Motley, Bancroft, Parkman, not one can present credentials to satisfy Mr. Wilson. All are cosmopolitan, provincial, or English. But this need not trouble us much, and will not, if we are reminded that the territorial boundaries that figure in international treaties have no counterpart in the world of science, art and letters; that nationality, in the sense of being the moral and intellectual independence and separateness of a people,

is, if it have any distinctness, a growth of ages, and does not spring into being all at once, and that literature is never in such a degree original as to be wholly sufficient to itself. Each generation is nurtured on the intellectual possessions and acquirements of the one that went before it; and in these days, when all the world is brought nearer for the communication of its thoughts and doings than was a single county a hundred years ago, no people can remain exclusive towards the intellectual goods of the rest without inviting narrowness and stagnation. That is not the way to acquire that powerful intellectual and spiritual life of which literature is the outcome. All literature is ours that is accessible to us by being in a common tongue and proceeding from a common intellectual inheritance.

It may be well also to assure you at once that this discussion proceeds from no pessimistic view of the present tone of literature, and is not to be a wail over the decadence of the moral standard in letters, or a lament that the "former days were better than these." I do not mean to deny that there are features about many recent books, and not the least popular ones, that may be taken as signs and symptoms of a kind of moral chaos, or that current literature is by any means free from positive and flagrant offences against good morals. I fancy that when the tone of our literature is discussed nowadays one is generally thinking of the great number of books that deal critically with marriage and that treat the relations of sex with great frankness, detail and complacency, and that this is regarded as something so important as seriously to characterize and define the tone of our literature. It does seem that there is a group of performers in our literary orchestra, possibly growing larger, and perhaps with a first fiddle or two among them, who are sawing and tooting away on this note. But it is a question whether they dominate the whole body of sound in any such way as to impose a tone upon it. There has certainly been a considerable body of literary matter presented to the public in the last few years that we must flatly call coarse and vulgar in tone. But there has also been a considerable body that we must admit to have been distinctly refined and noble. And when time comes to strike a balance between them I should not be surprised if the relative importance of the coarse and vulgar part were represented on his ledger by a much smaller fraction than the one that measures the current estimate of to-day. We should be slow to generalize from even glaring examples. There are two considerations especially that should give us pause. In the first place

we must remember that coarseness and vulgarity are not new inventions in literature. The Elizabethans had a pretty strong stomach for such things. The carnal man and the baits of the world, the flesh and the devil were not exactly tabooed subjects with them. Despite the philological fascination of a disputed authorship, I believe Titus Andronicus is not usually set for study in college classes, and the editions of plays of undisputed authorship prescribed for use of students in coeducational institutions do not usually present a text dictated solely by the canons of textual criticism. And Shakspere was not worse but better than his fellows. And yet coarseness and vulgarity are not what we think of first in the works of the opening seventeenth century; these have proved to be of less enduring importance than other things for the tone of that literature.

In the second place we should remember also that the estimate in question is based undoubtedly upon novels only, and that the novel, which chiefly offers us these examples of fleshliness, is not all of literature, even in this day and generation, when it seems to have followed the general tendency towards trusts and combinations and to exercise a monopoly of the whole output of the industry of letters. It may be granted that the novel has a greater relative importance now than at any previous moment, though personally I am not so perfectly sure of it, and that it is practically for a great mass of readers their only point of contact with literature. But it is to be borne in mind that bulk and importance are different things, and that mere bulk can never be the basis of our judgment of what is characteristic of a literature. If that were so we should have to give to the Fireside Companion, the New York Weekly and Every Saturday Night a more serious consideration than we usually think it necessary to accord to them. It is altogether likely that no later than fifty years hence the novel of to-day will already have dwindled when placed alongside the other forms of literature. A glance at the past will fortify us in our conviction. As we look back at the generation that has just vanished, Tennyson and the Brownings and Morris and Arnold loom up quite commandingly, even when we have in our eye at the same time Dickens and Thackeray and George Eliot. But forty years ago, I doubt not, the novel seemed to the great public to fill the field very much as it does now. Bulwer was then a name to conjure by, but I hear it fall from people's lips very rarely now, and many an other once sonorous name has grown very faint and thin in our ears to-day. As we look back from our vantage ground upon the

years around 1830 in France it is poetry and poetic drama that seems to give the dominant note, although Balzac and George Sand were making their beginnings. But I have a partial list of novels that appeared between the years 1825 and 1835, and when I look that over I can well believe that to the readers of that day it must have seemed that the novel absorbed the literary forces of the nation. There are about fifteen hundred titles, or about three novels a week for the whole time, and among the authors of them there are many who quite filled the public eye, but who are already within their own century become but the shadow of a shade.

It is not then as an alarmist, who detects in the present tone of our literature a corruption that fills him with foreboding and prompts him to sound a note of warning, that I come to this discussion of the writer's responsibilities. Indeed I might confess that all effort to ascertain and define the present tone of literature seems to me doomed to be futile. What impresses me most at each new attempt to survey the field is its immensity and variety. Who can know, even in a loose and general way, the character of each of the books, or let us rather say, to abide by the one form of literature that, as we have seen, is given a disproportionate present importance, of each of the novels that make up the appalling stream constantly issuing from the presses and threatening us with inundation? And if such a prodigy could be found, is it likely that he could strike an average of their perplexing varieties and contradictions, or, striking it, would find it constant from one month to another, or even from week to week? I submit that he must have some courage who would offer to declare what is the dominant, controlling, pervasive tone of this great complex and infinitely various literature of English speech now forming. Suppose we should find one hundred persons who would venture to declare it, how many do you think would agree? It is not a single tone that we hear, but a great chorus, rather a great orchestra of various instruments, some of strings, some of wind, some of wood, some of brass, having the kettle-drum as well as the flute and the triangle as well as the violin, from which not even the Chinese gong, the horse-fiddle and the steam calliope are absent—a mad mob of an orchestra, half of the instruments out of tune, each playing away desperately at his own score, and very few scores alike, symphony of Beethoven, Gospel Hymn, nocturne of Chopin, oratorio, Irish jig, each in his own time, each in his own key—who shall detect a fundamental tone beneath all this strident, blatant chaos of noise? By and by, no doubt, when the world shall have

drawn away a little space from the present day and the sound shall have been softened by distance and the harsh loud notes shall have ceased from the air—for sounds do not carry in proportion as they are loud and harsh,—a later generation will discover in the strains that reach its ear from us a kind of harmony. It is thus that as we listen to the volume of song that is borne on to us from past literary ages we hear in many, if not in all, some deep and sustained note, a tone which all separate instruments echo and repeat. So we characterize literary epochs; so we name them from some one whose voice has carried on the winds of time better than the voices of others, whom we fancy as the director of the orchestra of his day, imposing time and tune on all the rest. But the nearer we come by study and research to those vanished ages the louder and more discordant rise the voices that distance has made mute. The Elizabethan age is full of voices that do not accord with those that we know as Elizabethans. The classic age of Louis XIV resounds with unclassical and anti-classical pipings. Posterity, listening through time's screen, hears of all the clashing tones only a grand, full harmony. But who of us shall listen to the orchestra of our own time with the ear of posterity?

Is there indeed a tone vibrating in contemporary literature that the opposite of it is not also struck? Is there Tess of the D'Urbervilles? There is also a Lilac Sunbonnet. Is there Trilby? There is also the Country of the Pointed Firs. Is there a Lady of Quality? There is also Marcella. Is there Stanley J. Weyman? These is also William Dean Howells. Is there Robert Louis Stevenson? There is also Henry James. If one is radical, another is conservative. If one is nasty, another is clean. If one is intense, another is trivial; if one is realistic, another is romantic; if one is contemporary, another is historical; if one is pessimistic, another is optimistic; if one is sensual, another is spiritual. Nor is it clear that any one kind outweighs the other in the balance. At one moment it may seem to do so, but at the next it is pretty sure to be another that appears to turn the scale.

We will put aside, then, all questions as to what the tone of our literature is; and we can do this without harm to our discussion because the measure of the writer's responsibility for what he writes, be the tone of it what it may, good or bad, high or low, will remain the same. We do not need to know whether his work is coarse or refined to guage the extent of his responsibility for it.

Now in seeking this measure of the writer's responsibility we

need to know first those things that limit and curtail his freedom. And we think naturally and inevitably of those great currents of thought, feeling, and action by which he is surrounded, and of his dependence upon them. We ask what are the influences of environment and heredity that bind him round and impose upon him the narrow limits within which his choice can be exercised. When we try to account for the general characteristics of a literature in a given time, the general view of things from which it proceeds, the general average, so to speak, of its ideas and sentiments, we have become persuaded that the individual writer rather submits to these, that they are determined by a kind of logical, historical necessity, or evolution, to use the word that now occupies so broad a field. This is the point of view so brilliantly championed by Taine in his history of English literature, and which later critics have tried to make more positive and certain.

Such deep marks of its time our literature can hardly escape having. Few ages of the world have witnessed such a profound transformation of ideas, such a complete shifting of the point of view, such a thoroughgoing readjustment of our conceptions of the world of matter and the world of man. And if there is anything, as we have seen, with which literature is seriously concerned it is these things. Every age is in a very real way an age of transition, for humanity is incessantly engaged in an effort to adapt the forms of its life, individual, social, and political, to its conception of what right and justice and happiness demand that they should be and of what the nature of things permits them to become; in other words, in an effort to realize its ideals. Something of the past is always being abrogated, and something new is continually being devised. But those times especially deserve to be known as ages of transition which succeed a great change in fundamental ideas of God, Nature and Man. Such a change came with the revival of learning, and mediaevalism came to an end, and there was the renaissance and the reformation. Such a change came again in the eighteenth century with the birth of the democratic idea and the principle of individualism, and there was the French Revolution and the revolutionary age. Such a change has come again in our century with the conquests of physical and biological science and the new view of man's relation to the world he lives in which those conquests have built up, and "it doth not yet appear what shall be." But we see the confusion and unrest that are the symptoms of such ages. Old standards have lost their currency. Human experience is distrusted and people lose the sense of its authority,

which is the basis of all conservatism. The impulse is to discard all conclusions about life of men who have been convicted of such ignorance as we now know to have existed. How indeed should we trust the experience of men who did not know where their livers were nor whether a lobster is a fish? Is it possible that there can be any value for us in the feelings and judgments of men who believed that the world was made in six literal days, or that God will hold fire from burning, water from drowning or pitch from defiling if we but ask him to do so? That the impulse is not wholly logical, and that men with a very wrong idea of human anatomy and even of theology may have a very penetrating vision for the secrets of human motive and will, may be suggested; but that, as Mr. Kipling says, is another story. It is none the less true that the notion of all-pervading law and the larger view of the mechanism of existence have made a great many current modes of thinking untenable; already not a few of the ideas of yesterday are as outworn and archaic as if they had come down from Homer's time.

Is it strange that all this finds its living image in literature? Literature being the interpretation of life, how could it fail to be so? It is only natural that the mode of transition it now presents is more radical and violent than that of ordinary times. The impeachment of the existing order is likely to be sweeping. The impulse to discredit the old throws away the good with the bad. Criticism does not stop at details; it lays the axe at the root of the tree. It does not propose to alleviate present conditions merely, to apply some remedial measures to the institutions that we have, but it suspects or roundly condemns the foundations on which they rest, and would raze them to the ground to clear the way for something new. So we have the novels that deal with social reform, like Looking Backward and Equality and the rest; so we have the many that with more or less serious purpose deal with the institution of marriage. We must not dismiss them simply by saying that they offend our moral sense. Of course they do, because our moral sense is in more or less complete harmony with the traditional and conventional standard, while they, or at least many of them, start from a distinct distrust of that standard. That does not mean a low moral tone. This temporary unsettling of the moral standards, this hesitation and contradiction about moral values, are marks not of moral indifference but of moral curiosity and are a part of that general ferment of ideas and readjustment of conceptions of which I have spoken.

For such marks of his time as these we shall not hold the writer responsible. He submits to them as he does to the language in which he writes. Do they impose upon his work what we mean by its tone? I think not. For is there not after all infinite variety of tone, from low to high and from coarse to refined, among those who equally show the profound impress of the age to which they belong?. And this is true even of those who have professed to take their literary doctrine from the new order of ideas. If there is any direction in which a result of this movement of ideas might with some justice be held to involve the tone of literature it is in the reinforcement it has lent to realism. No doubt the effect of this movement, going out as it did from the physical and natural sciences, was to emphasize the scientific method, to inculcate the respect for observed facts, to discredit imagination or what passed for it, and to hold the artist to a rigorous fidelity to the real models that he studied. No doubt also it tended to lay stress on the material basis of the phenomena of life and conduct and to lead the artist to thrust the life of the body into the foreground under the impression that he was following the method of psychology when it seeks a basis in physiology. And this last result, had it been reached as widely as in France and been as conspicuous as there in as large a part of the most vigorous work, would, it must be conceded, have gone far to justify one in saying that the tone of our whole literature was affected. But this extreme development of the realistic creed and practice was not so widely accepted by the rising generation of writers in English. The English mind never goes so straight and unhesitatingly as the French to the extreme logical conclusion, prudently stopping every few feet along the way to take note of the practical consequences. So while realism has been the dominant current in English letters, it has been for the most part a reserved and cautious realism, preserving a decent respect for the proprieties. With some of its most devoted champions, as with Mr. Howells for instanee, it has led rather to a practice of the scientific method of a patiently minute observation of conduct and the careful noting of every least detail, however trivial and insignificant in appearance, than to the theoretical exaltation of the body as the ultimate arbiter of life's issues and the only reality under life's illusions. So Mr. Howells has given several of his years to the celebration of the commonplace, and though the outcome of it is a little dreary and one comes to feel that before attacking one of his novels of this period it is helpful to fortify one's self with a cup of strong coffee, the tone, morally speaking, is above reproach.

There is then, no doubt, an intellectual and moral atmosphere that is the especial mark of our time. To a few of the elements that compose it I have just alluded. To take the sum of them would be a task far too great to begin here. Taine found it a work taxing all his dexterity, though he had the advantage of dealing mostly with finished periods, which had already been partly cleared of their lumber, and where the sum that he was to find was already more than half footed up by time. It is very much easier to take the sum of a group of forces when we can see their resultant recorded in the movement of history. To do it for the present, where the resultant does not yet appear, is a far more hazardous undertaking. We may the more willingly renounce it for our present purpose since we have seen that this atmosphere supports the greatest variety of life, and can hardly be held to curtail the writer's freedom with regard to that quality which we call his tone.

It is more necessary to consider another set of influences of great practical moment, which might easily be held to make a part of this intellectual and moral atmosphere, but which seem to me to deserve quite a different estimate. This set of influences may be suggested by the terms *reading public, public taste, general demand.* It would be more difficult to explain away certain conspicuous facts, and to maintain that the calculation of popular success does not often dictate a compromise with conscience, a yielding to sensationalism, and a pandering to curiosities and feelings that certainly do not belong to the better part of our nature. For have we not seen the great public grow wildly enthusiastic over some of the books that suggest the inquiry as to the tone of our literature, heap them with sweet superlatives, and find them utterly charming, or perhaps even sublimely moral, purifying and uplifting? But we can understand such popular judgments without being driven to the conclusion that they represent the moral and intellectual atmosphere that is characteristic of our time.

In the first place the great public is as complex and heterogeneous as the literature that is made for it. The audience is no more of one mind or of one taste than the orchestra which plays for it. Each one listens for his favorite instrument. There are actually not a few who like the gong, the steam calliope and the horse fiddle. On going out from an excellent concert in this hall once upon a time I heard one of the audience, and I must confess to my confusion that he had enjoyed for some time the refining influences of this institution, pass this comment to his companion: 'Yes, it was very good; but you ought to hear old Cesar Prince

play on the banjo." There are in the great public elements of almost every conceivable taste, moral and intellectual; and one gives as eager a welcome to The Woman Who Did as another to A Singular Life. This diversity of the reading public has grown immensely of late years, with the diffusion of education and the great cheapening of books; and a very significant thing about it is that this growth has multiplied especially the numbers of the lower strata of readers. Now all read, or nearly all; and the purveyors of literature can reckon on the taste of the cook in the kitchen and the butler in the pantry, the girls in the shops and cabby on his box. Publishers and writers have discovered how large is this constituency, and fortunes have been made in catering to it.

In the second place, individual taste is not entirely independent, and the average reader is not very self-reliant in the formation of his literary judgments. He will often profess an admiration for a book that is as far as may be from those norms of thinking and living that he practically commends in the best possible way, by following them. Within certain limits example provokes imitation, and enthusiasm is contagious.

In the third place, the vogue of a book is not a very accurate measure of the size of that part of the public which its tone appeals to and satisfies. We read a book not because we know we are going to agree with it, but because other people are reading it and talking about it. Books that are very widely read and talked about are not necessarily those that fall in with the opinions of the largest fraction of the great public. Let enthusiasm greet a work in one circle and it will easily be communicated to neighboring ones. It need only have met with great applause and praise from a small fraction, if it be the right one. And what is this right fraction, the one whose applause has so much to do with the immediate vogue of a book? I suspect that it is the fraternity of the press. Events have recently dealt some staggering blows to the old conception of the power of the press, at least its power to influence voters. But I nevertheless believe that the manner of a book's reception by the press has much to do with the number of readers it gets during the first year or two, and with the amount of general comment and discussion that it elicits. The press seems in a special manner accredited to pronounce on what appears to belong distinctively to its domain. The printed word seems to carry the presumption of superior competence in all questions concerning books, which are themselves things of print. He who writes criticisms that are

printed must belong to the profession. He might perhaps even make a book himself. He is of the craft. He knows the tricks and secrets of the trade. He is full of the esoteric mysteries of the art of letters. He surely must know how to tell a good book from a bad one, and it must be a sad confession of our dullness and ignorance if we cannot fan our enthusiasm into a little glow when his flames up so eagerly and so splendidly. Now the book-reviewing fraternity of the press has also its diversity of tones and tastes; it is in no wise agreed as to its canons of criticism, if indeed it has any aside from individual likes and dislikes, and its verdict hardly ever even approaches unanimity. And yet, with all the individual differences between reviewers, a majority of them agree in a certain common unlikeness to the average non-professional reader and in being removed from his point of view. The question of art is more with them, and the question of morals less. They yield their admiration to good workmanship. Deftness and skill in the use of the literary tools; sure command of strong effects; grasp of dramatic situation; power or picturesqueness in expression—these are things the professional taster of books delights in. As for cleanliness of the material, wholesomeness of sentiment, sanity of view, ripe wisdom of judgment and breadth of outlook, these he is prone to note only in second place, if he note them at all. And if perchance he descend to these, the real solid foundation of all art, it is to view them according to standards that are no longer those of the plain, inartistic people who are the readers of what he writes. They, alas! are Philistines. They go on reciting the ten commandments as if they were fixed lights in the moral heaven. They practice the traditional humdrum virtues; they quake before violated social prejudice or conventions; they worship at the shrine of bourgeois respectability. But he, the reviewer, is emancipated. His world, at least if he belong to the press of the great cities, wears somewhat the aspect of Bohemia, where Mrs. Grundy's horror only causes a smile, where convention is more honored in the breach than in the observance, where stern-visaged puritanical virtue offends and is frowned upon as a prude, and where old vices have crept in and found shelter under the indulgent eye of an all embracing urbanity. It is in this region, if I am not mistaken, that Trilby and her ilk find their readiest acceptance; it is there that the flourish of trumpets is blown that greets them on their triumphant entry upon the stage. Were it not for the flourish of trumpets I am persuaded that the great public of readers would often fail to discover that the personage so heralded is a king.

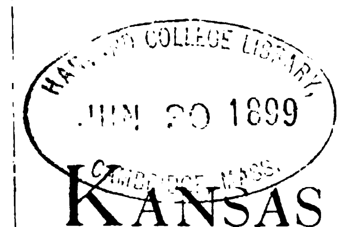
If it appears that a dish appeals to the palate of a great body of eaters or to that of their accredited tasters somewhat in proportion to the spice with which it is seasoned, no doubt a great pressure is put upon the cook to make his dishes hot. Whether the writer depend upon his pen for his living or not, the great rewards of immediate fame and wealth come from popular success. But pressure does not remove responsibility; it makes it more acutely felt. All that has been brought forward, therefore, in no way lessens the real responsibility of the writer for his work. In spite of all that is imposed upon him by the spirit of his time and in spite of all conditions of popular success, I affirm positively and completely the moral responsibility of the writer. To belong to one's time and to cater to its depraved and vicious instincts are different things, and when the writer crosses the line that separates them we may and must hold him strictly to account. We are too much in the habit, I am afraid, of absolving the writer from responsibility by the reflection that he would not write as he does if the public did not demand it. I would not deny the measure of truth in the current opinion that the public is responsible for the quality of the newspapers and books that it gets. Surely the great public will, in the long run, get the kind of newspapers and books that it wants and that it deserves. It will be responsible for wanting them and for buying them. But is that all there is of it? Has the one who satisfies its want no responsibility? Does responsibility end when a general want can be shown? Not every business that ministers to a largely felt want is held reputable. Saloon-keepers are not generally absolved from responsibility for the character of their calling because so many people want what they sell. I do not know what the legal accountability of an agent may be, but in the eyes of most honest people the man who hires out to do a dirty piece of work is not free from responsibility because a great many people contributed to the purse which is his reward. They want the dirty work done, no doubt; they want the whisky, the carouse, the debauch; and they are responsible for trying to get them. And the one who provides for their wants, for gain, is he not responsible? I can not help setting his responsibility a little higher, at least a *little* higher, than that of each individual of the great mass whom he serves. For he has not really waited for the want to be expressed; he has not been offering them wholesome drink till they have refused it and demanded stronger, heavier and more brain-stealing liquors. He has studied their appetite, he has surprised its secrets and its shames, and then has been ingenious and

tireless in inventing ways of baiting it and pandering to it. The writer who increases his profits from a circulation depending on the appeal to low instincts and bad passions is in the position of one who hires himself out to do dirty work. And I do not believe that any pressure of competition lifts his responsibility or essentially mitigates his fault. That plea might in a pinch be advanced for the reporter whose daily bread depends upon his daily copy, and whose freedom is strictly limited by the policy of his paper and the fear of the editor over his head. though I should not like to press this excuse very hard even in his case. But the writer composing a book in view of a possible popular success is in no such hand to hand struggle with starvation. It is not a living that is at stake with him, but fortune. He is not working to keep himself and his alive; he is working to get rich, or possibly only to get richer. And if it should actually come to a question of a bare living, and if we are not prepared to overrule, in the summary way of the French king of the anecdote, the plea that a man must live, there are other ways of living than by writing books, ways in which competition does not crowd one to a sacrifice of self-respect. Say what we will of the public taste and of the demand created by vicious instincts, it is not a demand that can be enforced at the point of the pistol. The one who yields to it does so in the safe quiet of his study and after a deliberate choice. If he resolve to purchase a ticket in the lottery of fame, or a month's or a year's supply of bread, at a sacrifice of pure thoughts and high ideals, *he* is responsible therefor and no other. I am afraid there has been loose thinking on this matter, and that we have talked so much about people having the laws, the newspapers, the schools, the literature, and everything else, that they deserve, that we have really come to think that we are all helpless to do anything but that which falls in with the popular desire and the wants and feelings of the great mass, that wise and virtuous leadership consists in finding out where the people are going and in getting ahead of them, and that everybody's great duty is to represent his constituency, to adapt himself to his environment. But we must not forget that one distinction of man is his great power to modify his environment. If he is to continue to give his conduct a moral content he must make his environment, or at the very least he must choose it. Not everyone wants a nasty book or an empty one; and he who writes for those who do rather than for those who do not can not be released from responsibility for so doing. We must pass on him one of two unfavorable judgments: either he is himself unclean or he has sold his conscience for a price.

I maintain then practically without restriction the responsibility of the writer for the moral quality and effect, the tone, of what he writes. And literature being the illumining criticism of life, the fruitful knowledge, that we have held it to be, this responsibility can sit in no light and easy way upon his shoulders. In proportion to the extent of his opportunity and privilege must our condemnation fall upon him if he abuses them or uses them for harm. It may indeed be objected that literature, in the sense in which we have been speaking of it, is far above the aspirations of the ordinary writer, and that its high demands can have no validity for him, "the idle *scribbler* of an empty day." Certainly only the vastly smaller part of printed papers and printed books deserves the high distinction that belongs to literature in the narrower and higher meaning of the word—to that precious wheat that time's slow winnowing has separated from the chaff on the great threshing floor of letters. Not all writings certainly are in equal measure a fruitful knowledge; not all equally illumine the tangled facts of motive and will and interpret life. Yet that is the purpose and function of all. And as a matter of fact is this not practically accepted? Are they not all treated as if they did these things? What shallow and sensational story has failed to color in some way some threads of motive or desire that some ignorant boy has tried to weave into the pattern of his experience, or to furnish some shape for the dreams of some poor girl towards the semblance of which her future has vaguely struggled? Is it not because practically all things having the outward printed appearance of literature share its privilege and distinction that the printed word enjoys such, often undue, authority? If it were not rooted in the consciousness of men, even below their consciousness in the deep silences of immemorial habit, to accord practically this function to literature as a whole, why should an anonymous nobody in print have more authority than a score of your trustworthy, sensible neighbors speaking by word of mouth? It is because the writer, be he never so humble, paragrapher, local reporter or anything else, has behind him in some vague way the august figure of literature that his written words have a greater weight than those that fall from the lips of ordinary mortals. And for that reason his responsibilities are not the common ones merely that all must feel for their private speech. We hear frequent lament that the press is losing its influence and its authority. It may be true. If it is, it can only be the writer's fault, because he has not lived up to the dignity and responsibility of his calling, but has frittered away in

triviality, and squandered in untruth, and debauched in uncleanness, the inheritance of power that was his because he was the child, at least the adopted child, of literature, which is and ever will be the kindly nurse of our race, at whose knee we all spell out the alphabet of living, and listen entranced and breathless while she charms us with her tales of wonder, kindles our imagination, fills our inward eye with stately forms and gracious faces, or teaches us some lilting ditty, or, when we are over-wearied with our lessons and our play, croons a soft lullaby that soothes us off to sleep.

Vol. VII. APRIL, 1899 No. 4.



THE KANSAS UNIVERSITY QUARTERLY.

SERIES B:—PHILOLOGY AND HISTORY.

CONTENTS.

PUBLISHED BY THE UNIVERSITY

LAWRENCE, KANSAS,

Price of this number, 50 cents.

Entered at the Post Office in Lawrence as Second-class Matter.

ADVERTISEMENT.

THE KANSAS UNIVERSITY QUARTERLY is maintained by the University of Kansas as a medium for the publication of the results of original research by members of the University. Papers will be published only on recommendation of the Committee of Publication. Contributed articles should be in the hands of the Committee at least one month prior to the date of publication. A limited number of author's *separata* will be furnished free to contributors.

Beginning with Vol. VI the QUARTERLY will appear in two Series: A, Science and Mathematics; B, Philology and History.

The QUARTERLY is issued regularly, as indicated by its title. Each number contains one hundred or more pages of reading matter, with necessary illustrations. The four numbers of each year constitute a volume. The price of subscription is two dollars a volume, single numbers varying in price with cost of publication Exchanges are solicited.

Communications should be addressed to

W. H. CARRUTH,
University of Kansas,
Lawrence.

This Journal is on file in the office of the *University Review*, New York City

JOURNAL PUBLISHING COMPANY
LAWRENCE, KANSAS

KANSAS UNIVERSITY QUARTERLY.



VOL. VII. APRIL, 1899. No. 4.

The Sequence of Tenses in Latin.

An Investigation Based on Cæsar's Gallic War.

BY ARTHUR TAPPAN WALKER.

INTRODUCTION.

The object of my investigation is to determine just how far the tenses of the subjunctive correspond in meaning and usage to those of the indicative, and whether there is any mechanical "sequence of tenses" in the one mood which does not appear in the other. My theory of the uses of the tenses and the starting point of my investigation are furnished by Professor William Gardner Hale's papers on The Sequence of Tenses, in the American Journal of Philology, VII, 4 (1886); VIII, 1 (1887); IX, 2 (1888). In that study he takes the ground that the tenses of the Subjunctive always (or with very few exceptions)* have their own meanings and that there is no such thing as a mechanical sequence of tenses. As will appear later, I am led to agree fully with the first half of this proposition; but the second half does not necessarily follow, and with it I can not agree.

In a foot-note of his last paper Professor Hale makes the statement: "It has been my intention to prepare complete statistics of

*For these see A. J. P. VIII, pp. 54-56. This discussion of them is summarized in A. J. P. IX, pp. 18-19 of reprint, as follows:
"In a great number of cases of what is called the subjunctive 'by assimilation,' the modal feeling which in the main clause expresses itself in the subjunctive of a certain tense continues to exist, either unchanged in kind, or only slightly shaded, in the clauses attached to it, and is therefore expressd by the same mode, and by a tense that indicates the same point of view. But the frequent recurrence of such examples gives rise to the occasional use of a dependent subjunctive with only a formal likeness to the main subjunctive, and no true modal feeling: and it is the common opinion that in such cases the tense is likewise purely formal."

the uses of the tenses in dependent indicative clauses in the Gallic War, but other occupations oblige me to postpone the plan. I have already gone far enough, however, to warrant the statements made in the present paper." As he has never found it possible to carry out this plan, he has allowed me to undertake the work.

In its boldest and baldest form the "rule of the sequence" simply says that in subjunctive subordinate clauses primary tenses follow primary and secondary follow secondary, leaving a natural impression that the tenses of the subjunctive are meaningless and depend only formally on the tense of the main verb. This form of the doctrine is the one which Professor Hale set out to attack especially. It is safe to say that no one now advocates such a doctrine. Every one admits that the tenses of the subjunctive have some meaning, though there might be a difference of opinion as to the amount and kind of this meaning.* It is an undoubted fact that the tenses of the subjunctive do follow this rule in the great majority of cases. No one is prepared to say how far this is due to the logical relation of ideas in the sentence, as expressed by tense, and how far it is due to a mechanical blurring of these relationships by a formal sequence of tense. This is the question to the solution of which this paper is intended to contribute.

Professor Hale's method of attacking the doctrine in his first paper was to collect a large number of exceptions to the rule and show that in each case the tenses in them were used because they expressed what the writer had to say. Therefore the subjunctive tenses had meanings. Therefore it was fair to suppose that all subjunctives had tense force even if used in sequence. In his second paper he answered a number of objections to his own theory and adduced a number of positive arguments in its favor. For example, the aorist subjunctive may depend on a present, but verbs depending on it are usually in secondary sequence. This can not be explained by the rule, but is very simple on the theory that the tenses of the subjunctive have meaning. From this discussion he concluded that the "tenses of the Latin subjunctive, alike in dependent and in independent sentences, tell their own temporal story,—that no such thing as is meant by the doctrine of the sequence of tenses exists." This left his position open to attack on two sides. On the one side Professor Gildersleeve (A. J. P. Vol. VIII, p. 228)†

* It is unfortunate, however, that even the latest of the American grammars give but a scanty treatment of the meanings of the subjunctive tenses and still cling closely to the mechanical rule. This course may be pedagogically easier, and the admirable treatment of the tenses in Lattmann Mueller may be too full for pedagogical purposes, but the contrast is not creditable to our books.

† Professor Hale's reply to this is given in his third paper, which also gives a full treatment of the meanings of the subjunctive tenses.

argued that these exceptions did not necessarily prove more than that where the strain on tense meaning was too great an exception might occur, but in spite of these exceptions there was a certain amount of flattening out of the fine distinctions of tense in the subjunctive, due to sequence. And, on the other side, as I have already said, I hope to show at the end of this paper that, even granting that every tense of the subjunctive always has its own meaning, it would not necessarily follow that there was no such thing as sequence of tenses,—even a mechanical one.

A part of Professor Hale's purpose in his plan of collecting the statistics for the indicative tenses was to show that in the great majority of cases the indicative follows the rule of sequence, and that therefore it would not do to state a rule for the one mood more than for the other. He intended to do more than this, however. A simple enlargement of this plan would have been to count the exceptions in the subjunctive as well, and compare the two moods in that way. But this would not have been sufficient. After the work had been done it would still have been open for any one to say that in an unknown number of cases the subjunctive tenses had been flattened out in meaning. If, however, it is impossible to make out the exact meaning of each tense of the indicative and subjunctive, and the exact relationship of each subordinate tense to its principal verb, we can then see just how much of this flattening has taken place in the subjunctive over and above that which has befallen the indicative tenses. And this was the task Professor Hale had set himself, which I have endeavored to carry out.

My method has been as follows: I have made as careful an examination as possible of every tense in Cæsar's Gallic War. It seemed useless for my purpose to give statistics for the relations of the independent aorists, or most independent presents and futures to each other, and they have been cut out, though presents depending on aorists, etc., have of course been given. The paper is intended to include, therefore, all dependent indicatives and subjunctives, all independent indicatives whose relation to other verbs can be paralleled in dependent clauses, with the exception of aorists following aorists in consecutive narration. All these verbs have been classified in as minute subdivisions as seemed at all practicable, the independent indicatives, the dependent indicatives, and the subjunctives being kept separate. The classification is made as far as possible on the basis of distinctions of tense alone, not of the syntax of the clause; but some constructions are so peculiar in their meanings that it was necessary to keep them by themselves. These

groups have then been compared with each other to see how far the independent indicatives, the dependent indicatives, and the subjunctives correspond to one another. The future uses of the subjunctive correspond to nothing in the indicative. The effort here has been simply to make sure that each tense is or is not used in strict harmony with the statement of its use which is to be given presently. There then remain some subjunctive and many indicative verbs whose tenses are exceptions to the rule of sequence. These have been classified and explained so far as was possible.

I can not, of course, hope that anyone else who should subject the tenses of Cæsar to a careful scrutiny would classify the examples in every case as I have done, even if he were satisfied to use the same categories at all. After the first classification each of the examples has been given at least one careful and one more hasty examination, and each time some changes have been made ; and I cannot doubt that in any number of further examinations I myself should each time make some further changes. This is especially true in the hopeless attempt to make a satisfactory separation of the imperfects of repeated action from the descriptive imperfects, and the aoristic pluperfects from the descriptive. But I do hope that I should be found to have treated the indicatives and subjunctives alike, so that where errors of judgment appeared in the treatment of one mood they would be found to be balanced by corresponding errors in the treatment of the other. In that case my classification will have served its chief end.

The study of the tenses in Cæsar's Gallic War is, of course, far from settling so broad a question as that of the sequence of tense, but it seems to me that from even so limited a field as this one can arrive at some probable conclusions. And, on the other hand, I am sure that the question can never be settled by bringing forward a miscellaneous mass of examples on either side, but must depend on the full and minute studies of individual authors.

In concluding this prefatory portion of my paper, I wish to express my gratitude to Professor Hale for the help and inspiration I have received from him in the line of syntactical study, both in his lecture room in the University of Chicago and in the subsequent relations which I bore to him as instructor in his department. No statement of my obligation to him in this respect could be beyond the truth.* The results of my paper bear out his main contention

* While apparently not regarded as a matter of much moment, I will add that my obligations extend even to terminology in some degree. *E. g.*, the term "volitive," which seems to be finding favor in some quarters, I at least got from him. Among others might be mentioned "determinative clause," "non-essential clause," "balancing clause"

most fully, though in some respects I can not wholly agree with him, and though I have naturally laid more stress on the points of divergence than on those of agreement. If my points are good, they are made with tools received from him. If they are bad, the fault is my own.

If I had felt that a dedication was in order, it would have been to him and to the other man who has most helped and influenced me, Chancellor James H. Kirkland, of Vanderbilt University, from whom I first received a decided impulse toward Latin studies. Though I have received from him no direct assistance toward this paper, it would certainly never have been written but for the inspiration received from him.

CHAPTER I.

My study of the meanings of the tenses leaves me in substantial agreement with Professor Hale's statement of them,* though with some difference in detail, and though I found a fuller discussion of the subjunctive tenses necessary. The statements that follow are intentionally brief, but cover the main points. Additional details are given as occasion arises later in the paper.

All tenses of the indicative express one or both of the following ideas: 1. The time-sphere of an act or state (past, present, or future). 2. The stage of advancement of the act or state in its time-sphere (completed, in process, or imminent). In addition, the tenses which express the stage usually imply relativity of time to the time of another verb (priority, contemporaneousness, or futurity).

Aoristic tenses simply state the act, etc., as an occurrence, giving only the time-sphere, not the stage. Those recognized by Professor Hale are the historical perfect (aorist proper), the aoristic present, and the aoristic future. I find it necessary, for a reason to be given more fully in speaking of the pluperfect, to include among the aoristic tenses the aoristic pluperfect. To be consistent, one must either call one use of the pluperfect aoristic, or else call the true aorist depending on a present a tense of stage. So, too, there is an aoristic future perfect as well as a future perfect of the stage.

The aorist, of course, has nothing to do with momentariness of action, but is often used to express in summary a long continued or repeated act.

Tenses of stage state the act as it was, is, or will be at a time which

*As given in his third paper on Sequence, in his *Cum*-Constructions (Cornell Studies in Classical Philology. Part I, 1887. Part II, 1889), and especially in the advance sheets, printed in 1895, of his unfortunately still unpublished Moods and Tenses.

is in mind. They express both time-sphere and stage, and imply relativity. They are, for the past, the pluperfect, the imperfect, and the periphrastic; for the present, the present perfect, or true perfect, the present, and the periphrastic; for the future, the future perfect, the future, and the periphrastic. In this paper the imminent side of the periphrastic futures has been disregarded, and they have been classified with regard to the copula alone. Out of the use of the imperfect to represent an act as in process grow the conative imperfect, the imperfect of repeated action, and what is here called the persistent imperfect. By way of distinction from these latter imperfects, the ordinary imperfect is here called the descriptive imperfect.

The pluperfect has two quite distinct meanings, though it is not always possible to be sure of the force of a given example. It may represent a past situation resulting from a previous act, as, *e. g.*, in *convenerant*, "they had come together," *i. e.*, "were in meeting." Or it may represent an act which is over and done with at the time of the principal verb, as in *cuius pater regnum multos annos obtinuerat*, "had had" (but had no longer). Professor Hale seems to regard this latter use as a mere development of the other, for in speaking of the tenses of stage, after giving the former use of the pluperfect he says, "Since the activity itself must have been prior to the completed result, the pluperfect comes also to be used to denote an act as having taken place before the certain past time which the speaker or writer has in mind." It seems to me better to recognize the pluperfect as a past perfect, either a true perfect or an aorist. The past perfect proper is a tense of stage; the past aorist is not. The former, I call in this paper the descriptive pluperfect; the latter, the aoristic pluperfect.

Professor Hale's treatment of the subjunctive tenses in the published papers to which I have alluded is not satisfactory for my purpose. His statement of the uses of those tenses seems to me good for pedagogical purposes, but not sufficient for this investigation. His explanation of the origin of these uses seems to me to be put less definitely than one could wish, and is certainly less satisfactory than the treatment given the subject in the advance sheets of his Moods and Tenses.

His statement of uses is as follows: (A. J. P., Vol. VIII, p. 69). "In other words, in practical use each tense of the subjunctive is found to be employed with two distinct ideas, one that which is indicated by the tense of the indicative bearing the same name (as in indirect questions), the other a future idea (as in the final clause,

commands in indirect discourse, etc.); so that the so-called pluperfect and the so-called perfect serve, from their respective standpoint,* as either perfect or future perfect, and the so-called imperfect and present serve from their respective standpoints as either present or future." That is, the present serves as present or future; the imperfect as either imperfect or future to the past; the perfect as either perfect or future perfect, and the pluperfect as either pluperfect or future perfect to the past.

A fuller discussion of the relation of these two classes of meanings to each other may be reserved to a later portion of this paper. It will be sufficient for the present to say that the constructions in which the tense meanings correspond to those of the indicative are developments out of constructions in which the subjunctive has the other tense meanings. They are chiefly clauses of result, characterizing clauses, causal and adversative relative clauses, and *cum*-clauses; indirect questions and indirect discourse; the concessive subjunctive, either independent or with *quamvis* or *ut*.

In all these, except some result and characterizing clauses, the meanings of the tenses are the same as those laid down for the indicative. In his second paper (A. J. P., Vol. VIII, p. 49) Professor Hale has given what seems to me a satisfactory explanation of the familiar fact that in result clauses and characterizing clauses the imperfect is often used where a corresponding indicative construction would have required the aorist. In *tam fortiter pugnaverunt ut vincerent*, the result clause has developed its usual meaning of "so that they did conquer" out of an original "whereby they would naturally," in which the imperfect subjunctive has its proper meaning. But both tense and mood remained unchanged, though they had taken on a force which would naturally have been expressed by the aorist indicative.

In conditions and wishes, contrary to fact, the imperfect and and pluperfect have taken on a meaning of contrariety to fact in simple present and past time respectively. The explanation of this fact is too well understood to need repetition here.

Participles and infinitives express only the stage, taking their time-sphere from the principal verb. It was beside my purpose to treat of the tense uses of these forms for themselves; but where other verbs depend on them, they are treated as if depending on a corresponding indicative tense of stage, For example, an imperfect

* Professor Hale's use of the terms "standpoint" and "point of view" has been criticized on the ground that a tense can have but one standpoint or point of view, namely, the present time of the speaker or writer. I have accordingly used the term "point of reference," although I do not think that misunderstanding could arise from the use of his terms.

depending on a perfect participle which itself depends on a past tense, is classified as if it depended on a descriptive pluperfect

We have next to consider how the tenses behave in combination, and for my purpose it is especially important to ascertain just what is meant by the sequence of tense, and what combinations of indicatives with other verbs are to be regarded as falling under the same rule. Cæsar's narrative lies wholly in the past, with occasional digressions in the present. Therefore I lack examples for the future almost entirely, and I say nothing about certain troublesome points in the relations of futures with other tenses. I leave them in hopes that I may at some time be able to give some other author a thorough examination with reference to these points.

A consideration of all the cases in which a subjunctive can be said to follow another verb in sequence will, I believe, show that they all (except the result clauses and conditions contrary to fact which have already been spoken of) fall under the three following categories:

1. All tenses of stage that belong to the same time-sphere as the principal verb are said to be "in sequence." This includes, for instance, all descriptive imperfects and pluperfects depending on a past tense. But a tense of stage depending on a verb of a different time-sphere, as an imperfect depending on a present, is an exception.

2. The aorist is in sequence with a present, and the aoristic pluperfect with a past. The aorist is the tense the user of which, so to speak, stands in the present and looks back at the past. It is the natural link between the present time-sphere and the past. It is to be noted that the reverse does not hold good. A present or perfect depending on an aorist is out of sequence. So, too, an aorist depending on an aorist is out of sequence. The relations between a past and the aoristic pluperfect are precisely the same as those between the present and the aorist. The pluperfect depending on a past is in sequence. It is a mere accident of language that many imperfects and pluperfects depending on aoristic pluperfects are not exceptions in form as they are in logic. This pluperfect really looks back from a past time-sphere to another lying still further back; but language does not possess a set of tenses to express the relations in that time-sphere. If there were such tenses it would be clear that only they could be in sequence with the aoristic pluperfect, and that an imperfect, for example, belonging to the usual past time-sphere is as much out of sequence with this pluperfect as is a present with an aorist. So, too, one aoristic pluperfect is as much out of sequence with another as one aorist with

another. But in both these cases language has to get along with the ordinary tenses of the past time-sphere, and on the surface the sequence appears as regular as if the pluperfect were descriptive.

3. A subjunctive with future meaning is in sequence if its "point of reference," past or present, belongs to the time-sphere of the principal verb. That is, a future from the past (imperfect) is in sequence with a past verb.

In the indicative the third category does not appear; but the other two can be applied directly to the indicative, and in what follows tenses of these kinds will be spoken of as in sequence.

In such a narrative as Cæsar's the great majority of the independent verbs are aorists; and the dependent ones, both indicative and subjunctive, are imperfects and pluperfects. The reason is this. When a man thinks of any series of events his mind selects certain ones which seem to him to stand forth as the salient points in the series. To these he looks back from the present as occurrences, and he expresses them by the appropriate tense, the aorist. But the same reason, that they are the salient points, leads him to express them in independent sentences. In connection with these salient points and, so to speak, grouped around them he thinks of other events which seem to him of subordinate interest except as they influenced the main events, or he thinks of natural phenomena as present during those events, or of men's feelings during them, etc. Now, all these things he naturally thinks of as they were at the time of his important events. That means that he will express them by the proper tenses of the stage. But for the same reasons he will usually make subordinate clauses of them, though he may put them in independent sentences, and always will do so if they are too many in number to make a satisfactory complex sentence.

He may also think of other events as having occurred previously to the event of which he is speaking. If they seem to him of independent interest, he looks at them from the present and expresses this attitude by the use of the aorist. But this same feeling will usually lead him to make an independent sentence. If, however, they are thought of in connection with the event of which he is speaking, he will use the aoristic pluperfect and will naturally make a subordinate clause of the statement.

The constructions which contain the future use of the subjunctive are such that only a very few of them can be thought of except in relation to the time of their main verbs. A command, for instance, can hardly be thought of except in relation to the time of the verb of commanding on which it depends; though it is true that after a

past tense the command may retain the original present, by *repræsentatio*. But this is in no sense an exception to sequence.

It seems, then, to be entirely in accordance with the natural workings of the mind that while the principal verbs in a narrative are aorists in the majority of cases, the subordinate ones are regularly imperfects and pluperfects. But there are two other possibilities.

The writer may, though he looks at a subordinate act aoristically, choose to speak of it in a subordinate clause.

He may also wish to give a still existing reason for a past act, or a still existing result of it, etc. Then he will use a present or a perfect, whether his choice is for a dependent or an independent mode of expression.

Both of these usages are, of course, exceptions to the rule of sequence. One of the chief objects of this paper is to show how the ratio of exceptions to regular uses in the indicative compares with the corresponding ratio in the subjunctive, and so far as possible to explain the difference. No one would doubt that many more exceptions are to be expected in the indicative. Professor Hale has taken the ground that this discrepancy is accounted for wholly by the fact that the indicative constructions are in the mass less closely connected in thought with the main clause than are the subjunctive ones. How far this explains the facts is to be discussed later.

Before proceeding to my detailed classification, it is necessary to speak briefly of a number of more or less disconnected points.

The text used is that of Dinter's edition.

Where my headings speak of the "act" of a verb, the expression must be understood to mean "act or state," according to the meaning of the verb.

The treatment of co-ordinate relative clauses was a point of difficulty. Some of them are entirely independent sentences, while others are close to subordinate clauses. I finally decided to treat all relatives which are to be translated by "and he" or "but he," etc., as if *et* or *sed*, etc., had actually been used. Consequently, such clauses or sentences are given under independent sentences, or as if co-ordinate with subordinate verbs. That this is not strictly in accord with Cæsar's feeling, is shown by the frequency with which he uses subjunctives instead of infinitives in such clauses when put into indirect discourse. I have, therefore, given a separate list of these relative constructions in Chap. XI.

I have invariably treated the historical present as if it were the aorist or imperfect for which it is used.

The treatment of *repræsentatio* in indirect discourse is the same. Presents and perfects depending on a past are given as if they were the imperfects and pluperfects for which they stand.

Consuevi, *cognovi*, and similar verbs and participles, though practically present in meaning, have been classified as present perfects, etc.

Those result clauses in which the tenses seemed equivalent in meaning to the corresponding tenses of the indicative have been given a corresponding classification. The rest will be found in Chap. VI.

When the "principal verb" for another verb is spoken of, the principal verb of the sentence is, of course, not necessarily intended, for a subordinate verb may have another verb depending on it, and be its principal verb.

Only subordinate finite verbs are classified; but they may depend on participles, infinitives, and even adjectives and nouns. These participles and infinitives, etc., are included according to the same headings as the finite verbs, so that where a verb is said to depend on a descriptive imperfect, for example, it may be found to depend on a present infinitive, an adjective, etc. Perhaps this will be especially noted where a verb is said to follow a past future.

All through the subdivisions the capitals A, B, and C have been used to denote respectively independent indicatives, dependent indicatives, and dependent subjunctives.

No independent indicatives have intentionally been given unless the relation between them and the principal verb, if one may call it so, is fairly clear. Those that are given serve to show the identity of independent tense usage with dependent.

The ratio of indicatives to subjunctives in each single category is of little consequence for my purpose.

My figures are the result of counting all the verbs, rather than the number of sentences in which the construction appears.

CHAPTER II.

THE DESCRIPTIVE IMPERFECT AND IMPERFECT OF REPEATED ACTION.

The imperfect of repeated action is really only a species of descriptive imperfect; instead of a single act lasting on during or up to another we have a series of acts lasting in the same way. As a development of this use the imperfect is occasionally used to express repeated action in situations in which but for the idea of repetition the aorist would have been used. But in Cæsar, at least, I find no such case outside of independent sentences.

The larger subdivisions of this chapter are made on the basis of the relation of the times of the two acts involved to each other. The examples under each of the heads thus made are further subdivided according to the tense meaning of the verbs on which they depend. Where examples of the imperfect of repeated action exist they are given immediately after the corresponding descriptive imperfects.

I. The imperfect describing an act which began before the action of its principal verb and continued after it.

1. The descriptive imperfect following* an aorist.

Example: I, 11, 2, cum se defendere non possent, legatos mittunt; since they were not able to defend themselves they sent envoys.

A. I, 2, 4; 2, 5; 4, 1; 6, 3; 6, 4; 7, 2; 7, 4 (2); 9, 1 (2); 9, 3 (4); 10, 2; 11, 1; 12, 1; 12, 4; 18, 1; 19, 1 and 2 (2); 25, 3; 29, 2; 33, 2; 38, 2; 40, 15; 42, 2 (2); 43, 1 (2); 46, 3; 47, 3; 48, 5; 49, 3; 52, 6. II, 5, 6; 6, 1; 6, 3; 7, 4; 10, 5; 15, 3; 17, 4; 19, 1 (2); 23, 3; 29, 3 (2); 29, 4. III, 10, 1; 14, 2; 16, 3; 17, 1 and 2 (2); 18, 6; 19, 1; 20, 1. IV, 4, 2 (2); 6, 4; 9, 3; 11, 4; 13, 2 and 3 (3); 17, 2; 20, 4; 22, 4; 26, 1; 29, 4 (2). V, 3, 2; 6, 1; 28, 1 (2); 34, 2 (2); 42, 2 (2); 44, 1 and 2 (3); 45, 2; 48, 1; 49, 1; 49, 6 (2); 57, 1 (2); 58, 4. VI, 3, 5 (2); 5, 5; 7, 5 (3); 9, 2 (2); 34, 7; 35, 1 (2); 35, 3. VII, 10, 1; 11, 4; 15, 2; 17, 1; 19, 2 (2); 26, 2; 35, 2; 36, 2-4 (3); 36, 5; 39, 2; 43, 5; 45, 4 (2); 46, 1 (2); 48, 4 (2); 50, 2; 55, 10; 56, 2; 59, 3 and 4 (3); 62, 1; 62, 5 (4); 65, 1; 73, 1; 76, 5; 77, 1; 79, 3; 83, 2; 83, 3. Total, 139. B. I, 3, 5 (2); 4, 2; 5, 3; 7, 3; 8, 1; 10, 3; 11, 5; 15, 1; 18, 1; 19, 3; 21, 4; 23, 1 (2); 25, 5; 25, 6 (2); 28, 3; 28, 5; 32, 1; 39, 2; 42, 5 (2); 51, 1; 52, 7; 52, 7; 53, 6; 54, 2. II, 2, 3; 12, 1; 12, 3; 15, 1 (2); 19, 6; 19, 8; 21, 3; 28, 2; 33, 2; 35, 2. III, 1, 2; 6, 4; 7, 3; 8, 2; 9, 1; 9, 3; 9, 8; 18, 1; 22, 1; 23, 5; 27, 2; 28, 1; 28, 2 (2). IV, 12, 1; 13, 5; 13, 6; 20, 1 and 2 (2); 21, 3; 21, 7 (3); 22, 3; 22, 6; 25, 1; 25, 3; 30, 2; 32, 1; 32, 2; 35, 1; 36, 2. V, 4, 1; 4, 3 (2); 9, 7 (2); 11, 5; 22, 1; 23, 2; 23, 5; 24, 4; 33, 5; 37, 1; 38, 1; 41, 1; 46, 1; 47, 2; 49, 7; 58, 4. VI, 4, 2; 4, 3; 7, 7; 30, 1; 36, 2; 38, 3. VII, 1, 2; 4, 2; 5, 2; 7, 4; 9, 4; 11, 6; 13, 2; 13, 3 (2); 27, 1; 33, 1; 35, 5; 37, 1; 38, 9; 40, 5; 43, 4; 44, 2;

*It is hardly necessary to say that the word "following" is not used here to mean following in the order of arrangement, but in the sense of depending on.

47. 1; 47. 4; 47. 7; 54. 2 (2); 55. 7; 60. 2; 61. 4; 63. 7 (3); 64. 7; 65. 4 (2); 70. 6; 75. 5; 77. 12; 83. 4; 84. 4; 87. 3. Total, 132. C. I, 9. 2; 11. 2; 16, 6; 20, 6 (3); 21, 2; 22, 1 (2); 23, 3 (2); 26, 1; 32, 3; 40, 1; 42, 6; 45, 1. II, 2, 2; 5, 2; 13, 2; 13, 3; 17, 2; 17, 5; 19, 5; 26, 2 (2); 28, 1; 29, 4. III, 1, 1; 1, 6; 5, 1 (3); 10, 3; 15, 2; 18, 2; 18, 3; 25, 1 and 2 (5); 26, 1; 29, 2 (2). IV, 4, 4; 7, 2; 11, 1; 14, 2; 14, 3; 15, 1; 23, 5; 28, 2 (2); 29, 3; 30, 1 (2); 34, 5; 37, 2; 38, 2. V, 2, 3; 3, 3; 3, 5; 10, 2; 18, 5; 22, 4 (2); 33, 3; 37, 5; 44, 3; 47, 5; 48, 2 (2); 49, 8; 56, 5; 58, 6. VI, 1, 4; 2, 2; 2, 3; 7, 8; 31, 1; 31, 5; 35, 7; 39, 1. VII, 1, 3; 2, 2; 6, 1; 11, 5; 12, 4; 15, 3; 19, 4; 25, 1 (2); 27, 1; 28, 3; 31, 4; 32, 2 (2); 37, 7; 38, 1; 45, 7; 45, 9; 49, 1; 52, 2; 53, 2; 66, 2; 82, 2; 83, 5; 83, 8; 85, 1; 87, 1; 87, 3. Total, 111.

2. The imperfect of repeated action following an aorist. Example: II, 19, 5, cum se identidem reciperent, &c., legiones castra munire coeperunt; while they kept retreating, &c., the legions began to make a camp.

A. IV, 26, 3 (3); VII, 59, 1 (3); 73, 1. Total, 7. B. I, 39, 1; IV, 7, 1; V, 1, 5; 2, 4 (3); VII, 24, 5 (2). Total, 8. C. I, 42, 4; II, 19, 5 (2); VII, 25, 1 (2). Total, 5.

3. The descriptive imperfect following a descriptive imperfect. Example: II, 5, 5, post eum quae essent tuta ab hostibus reddebat; rendered safe from the enemy all that was in his rear.

A. I, 6, 1; 38, 3 (2); II, 9, 1; III, 13, 1; 13, 6; 14, 4; 14, 8; 24, 2-3 (2); IV 20, 2; 24, 2; V, 7, 1; VI, 5, 4 (2); 7, 5; VII, 19, 1 (2); 59, 5 (3). Total, 21. B. I, 7, 4; 16, 5; 38, 3; II, 19, 5; 23, 4; 24, 3; III, 9, 3; 14, 3; 14, 9; 17, 7; 25, 1; IV, 17, 2; 18, 4; 29, 4; 30, 1; V, 28, 1 (2); 42, 2; 54, 5; VI, 5, 3; VII, 26, 2 (2); 37, 6; 45, 4; 62, 4; 77, 1. Total, 26. C. I, 14, 1; 16, 5; 16, 6; 18, 9; 31, 2; 34, 4; 35, 2; 39, 6; 40, 6; 43, 6; II, 4, 1 (2); 4, 8 (2); 5, 5; 21, 3; 31, 2; III, 2, 1; 17, 7; IV, 7, 4; 7, 5; 8, 3 (3); 20, 4 (5); 32, 1; V, 27, 4; 27, 9; 29, 7; 31, 5 (2); 33, 3; 35, 5; 40, 7; 41, 5; 54, 1; VI, 10, 1; 36, 2; VII, 6, 2; 20, 7; 31, 2; 52, 3; 89, 2. Total, 47.

4. The descriptive imperfect following an imperfect of repeated action. Example: II, 1, 1, cum esset in Gallia, crebri rumores afferebantur; while he was in Gaul, rumors kept coming to him.

A. I, 16, 2-3 (3); II, 22, 2; III, 12, 1. Total, 5. B, I, 39, 5 (2); II, 1, 3 (2); III, 12, 3; 14, 8; IV, 31, 2; VI, 12, 7; VII, 73, 9; 80, 4. Total, 10. C. I, 50, 4; II, 1, 1; 8, 1 (2); 11, 5 (2); 30, 3; III, 3, 2 (2); 14, 7. Total, 10.

5. The imperfect of repeated action following a descriptive imperfect. Example: I, 47, 4, propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, qua Ariovistus utebatur; because of his knowledge of the Gallic language, which Ariovistus was in the habit of using.

B. I, 47, 4. Total, 1.

6. The imperfect of repeated action following an imperfect of repeated action. Example: II, 1, 3-4, quod sollicitarentur ab nonnullis quod a potentioribus vulgo regna occupabantur; because they were being constantly urged by some because the royal power was regularly siezed upon by stronger men.

B. II, 1, 4. Total, 1.

7. The descriptive imperfect following a descriptive pluperfect, and extending beyond both the act and the resulting state. Example: II, 11, 2, qua de causa discederent, nondum perspexerat: he had not yet ascertained why they were leaving.

A. III, 2, 5; IV, 23, 3 (2); V, 6, 2; 18, 3; VII, 55, 1. Total, 6. B. I, 16, 5; II, 12, 2; 22, 1; 29, 4; 32, 4; 35, 3; III, 2, 3; 2, 4; 6, 2; 7, 1; 20, 3; 26, 2; 26, 6; IV, 22, 2 (3); 22, 3; 29, 4; 32, 1; 32, 2; 32, 4; V, 3, 4; 25, 4; 52, 1 (2); VI, 4, 5; 32, 5; VII, 17, 1; 36, 1; 36, 2; 44, 1; 46, 3; 69, 5; 88, 1. Total, 34. C. I, 31, 10; 32, 2; 44, 12; II, 3, 4; 11, 2; 14, 3; 16, 4 (2); 26, 4; 26, 5 (2); 28, 2; IV, 12, 1; 19, 3; V, 29, 6; 58, 1; VI, 29, 4; VII, 1, 1; 18, 1; 38, 4; 62, 6. Total, 21.

8. The descriptive imperfect following a descriptive pluperfect of repeated action. Example: III, 14, 6, cum funes qui antemnas ad malos destinabant comprehensi erant; whenever the ropes which bound the sail yards to the mast had been grappled.

B. III, 12, 2; 14, 6. Total, 2.

9. The descriptive imperfect of an act whose time includes the act of a descriptive pluperfect, but not the resulting situation. Example: II, 33, 6, refractis portis, cum iam defenderet nemo; having broken down the gates, since there were no longer any defenders.

B. II, 33, 2. III, 15, 3; 17, 4. VI, 12, 6; 41, 1. VII, 8, 1. Total, 6. C. II, 17, 4; 33, 6. VI, 12, 2. Total, 3.

10. The descriptive imperfect following an aoristic pluperfect and including the times of both the pluperfect and its principal verb. Example: VII, 47, 2, milites non exaudito tubae sono, quod satis magna valles intercedebat retinebantur; the soldiers not having heard the trumpet, because quite a large valley lay between, were kept in their position.

A. I, 18, 10. Total, 1. B. I, 8, 4; 41, 4. VII, 47, 2. Total, 3. C. II, 3, 5 (2). VII, 20, 3; 33, 3 (2). Total, 5.

11. The descriptive imperfect including the time of an aoristic pluperfect, but not that of the principal verb of the sentence. Example: I, 13, 5, quod adortus esset cum ii qui flumen transissent auxilium ferre non possent, ne ipsos despiceret; because he had made his attack at a time when those across the river could not give aid, he must not despise them.

B. I, 40, 5. VII, 20, 3. Total, 2. C. (The disproportion between the number of indicatives and subjunctives is the result of this being a common indirect discourse form of the direct imperfect following an aorist). I, 13, 5; 14, 2 (2); 20, 2; 29, 1; 31, 4; 31, 9; 40, 5; 43, 5. V, 10, 2; 27, 6. VII, 38, 5; 41, 2; 52, 1. Total, 14.

12. The imperfect of repeated action including the time of an

aoristic pluperfect, but not that of the principal verb of the sentence. Example: VII, 41, 2, summis copiis castra oppugnata demonstrant, cum crebro integri defessis succederent; they stated that the camp had been attacked by large numbers, with fresh men continually taking the place of tired.

C. VII, 41, 2. Total, 1.

13. The descriptive imperfect following an imperfect in result. Example: II, 35, 1, tanta opinio perlata est uti ab iis nationibus quae trans Rhenum incolerent mitterentur legati; such a report was spread that envoys were sent by the nations which lived across the Rhine.

B. V, 43, 5; 51, 3. Total, 2. C. (The preponderance of subjunctives is due to attraction). II, 35, 1. III, 15, 4. V, 23, 3; 23, 4; 44, 13; 53, 1. VI, 37, 2; 43, 5. VII, 36, 4. Total, 9.

14. The descriptive imperfect following a past future and including the times of both the principal verb and the future act. Example: I, 6, 3, Allobrogibus sese persuasuros, quod viderentur, existimabant; they thought they should persuade the Allobroges, because they seemed, etc.

B. I, 42, 5. II, 8,4; 20, 1. III, 9, 3. IV, 4, 7. V, 1, 4; 7, 1 and 2 (2); 11, 4. VI, 33, 4; 34, 6; 34, 7. VII, 19, 6; 31, 4; 78, 1; 81, 2 (2). Total, 17. C. (The preponderance of subjunctives is due to attraction and indirect discourse). I, 3, 1; 6, 3; 7, 3; 7, 5; 14, 6; 15, 1; 17, 2; 17, 3; 20, 4; 21, 1; 28, 1; 31, 2; 31, 14; 31, 15; 33, 4; 34, 2; 34, 3; 36, 7; 37, 2; 40, 1; 40, 13; 40, 14; 43, 9; 47, 1; 47, 4; 48, 2; 48, 3 II, 2, 3. III, 6, 1; 8, 5; 21, 1; 26, 3. IV, 8, 3; 14, 1; 16, 6; 19, 2; 23, 5; 37, 1. V, 6, 3 (2); 27, 9; 29, 6; 36, 2; 36, 3; 41, 6; 41, 8; 43, 6; 46, 3; 51, 2; 52, 6. VI, 1, 2; 9, 7; 10, 3. VII, 8, 4; 14, 5; 14, 9; 15, 4; 15, 5; 19, 5; 26, 3; 30, 4; 33, 2; 37, 7; 71, 1; 72, 2; 75, 1; 77, 2. Total, 67.

15. The descriptive imperfect following a past future perfect and including the times both of it and the principal verb. Example: VII, 39, 4, quod futurum provideat si se tot hominum milia cum hostibus coniunxerint quorum salutem neque propinqui neglegere —posset; which he saw would happen if so many thousand should join the enemy, whose safety their relatives could not neglect.

C. VII, 39, 4. Total, 1.

16. The imperfect of repeated action following a past future perfect, and including the times of both of it and the principal verb. Example: II, 31, 3, si pro sua clementia, quam ab aliis audirent, statuisset Aduatucos esse conservandos, ne se armis despoliaret; if in his kindness, of which they used to hear, he should have decided to save the lives of the Aduatuci, let him not take away their arms.

C. II, 31, 3. Total, 1.

17. The descriptive imperfect following a past future and including the time of its principal verb, but not that of the future event. Example: V, 6, 5, id esse consilium, ut quos in conspectu Galliae interficere vereretur, hos in Britanniam traductos necaret; this was the plan, to kill in Britain those whom he feared to kill in Gaul.

B. III, 11, 2. V, 5, 4; 46, 5. VI, 33, 3; 33, 4. VII, 21, 3; 56, 2. Tot3l, 7. C. I, 14, 6; 27, 2. IV, 11, 3. V, 6, 5; 38, 4; 47, 4. VI, 7, 6; 40, 2. VII, 6, 3; 66, 5. Total, 10.

II. The imperfect describing an act which both began and stopped at the same time as the action of its principal verb.

1. The descriptive imperfect following a summarizing aorist. Example: I, 15, 5, ita dies XV iter fecerunt ut inter hostium agmen et nostrum non amplius quinis milibus passuum interesset; they marched for fifteen days in such a way that there were not more than five miles between the two armies.

A. I, 39, 3-4 (2). VII, 17, 2; 44, 3. Total, 4. B. IV, 1, 2 (2). V, 39, 4 (2); 50, 2. VII, 40, 2. Total, 6. C. I. 15, 5. II, 11, 1 (2); 33, 4. III, 15, 3; 17, 6; 21, 1 (2); 29, 2 (2). IV, 16, 1; 21, 9; 29, 1; 31, 3; 34, 4 (2). V, 16, 1; 18, 5; 31, 4; 58, 1. VII, 24, 1; 28, 4; 30, 4; 63, 7 (2). Total, 25.

2. The imperfect of repeated action following a summarizing aorist. Example: II, 11, 4, multitudinem conciderunt, cum ab extremo agmine consisterent, etc.; they killed many, since those in the rear would keep making a stand, etc.

A. I, 39, 3-6 (6). III, 3, 3. Total, 7. B. I, 26, 3 (3). Total, 3. C. II, 11, 4 (3); 27, 3 (4); 33, 4. V, 33, 6; 55, 2. VI, 24, 1 (3). Total, 13.

3. The descriptive imperfect following a descriptive imperfect. Example: I, 2, 4, his rebus fiebat ut minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent; the result was that they were able, etc.

A. I, 2, 4; 6, 1; 19, 3; 33, 2; 33, 3-4 (3); 48, 5-7 (2). II, 6, 3; 18, 1-3 (5); 19, 2-3 (3). III, 9, 4-7 (3); 10, 1. IV, 13, 1; 17, 1; 31, 1. V, 16, 4; 24, 7. VI, 34, 3; 34, 4-5 (6). VII, 6, 3 (2). Total, 37. B. I, 2, 5; 33, 2 (2); 46, 3; 52, 7. II, 8, 2 (4); 19, 2; 20, 3. III, 2, 5 (2); 24, 2. IV, 22, 4; 24, 2 (4); 26, 1. V, 34, 2; 49, 6. VI, 12, 2 (2); 36, 1 (2); 43, 6. VII, 15, 2 (2); 17, 2 (2); 50, 2; 56, 2, 80, 2; 80, 5 (2). Total, 36. C. I, 2, 2; 2, 4; 3, 6; 6, 1 (2); 14, 3; 14, 4 (2); 17, 1 (2); 18, 3; 19, 1 (2); 23, 1; 29, 2; 30, 4; 32, 2; 32, 4; 32, 5; 35, 2 (3); 36, 2; 36, 4; 38, 4; 40, 8; 40, 10 (2); 42, 2; 43, 8; 44, 4 (2); 44, 8; 45, 3 (2). II, 1, 2; 4, 3; 5, 5; 6, 3; 15, 4; 17, 4; 18, 2; 20, 3; 22, 1; 22, 2; 25, 1; 29, 3. III, 14, 4; 14, 8; 17, 5 (2); 20, 1; 28, 1. IV, 7, 5; 8, 2; 16, 4; 16, 7; 23, 3; 23, 5; 29, 4. V, 4, 1; 6, 5; 11, 2; 16, 1 (2); 26, 4; 27, 3; 41, 5 (3); 42, 3; 44, 1; 57, 1. VI, 1, 3; 12, 9 (2); 32, 1; 34, 1; 35, 3; 36, 2. VII, 1, 7 (2); 11, 4; 14, 3 (2); 14, 10; 19, 4; 19, 5; 20, 5; 20, 7; 24, 4; 29, 3; 32, 3 (2); 33, 2; 35, 1; 37, 3; 37, 6; 41, 2; 45, 4; 47, 3; 52, 3; 57, 4 (2); 64, 2; 72, 1; 76, 5; 77, 1; 80, 4 (2); 85, 2. Total, 113.

4. The descriptive imperfect following an imperfect of repeated action. Example: I, 32, 5, Ariovisti crudelitatem horrerent,

quod reliquis fugae facultas daretur, etc.; they used to shudder at the cruelty of Ariovistus, because the rest had a chance to flee, etc.

A. III, 4, 3; 13, 6–7 (3). Total, 4. B. III, 12, 3. VII, 25, 1 (2). Total, 3. C. I, 32, 5 (2). V, 33, 1 Total, 3.

5. The imperfect of repeated action following a descriptive imperfect. Example: I, 2, 4, his rebus fiebat ut vagarentur; the result of all this was that they were in the habit of roaming about, etc.

A. I, 48, 5–6 (4). IV, 31, 2 (3). Total, 7. B. I, 25, 3. III, 4, 3 (2). IV, 26, 1. VI, 36, 1. Total, 5. C. I, 2, 4; 6, 1; 32, 4; 48, 7; 50, 4. II, 1, 3. III, 12, 1; 13, 7 (3); 14, 4; 17, 5. IV, 24, 3 (2). V, 16, 4 (4); 19, 3 (2). VII, 14, 6; 35, 1. Total 22.

6. The imperfect of repeated action following an imperfect of repeated action (not including the cases where each act of one verb is related to an act of the other; cf. Chap. VII). Example: V, 16, 2, intellectum est equites magno cum periculo dimicare, quod cederent, etc.; it was found that the cavalry fought at great risks, because the enemy would retreat, etc.

A. I, 39, 1. III, 4, 4; 13, 6 (2). Total, 4. B. VII, 16, 3. Total 1. C. III, 12, 1. V, 16, 2 (3), Total, 4.

7. The descriptive imperfect following a descriptive pluperfect. Example: I, 13, 2, commoti, cum intellegerent, etc.; smitten with fear, because they understood, etc.

A. V, 6, 2 (2). Total, 2. B. III, 19, 2. V, 7, 3; 9, 1. VII, 43, 3; 77, 2. Total, 5. C. I, 13, 2; 14, 2; 27, 4; 31, 10; 33, 5; 39, 3. II, 17, 4; 25, 1; 25, 3; 32, 4. III, 2, 2. IV, 17, 7; 32, 1 (2). V, 17, 3; 35, 5; 54, 5. VI, 43, 3. VII, 17, 3; 47, 4; 54, 4; 55, 10; 56, 4. Total, 23.

8. The imperfect of repeated action following a descriptive pluperfect. Example: V, 55, 4, tantam auctoritatem comparaverat ut ad eum legationes concurrerent; he had acquired such power that envoys kept coming to him.

A. V, 53, 4 (4). Total, 4. B. VI, 36, 2. VII, 73, 1. Total, 2. C. V, 55, 4 (2). Total, 2.

9. The descriptive imperfect following an imperfect in result. Example: V, 43, 4, tanta militum virtus fuit ut, cum flamma torrerentur de vallo decederet nemo; such was the bravery of the soldiers that, although they were scorched by the flames, no one left the rampart.

C. V, 43, 4 (3). Total, 3.

III. The imperfect describing an act which lasted up to the time of its principal verb (most of these could have been replaced by the pluperfect).

1. The descriptive imperfect following an aorist. Example: I, 4, 3, cum civitas ius suum exsequi conaretur, Orgetorix mortuus est; while the state was trying to execute its laws, Orgetorix died.

A. II, 9, 1-2 (3). III, 24, 1-4 (4). IV, 24, 4. V, 25, 1; 32, 1; 35, 5 (2). VI, 8, 2. VII, 37, 6; 80, 2-5 (3). Total, 17. B. I, 10, 3. IV, 29, 3; 34, 3. V, 33, 6; 40, 2; 43, 6. VI, 8, 6; 8, 7; 29, 2; VII, 3, 1; 8, 2; 65, 5. Total, 12. C. I, 4, 3 (2); 20, 5; 53, 5. III, 7, 1; 24, 5. IV, 12, 5; 37, 1. V, 30, 1. VII, 24, 2 (3); 50, 1 (2); 51, 1; 80, 6. Total, 16.

2. The imperfect of repeated action following an aorist. Example: I, 32, 3, cum ab his saepius quaereret, Divitiacus respondit; on his repeatedly questioning them, Divitiacus replied.

A. VII, 25, 2; 80, 3-4 (2). Total, 3. C. I, 32, 3. Total, 1.

3. The descriptive imperfect following an imperfect. Example: II, 24, 1, cum se in castra reciperent, adversis hostibus occurrebant; while retreating to camp they met the enemy face to face.

C. II, 24, 1. Total, 1.

4. The descriptive imperfect following a descriptive pluperfect. Example: II, 29, 1, cum venirent, hac pugna nuntiata reverterunt; having heard of this battle while they were on the way, they went home.

A. VII, 25, 3; 36, 5-6 (2). Total, 3. B. VI, 30, 2. VII, 8, 3. Total, 2 C. II, 29, 1; IV, 28, 3. Total, 2.

5. The descriptive imperfect following an aoristic pluperfect. Example: II, 4, 2, Gallos qui ea loca incolerent expulisse; had driven out the Gauls who were living there.

B. III, 17. 3. VII, 4, 1; 68, 3. Total, 3. C. II, 4, 2. Total, 1.

6. The descriptive imperfect following a past future, and lasting up to the future event. Example: I, 35, 3, obsides quos haberet ab Aeduis redderet; he was to return the Aeduan hostages whom he was holding.

B. I, 7, 2. II, 9, 4; 9, 5. Total, 3. C. I, 35, 3 (2). IV, 11, 4; 16, 5. VII, 17, 4; 29, 6. Total, 6.

IV. The imperfect describing an act which began at the time of its principal verb and continued beyond it.

1. The imperfect following an aorist. Example: VII, 72, 1, fossam derectis lateribus duxit, ut eius fossae solum tantundem pateret, etc.; he dug a ditch with vertical sides, so that the bottom was as wide as the top.

A. II, 5, 5 (3). Total, 3. C. IV, 31, 3. VII, 72, 1. Total, 2.

V. The imperfect describing an act which began after the action of its principal verb began and ended before it ended.

1. The descriptive imperfect following a descriptive imperfect. Example: I, 44, 9, non tam barbarum esse ut non sciret; he was not so much of a barbarian that he was ignorant, etc.

B. II, 7, 4; 17, 4. Total, 2. C I, 44, 9. V, 27, 4. VII, 69, 1. Total, 3.

2. The descriptive imperfect following the descriptive pluperfect: Example: III, 9, 6, neque eorum locorum ubi bellum gesturi essent vada novisse; and they had not become acquainted with the shoals of the places in which they were about to fight.

B. V, 9, 4. Total, 1. C. III, 9, 6. Total 1.
Totals for Chapter, A, 274; B, 335; C, 546.

CHAPTER III.

THE DESCRIPTIVE PLUPERFECT.

Since this is equally a descriptive tense, it naturally may be classified under much the same larger and smaller subdivisions as the imperfect. Probably no two men would agree on the classification of some of the examples that lie between the descriptive and aoristic pluperfects, for there is no sharp line between them, just as there is none between the perfect and the aorist. Almost every act that has taken place before another has left some influence behind it, and hence might be called descriptive. On the other hand, even where the resulting situation still lasts on, the thought of the writer may dwell strongly on the priority of the act, and the tense might be called aoristic. I have tried to steer as fair a course as possible between them; and even if others should take exception to my general conception of the difference between them, I have at least treated the indicative and subjunctive alike.

I. The pluperfect describing a situation which began before the action of its principal verb and continued after it.

1. The pluperfect following an aorist. Example: I, 27, 3, servos qui ad eos perfugissent poposcit; he demanded the slaves who had fled to them.

A. I, 11, 1 (2); 39, 7; 40, 15. II, 8, 5; 14, 1; 23, 1. III, 7, 2; 17, 2; 17, 4. IV, 6, 4; 9, 3; 14, 5 (2); 18, 4 (3); 29, 4. V, 5, 4; 6, 1; 8, 6 (2); 42, 2. VI, 32, 5; 36, 3; 38, 1 (2). VII, 36, 2; 39, 1; 46, 3 (2); 62, 1; 65, 1; 76, 1 (3). Total, 36. B. I, 5, 4 (2); 8, 1; 8, 3; 10, 3; 12, 2; 21, 2; 22, 5; 24, 3; 29, 1; 43, 2 (2); 49, 1; 49, 4; 52, 2; 53, 4 (2); 53, 6. II, 10, 3; 10, 5; 11, 6; 19, 5; 19, 6 (3); 23, 1; 33, 2 (3); 33, 7. III, 6, 1; 6, 4 (2); 11, 5; 17, 1; 19, 4; 26, 2; 28, 1. IV, 4, 6; 6, 1; 11, 1; 11, 6; 15, 4; 16, 2 (2); 21, 4; 21, 7; 28, 1; 30, 1; 38, 1 (2); 38, 3. V, 1, 1; 1, 2; 7, 9; 8, 2; 11, 1; 23, 2; 24, 1; 24, 4; 25, 5; 28, 1; 40, 2; 42, 5; 43, 1; 47, 3; 48, 7; 52, 4; 53, 3; 53, 6. VI, 30, 1, 32, 6. 35, 6 (2); 35, 10; 36, 3; 36, 4; 37, 9; 40, 6 (2); 44, 3. VII, 1, 1; 5, 3; 7; 5; 9, 6 (2); 11, 8; 12, 4; 13, 1; 20, 9 (2); 26, 1; 30, 1 (3); 31, 3; 31, 5; 35, 4; 35, 5; 38, 4; 45, 7; 50, 1; 50, 4; 51, 1; 51, 2; 60,

1; 60, 4; 61, 1; 62, 3; 62, 10; 65, 4 (2); 66, 1; 67, 5; 71, 5; 71, 7; 79, 1; 84, 1; 85, 6; 86, 4; 87, 2. Total, 122. C. I, 7, 1; 16, 6; 22, 1; 27, 3; 38, 1; 40, 1; 47, 6; 52, 7. II, 3, 1; 6, 4; 13, 2; 13, 3; 24, 4; 26, 1; 26, 5. III, 2, 1 (2); 3, 1 (2); 5, 1 (2); 7, 1; 24, 5; 28, 3 (2). IV, 6, 2; 12, 6; 15, 1; 16, 3; 21, 9; 23, 2; 23, 5; 25, 6; 26, 4; 32, 3; 37, 1. V, 1, 6; 2, 2; 9, 1; 15, 4; 17, 2; 18, 2; 22, 4; 31, 6; 32, 2; 36, 1; 37, 1; 47, 4; 54, 2 (2). VI, 1, 4; 3, 4; 44, 3. VII, 7, 4; 9, 5; 11, 1; 12, 3; 12, 6; 18, 1; 20, 1; 32, 2; 33, 3 (2); 40, 3; 44, 1; 48, 3; 54, 3; 55, 4 (2); 57, 4; 61, 1; 62, 6; 62, 8. Total, 74.

2. The descriptive pluperfect following a descriptive imperfect. Example: I, 37, 2, questum quod Harudes, qui nuper transportati essent, fines eorum popularentur; to complain because the Harudes, who had recently been brought over, were ravaging their country.

A. II, 16, 2. III, 13, 1-4 (7); 14, 3. IV, 32, 5 (2). VI, 5, 4. Total, 12. B. I, 16, 3; 19, 2; 22, 3; 28, 5; 48, 5. II, 17, 4; 19, 3. III, 14, 3; 17, 2; 18, 6. IV, 12, 1 (2); 2?, 4; 29, 2; 30, 1. V, 1, 1; 6, 2; 23, 4; 24, 7; 47, 2. VI, 35, 1; 40, 4. VII, 8, 3; 36, 3; 44, 3; 47, 2; 50, 2; 55, 10; 56, 2; 61, 2. Total, 30. C. I, 13, 5; 16, 6; 18, 8 (2); 31, 10; 34, 4; 37, 2; 40, 5; 42, 1; 44, 2; 52, 6 (2). II, 14, 3; 24, 2 (2). III, 9, 3; 17, 5. IV, 7, 3; 13, 3; 32, 1. V, 27, 7. VII, 20, 6; 33, 1. Total, 23.

3. The descriptive pluperfect following an imperfect of repeated action. Example: IV, 11, 2, cum id non impetrassent petebant, etc.; when they had failed to secure this they kept entreating, etc.

A. VI, 43, 3; 80, 3. Total, 2. B. IV, 16, 5 (3); 31, 2. VII, 80, 4; 81, 6. Total, 6. C. I, 16, 1. II, 15, 5 (2); 16, 1. III, 3, 2. IV, 11, 2. VII, 78, 4. Total, 7.

4. The descriptive pluperfect following a descriptive pluperfect and including the resulting situation as well as the act. Example: III, 22, 3, eo interfecto cuius se amicitiae devovisset; when the man had been killed to whose service he had bound himself.

A. IV, 29, 1. V, 6, 3; 18, 3. VII, 12, 2; 53, 2-3 (2). Total, 6. B. II, 8, 5; 26, 1. III, 23, 2. IV, 12, 6; 15, 5; 29, 2; 35, 1. V, 1, 9; 6, 1; 9, 4; 15, 3. VI, 3, 4; 35, 10. VII, 27, 1; 35, 3; 39, 1; 57, 1; 58, 4; 58, 6; 63, 3; 88, 1 (2). Total, 22. C. II, 23, 4. III, 22, 3. IV, 13, 5 (2). VI, 10, 4. VII, 18, 1. Total, 6.

5. The descriptive pluperfect following a descriptive pluperfect and including the act but not the resulting situation. Example: VII, 11, 8, perpaucis desideratis quod pontis angustiae multitudinis fugam intercluserant; having failed to capture very few, because the narrowness of the bridge had put a check to the flight of so great a number.

B. II, 24, 2. VII, 11, 8. Total, 2.

6. The descriptive pluperfect following an aoristic pluperfect and including the time of that pluperfect but not of its principal verb. Example: I, 12, 5; hic pagus, cum domo exisset, L. Cassium interfecerat; this canton, when it had left its home, had killed L. Cassius.

A. II, 27, 5. Total, 1. B. I, 29, 3. V, 54, 2. VII, 9, 1. Total, 3. C. I, 12, 5. IV, 27, 5. V, 22, 2. VII, 20, 4. Total, 4.

7. The descriptive pluperfect following an imperfect in result. Example: V, 39, 2, accidit ut nonnulli milites, qui in silvas discessissent, interciperentur; it happened that several soldiers, who had gone off into the woods, were caught.

B. V, 43, 5. Total, 1. C. V, 39, 2. VI, 41, 2. Total, 2.

8. The descriptive pluperfect following a past future and including both the time of the principal verb and that of the future event. Example: I, 13, 7, ne committeret ut is locus ubi constitissent ex calamitate nomen caperet; he should not let the place on which they were standing (had taken their stand) become famous from a disaster.

B. I, 5, 1; 7, 5; 24, 3; 28, 4. III, 1, 2; 8, 4. IV, 6, 5; 22, 5. V, 2, 3; 5, 4; 8, 3; 10, 1; 25, 4. VI, 5, 2. Total 14. C. I, 13, 7. II, 14, 5. III, 4, 1. IV, 11, 2; 16, 3 V, 4, 3; 38, 2; 52, 6. VII, 72, 2. Total 9.

9. The descriptive pluperfect following a past future and including the time of its principal verb but not that of the future event. Example: IV, 11, 1, neque legatos audiendos arbitrabatur ab iis qui bellum intulissent; he thought that envoys from those who had made war were not to be listened to.

C. II, 31, 5. IV, 7, 4; 11, 1. VI, 32, 2; 43, 3. Total, 5.

II. The pluperfect describing a situation which both began and ended at the same time as the action of its principal verb.

1. The pluperfect following a summarizing aorist. Example: V, 54, 3, cum iussisset dicto audientes non fuerunt; when he had given orders they did not obey.

B. I, 26, 3. II, 11, 2. Total, 2. C. V, 54, 3. Total, 1.

2. The descriptive pluperfect following a descriptive imperfect. Example: III, 20, 1, cum in Aquitaniam pervenisset, diligentiam adhibendam intellegebat; when he had reached Aquitania he was conscious that care was needed.

A. I, 33, 5. II, 19, 3. III, 2, 2. IV, 17, 1. Total, 4. B. I, 9, 3; 16, 3; 18, 10; 48, 5. II, 18, 1. IV, 31, 1 (2) V 45, 2 (2); 48, 1; 50, 2. VI, 12, 6. VII, 46, 2; 61, 1. Total, 14. C. I, 32, 5. III, 20, 1. VII, 62, 4. Total, 3.

3. The descriptive pluperfect following a descriptive pluperfect. Example: I, 31, 10, sed peius Sequanis accidisse, quod in eorum finibus consedisset; but a worse fate had befallen the Sequani because he had settled in their country.

A. V, 9, 4; 11, 9. Total, 2. B. III, 2, 3. Total, 1. C. I, 14, 7; 31, 10 (2). II, 4, 4. VII, 54, 4. Total 5.

4. The descriptive pluperfect following a summarizing aoristic pluperfect. Example: VII, 5, 4, cum ad flumen venissent, paucos dies ibi morati domum revertuntur; when they had reached the river, after stopping a few days they returned home.

C. VII, 5, 4; 20, 6. Total, 2.

III. The pluperfect describing a situation which lasted up to the time of its principal verb.

1. The descriptive pluperfect following an aorist. Example: V, 26, 3, cum nostri arma cepissent hostes suos reduxerunt; when our men had rushed to arms the enemy retreated.

A. IV, 27, 3 (2). V, 25, 2. Total, 3. B. I, 25, 6; 54, 1. II, 24, 4. III, 20, 4. IV, 38, 3. V, 17, 5; 53, 2; 58, 7. VI, 31, 5; 40, 7. VII, 3, 1; 42, 5; 48, 49, 1; 62, 8; 68, 1; 71, 8; 80, 9; 81, 4. Total, 19. C. V, 26, 3 (3). Total, 3.

2. The descriptive pluperfect following a descriptive imperfect. Example: VII, 50, 3, Fabius quique una murum ascenderant praecipitabantur; Fabius and those who had climbed the wall with him were thrown down.

B. VII, 50, 3. Total, 1.

3. The descriptive pluperfect following a descriptive pluperfect. Example: III, 22, 4, cum ad arma concurrissent, repulsus tamen impetravit; when they had rushed to arms, he, though beaten back, yet obtained, etc.

A. III, 16, 2 (2). IV, 32, 4. Total, 3. B. VII, 46, 5. Total, 1. C. III, 22, 4 (2). V, 8, 6; 27; 2. Total, 4.

4. The descriptive pluperfect following an aoristic pluperfect. Example: II, 23, 3, profligatis Viromanduis, quibuscum erant congressi; having put to flight the Viromandui, whom they had encountered.

B. II, 23, 3. VII, 55, 5. Total, 2.

5. The descriptive pluperfect following an imperfect in result. Example: II, 27, 1, tanta commutatio est facta ut nostri, etiam qui procubuissent, proelium redintegrarent; such a change was effected that our men, even those who had fallen to the ground, renewed the battle.

C. II, 27, 1. Total, 1.

6. The descriptive pluperfect following a past future, its situation lasting up to the future event. Example: III, 8, 2, se obsides quos Crasso dedissent reciperaturos existimabant; they thought they should recover the hostages whom they had given to Crassus.

B. II, 20, 1. VII, 70, 5. Total, 2. C. III, 8, 2. Total, 1.

IV. The pluperfect describing a situation which began after the action or state of its principal verb began and stopped before it stopped.

1. The descriptive pluperfect following a descriptive imperfect. Example: II, 8, 2, is collis ubi castra posita erant patebat, etc.; the hill where the camp had been pitched stretched, etc.

A. II, 29, 3. Total, 1. B. II, 8, 2. Total, 1.
Totals for chapter, A, 79; B, 243; C, 150.

CHAPTER IV.

THE AORISTIC PLUPERFECT.

The aoristic pluperfect is divided into three large groups, according as the act is simply over and done with before the time of the principal verb, or is parallel with the action of that verb, or lasts up to the time of that verb. The last case may seem at first sight to be the same as the descriptive pluperfect which lasts up to the time of the principal verb; but this is not the case. "When they had built the wall the enemy destroyed it" is descriptive pluperfect, the result of the past act lasting up to the destruction; but "although he had been ill he recovered" is aoristic, the state not resulting from a past act.

I. The pluperfect of an act which simply preceded the act of its principal verb.

1. The aoristic pluperfect following an aorist. Example: I, 19, 4, simul commonefacit quae sint dicta; he told him what had been said.

A. I, 12, 5 (2). VI, 3, 5. VII. 39, 2. Total, 4. B. I, 3, 4 (2); 5, 4; 12, 6; 12, 7; 13, 2; 18, 2; 21, 3; 21, 4; 26, 1; 28, 1; 31, 1; 41, 4; 43, 9; 47, 2. II, 5, 4; 6, 4; 34. III 23, 5; 29, 3. IV, 4, 3; 12, 4; 36, 2; 37, 1. VI, 11, 7; 20, 1; 27, 1; 35, 6; 37, 4. VI, 4, 1; 8, 8; 9, 3; 9, 6 (2); 37, 1; 41, 1; 42, 3; 44, 2. VII, 4, 1 (2); 4, 4; 31, 4; 31, 5; 38, 4; 58, 2; 67, 7 (3); 78, 3; 81, 4. Total, 50. C. I, 19, 4 (2); 27, 2 (4); 41, 2; 43, 4; 46, 4 (3). IV, 15, 3; 25, 4; 23, 6; 26, 2 (2); 44, 4; 52, 3. VI, 37, 8. VII, 3, 3; 41, 2; 50, 4; 52, 1 (3); 53, 3; 54, 3. Total, 27.

2. The aoristic pluperfect following a descriptive imperfect. Example: I, 14, 1, eo gravius ferre quo minus merito accidissent; he was the more angry about it as it had been done without provocation.

B. II, 1, 3; 19, 1; 20, 3; 24, 1; 35, 3. IV, 12, 1; 38, 2. V, 25, 1. VI, 9, 2. VII, 24, 2; 30. 2; 53, 1. Total, 12. C. I, 14, 1 (2); 17, 6; 19, 1 (3); 20, 2; 22, 2; 23, 3; 40, 6; 40, 7 (2); 42, 1; 42, 2; 42, 6; 44, 6 (3); 45, 3. II, 4, 2. III, 28, 1. IV, 8, 2. V, 27, 2 (2); 28, 4; 33, 2 (2). VII, 32, 4; 52, 2; 52, 3; 62, 2. Total, 31.

3. The aoristic pluperfect following a descriptive pluperfect. Example: II, 4, 4, quod quantam quisque multitudinem in concilio pollicitus sit cognoverint; because they had learned how large a number each had promised in the council.

A. VII, 76. 1. Total, 1. B. I, 13, 2; 15, 3. II, 7, 1; 12, 5 (2); 25, 2; 33, 3. III, 2, 1; 6, 2. IV, 12, 1; 19, 4; 29, 2. V. 4, 2; 5, 2; 25, 2; 41, 2; 57, 2; 58, 1. VI, 1, 4; 38, 1; 39, 4. VII, 9, 4; 47, 1; 49, 3; 58, 5; 68, 3. Total, 26. C. I, 29, 1; 30, 2; 31, 7. II, 4, 4; 14, 3. VII, 20, 1 (4). Total, 9.

4. The aoristic pluperfect following an aoristic pluperfect. Example: I, 22, 4, cognovit Considium quod non vidisset renuntiasse; he learned that Considius had reported a thing he had not seen.

B. V, 2, 3; 5, 2; 8, 6; 20, 1 (2); 54, 2. Total, 6. C. I, 22, 4; 40, 6. IV, 27, 5. VI, 31, 5; 42, 1. Total, 5.

5. The aoristic pluperfect following an imperfect in result. Example: V, 53, 1, incredibili celeritate fama perpertur, ut cum post horam nonam pervenisset, ante mediam noctem clamor oreretur; the news was carried so swiftly that, although he had arrived after the ninth hour, an outcry was made before midnight.

B. IV, 28, 2. Total, 1. C. V, 53, 1. Total, 1.

6. The aoristic pluperfect following a past future and preceding the time of its principal verb. Example: I, 13, 5, quod improviso unum pagum adortus esset ne ipsos despiceret; because he had caught one canton off its guard he must not despise them.

B. I, 3, 4; 28, 3, (2); 47, 4. IV, 35, 1. VII, 12, 3. Total, 6. C. I, 13, 5; 31, 14; 33, 4; 35, 4; 40, 9; 43, 8; 44,5; 47, 1 (2). II, 32, 2. III, 3, 3; 20, 1 (2). IV, 13, 5; 22, 1. V, 7, 7. VI, 1, 2. VII, 1, 8; 17, 7; 38, 10; 47, 5; 53, 1. Total, 22.

II. The summarizing aoristic pluperfect of an act which both began and ended at the same time as the action of its principal verb.

1. The aoristic pluperfect following a descriptive imperfect. Example: VII, 83, 2, erat collis quem circumplecti non potuerant nostri; there was a hill which our men had not been able to enclose.

B. VII, 83, 2. Total, 1.

III. The summarizing aoristic pluperfect of an act which lasted up to the action of its principal verb.

1. The aoristic pluperfect following an aorist. Example: I, 26, 4, diu cum esset pugnatum castris potiti sunt; when they had fought for a long time they took the camp.

B. I, 17, 1. IV, 26, 5. Total, 2. C. I, 26, 4; 26, 5. III, 28, 3 IV, 3, 4. V, 4, 4; 23, 5. VI, 36, 1 (2). Totzl, 8.

2. The aoristic pluperfect following a descriptive imperfect. Example: I, 31, 8, unum se esse qui adduci non potuerit; he was the only one whom they had not been able to induce.

C. I, 31, 8; 36, 7; 43, 7 (2); 44, 4. VII, 20, 6, Total, 6.

3. The aoristic pluperfect following an imperfect of repeated action. Example: V, 33, 1, tum Titurius, qui nihil ante provi. disset, trepidare; then Titurius, who had made no preparations, kept running about.

C. V, 33, 1. Total, 1.

4. The aoristic pluperfect following a descriptive pluperfect. Example: III, 9, 3, legatos, quod nomen inviolatum semper fuisset, in vincla coniectos; they had thrown into chains envoys, a name which had always before been inviolate.

A. V, 11, 9. Total. 1. B. II, 26, 3. VII, 40, 1; 77, 1. Total, 3. C. III, 9, 3. V, 27, 2. Total, 2.

5. The aoristic pluperfect following an aoristic pluperfect. Example: I, 40, 8, Ariovistum, cum multos menses castris se tenuisset, vicisse; Ariovistus had conquered them after he had kept to his camp for many months.

C. I, 40, 8. Total, 1.

6. The aoristic pluperfect of an act lasting up to the future event of a past future. Example: VI, 7, 1, Labienum cum una legione quae in eorum finibus hiemaverat adoriri parabant; they were preparing to attack Labienus and the legion which had been wintering in their country.

B. VI, 7, 1. Total, 1.

7. The aoristic pluperfect of an act or state lasting up to the time of the principal verb of a past future. Example: VII, 33, 1, ne civitas quam semper aluisset ad vim descenderet; lest a state which he had always fostered should turn to violence.

B. VII, 59, 3; 64, 2. Total, 2. C. I, 14, 3 (2); 14, 6; 40, 13. VII, 14, 2; 33, 1 (2). Total, 7.

Total for the chapter, A, 6; B, 110; C, 120.

CHAPTER V.

THE PAST FUTURE AND FUTURE PERFECT.

While it is easy to distinguish in general the future and past future uses of the subjunctive from the other uses, a little examination shows that at least two or three varieties of future must be recognized in them; and it is not perfectly easy to make this subdivision. The classification here given is not entirely satisfactory

to me in detail, but a wider study of tense uses than can be made from Caesar or than I have yet been able to make in other authors is needed to settle all points; and the one given is sufficient for the purposes of this paper.

In the first place, it is to be noted that, as regards the original forces of the subjunctive, it is inaccurate to speak of the present as equivalent to the future indicative. The future indicative emphasizes the futurity of the act, simply stating that it will occur in the future, with very little regard to the present aspect of the case. The present periphrastic on the other hand emphasizes the presence of the expectation of a future act. The present subjunctive in all its original forces, with the possible exception of the anticipatory, is like the present periphrastic in tense force. Its original forces are all, or possibly only some of the following*:— let him go (volitive), he is likely to go (anticipatory), may he go (optative), he may go (potential), and he would go (ideal certainty). Probably in all of these the present originally expressed the present time of the feelings of will, expectation, etc., though the action of the verb lay in the future. The anticipatory subjunctive may at its very origin have been an exception, though in the great uncertainty which surrounds it one can not speak with much confidence. If, as seems probable, it is a pre-Latin development from the volitive, the process of development may have consisted just in this, that the present feeling of will died out and the emphasis shifted over to the futurity of the act. In that case the anticipatory subjunctive, as such, never did emphasize the present time of the feeling of expectation. However this may be, in classical Latin we find it always emphasizing the futurity of the act, while the other original forces retain the emphasis on the present quality of the feeling.

When any of these present subjunctives are thrown back into the past in the imperfect, this distinction in the tenses still holds in the main, and we have some constructions in which the imperfect signifies that a feeling of will, for example, lies in the past, the action willed being, of course, future to that time. This gives us a past future of one kind. In other constructions it emphasizes mainly the futurity of some act to a past point of reference. This gives us a past future of another kind.

In the same way the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive may be regarded as future perfect and future perfect to a past. Other

*This is the classification of meanings given by Professor Hale on pp 6 and 7 of The Anticipatory Subjunctive in Greek and Latin (University of Chicago Studies in Classical Philology, Vol. I, 1895, preprinted in 1894.

writers use them to some extent in the former kind of future meaning, but Caesar does so almost never. When he does, the meaning of the verb is such that the pluperfect is really an imperfect. Imperfects and pluperfects representing in indirect discourse original futures and future perfects are futures of the second kind.

There is still another kind of past future, but it is a spurious one. It is the result of making some fixed idiom, as indirect question, substantive result, etc., dependent on a past future.

In this chapter the division according to time meanings has resulted in a division very largely according to syntactical constructions.

I. Constructions in which the past feeling is emphasized.

1. Final clauses of all kinds (except *quin* and *quominus*, for which see IV) and dependent deliberative questions.

As there are no indicative constructions to be compared with these, it has not seemed necessary to subdivide them. And as they are so easy of recognition that there could hardly be a dispute about the individual examples I give only the total number, omitting the references.

Total, 498 imperfects and presents equivalent to imperfects; 1 perfect equivalent to a pluperfect.

2. The subjunctive in indirect discourse representing an original imperative.

I, 7, 5; 13, 4; 13, 5 (2); 13, 7; 42, 4; 47, 1 (2). IV, 7, 4 (2); 11, 3; 11, 5; 16, 6. V, 34, 1; 34, 4; 41, 8 (2). VII, 66, 4. Total, 18.

3. The potential characterizing clause. These clauses are commonly explained as final; but see *Cum-Constructions*, pp. 106–107 (120–121 of German edition). Example: I, 28, 3, domi nihil erat quo famem tolerarent; they had nothing at home which they could eat.

I, 28, 3. III, 16, 3 (2). IV, 38, 2. VI, 39, 2. Total, 5.

4. The subjunctive of ideal certainty in result clauses. Example: VII, 19, 3, ut, qui propinquitatem loci videret, existimaret; with the result that whoever should look at their mere proximity would think.

VII, 19, 3 (2). Total, 2.

II. Constructions in which the idea of futurity is emphasized.

1. Clauses with *dum* and *quoad*, "until", and *priusquam* and *potius quam*.

These clauses must be treated together, since the principle underlying their use of mood and tense is the same. They differ from

the *postquam* clauses in that the subordinate acts given in them are subsequent to the action of their principal clauses, while those of the *postquam* clauses are precedent. It is true that after negative principal clauses the relation between the two acts is really reversed; but none the less the thought of the writer is engaged with the condition of things in the order indicated above.

Since these clauses represent the subordinate act as subsequent to the principal act, it is obvious that the actor of the principal clause may be thought of as looking forward to the subordinate act and preparing for it, preventing it, etc., or not. If the act is looked forward to, the anticipatory subjunctive is used; if not, the indicative (See Hale's Anticipatory Subjunctive, pp. 68–73, 84–92). This distinction usually holds good for the past tenses; though there was an encroachment of the subjunctive, appearing mainly in later Latin. But in the future the future tense may be used, and in the present and future the present indicative is sometimes used, as it regularly is in English. Accordingly, some of the indirect discourse examples which follow may represent original presents and futures indicative.

a. The past future of an anticipated act before which the action of the main clause occurred or was expected to occur (*dum*, etc., not possible*). Example: I, 19, 3, priusquam quicquam conaretur Divitiacum vocari iubet; before taking any steps he ordered Divitiacus to be summoned.

I, 19, 3. II, 12, 1. III, 10, 3; 26, 3. IV, 4, 7; 14, 1; 21, 1. V, 27, 9; 56, 5. VI, 3, 2; 4, 1; 5, 5; 34, 7. VII, 1, 6; 9, 5; 17, 7; 36, 7; 71, 1; 78, 1. Total, 19.

b. The past future perfect in the same use.

II, 32, 1. VII, 56, 1. Total, 2.

c. The past future of an anticipated act up to which the action of the principal clause lasted or was expected to last (both *dum*, etc., and *priusqam* are used†). Example: I, 7, 5, ut spatium intercedere posset dum milites convenirent; that sufficient time might intervene, until the soldiers should arrive.

I, 7, 5; 11, 6. IV, 13, 2; 23, 4. Total, 4.

d. The past future perfect in the same use.

III, 18, 7. IV, 11,6; 12, 2. V, 24, 8; 58, 4. VII, 36, 1. Total, 6.

2. Subjunctives in indirect discourse representing original futures and future perfects indicative in conditions and relative clauses.

*There is no case in Caesar of the perfectly possible aorist indicative of a not anticipated act in this relation.

*For the aorist indicative of a not anticipated act in this relation see Chap. X, II, 2. For the aoristic pluperfect subjunctive in indirect discourse, representing such an aorist indicative, see Chap. IX, I, 2. For the present subjunctive of an anticipated act in the same relation see Chap. VIII, IV, 3

Some of these probably represent subjunctives of the less vivid type of condition, but they could not usually be distinguished.

a. The imperfect representing an original future. Example: I, 8, 2, quo facilius, si transire conarentur, prohibere possit; that he might stop them if they should try to cross.

I, 8, 2; 8, 3; 10, 2, 13, 3; 13, 4; 14, 6 (2);18, 9; 31, 4; 35, 4 (2); 36, 1; 36, 5; 36, 7; 40, 8; 40, 14; 42, 5; 44, 5 (2); 44, 8; 44, 11 (2); 44, 13. II, 6, 4; 8, 5; 9, 1; 9, 4; 17, 2; 31, 5. III, 1, 3; 2, 4 (2); 5, 2; 11, 2. IV, 7, 3; 8, 1; 11, 6; 13, 5; 16, 1; 19, 1; 20, 2. V, 3, 7; 5, 4; 7, 7 (2); 31, 2 (4); 46, 4; 48, 5; 50, 3 (2). VI, 33, 5; 34, 5; 34, 6. VII, 6, 3 (2); 9, 4; 10, 1 (2); 19, 2; 19, 3 (2); 19, 5; 28, 1; 32, 6; 33, 1; 36, 5; 56, 1; 66, 5 (3); 74, 1; 76, 5 (2); 78, 2 (2); 80, 1; 83, 5; 86, 2; 89, 2; 90, 2. In VII, 10, 1, videret stands for a future indicative in a causal quod clause, where a cum clause might have been expected. Total, 84.

b. Pluperfects representing original future perfects: Example: I, 13, 3, in eam partem ituros ubi Caesar constituisset; they would go wherever Caesar should have decided upon.

I, 13, 3 (2); 17, 4; 20, 4; 22, 3; 26, 6; 30, 3; 30, 5; 31, 2 (2); 31, 15; 33, 4; 35, 4; 36, 1 (2); 36, 5; 37, 4; 39, 7; 40, 4; 44, 12; 44, 13 (2); 50, 5. II, 5, 3 (2); 8, 4; 9, 5; 10, 4; 14, 5; 17, 2; 17, 4; 31, 3; 32, 1. III, 24, 3. IV, 6, 2; 11, 3; 17, 10; 20, 2 (3); 22, 1; 27, 1; 34, 5; 35, 1. V, 1, 8; 6, 6; 29, 1 (2); 34, 1; 40, 1; 41, 8; 47, 4; 56, 1; 58, 5. VI, 1, 3; 6, 3; 32, 2; 40, 2. VII, 5, 5; 17, 6; 20, 11; 21, 3; 27, 2; 34, 1; 39, 4; 44, 4; 49, 2; 60, 1; 61, 5; 66, 7; 71, 3; 71, 6; 85, 3 (2). Total, 74.

3. The anticipatory subjunctive in indirect questions (See Hale's Anticipatory Subjunctive in Greek and Latin, p, 34). Example: II, 9, 1, si nostri transirent hostes exspectabant; the enemy kept waiting to see if we would cross.

I, 8, 4. II, 9, 1. III, 24, 1. VI, 29, 4; 37, 4; 39, 2. VII, 20, 10; 32, 2; 36, 3; 55, 9; 89, 5. With some hesitation I include here VII, 14, 7 (2). Total, 13.

4. The volitive subjunctive in other dependent relations, equivalent in tense force to II, 2, of this chapter.

III, 9, 6. VII, 64, 3 (2). Total, 3.

III. The spurious past future.

1. Indirect questions. Example: I, 20, 6, custodes ponit ut quae agat scire possit; he set guards over him that he might know what he did.

I, 20, 6 (2); 47, 5. V, 8, 1. Total, 4.

2. Characterizing clauses. Example: V, 36, 2, sperare impetrari posse quod ad salutem pertineat; he hoped some terms could be secured which would secure safety.

V, 36, 2. VII, 29, 6. Total, 2.

3. Substantive result clauses. Example: I, 20, 4, futurum uti totius Galliae animi a se averterentur; the result would be that all Gaul would turn against him.

I, 4, 1; 10, 2; 20, 4; 31, 11 (2); 31, 14 (3); 42, 3. II, 17, 3. IV, 35, 1. VII, 32, 6. Total, 12.

IV. The past future in *quin* and *quominus* clauses.

I regret to confess that I neither know of an entirely satisfactory treatment or classification of these clauses nor can make one for myself. In this uncertainty I prefer to give all the *quin* and *quominus* clauses in two general groups rather than to attempt a further subdivision. I believe that the group here given includes examples of all three of the preceding larger subdivisions of this chapter. For the rest of these clauses see Chap. VI, 5.

I, 31, 7; 31, 15; 33, 4 (2); 47, 2. II, 2, 4 (2). III, 18, 4 (2); 23, 7; 24, 5. IV, 7, 3; 22, 4. V, 2, 2. VII, 38, 8; 44, 4; 49, 2; 66, 6. Total, 18.

Total for the chapter, C, 765.

CHAPTER VI.

SOME DEVELOPED SUBJUNCTIVE CONSTRUCTIONS.

In this chapter are given those subjunctive constructions which are derived from the future uses of the subjunctive, but in which the tense meanings are not equivalent to those of the corresponding tenses of the indicative.

1. The breakdown of the *priusquam* clause (See Hale's Anticipatory Subjunctive, p. 87)*.

In later Latin than Caesar's it is not unusual for a subjunctive to be used where an earlier writer would have used the indicative. This is an extension of the past future construction, and the tenses are retained. Caesar has one clear case of this, VII, 82, 4. Another in which it may be possible to see some anticipatory feeling is VI, 37, 2. Another which may be due to attraction is VI, 30, 2. Total, 3.

2. The independent question of propriety in indirect discourse. Example: I, 40, 2, cur quisquam iudicaret? Why should any one suppose.

I, 40, 2; 40, 4 (2). IV, 16, 4. VII, 37, 5. Total, 5.

3. Result clauses. Professor Hale's explanation of these clauses has already been referred to in Chap. II. I accept it in general though the exact parallelism between the clauses of result and characterizing clauses, which he assumes, can not be regarded as definitely proved, because the former appears fully developed in Plautus, while the latter does not.

The result clause is a peculiar idiom standing to a certain extent alone in its tense meanings. Our nearest approach to its true feel-

*The similar breakdown in the *dum* clause does appear in Caesar.

ing is "such, etc., as to"; it might therefore have been better to give all the examples by themselves. But in most cases the time meaning is found to be parallel with one or another of the subordinate indicative tense meanings, and those examples have been given already, appearing under most of the subdivisions of the preceding chapters. There remain to be given here those cases in which the imperfect has an aoristic force. If it depends upon an aorist or imperfect as in most of the following examples, it is equivalent in meaning to an aorist; if upon a pluperfect, it is sometimes equivalent to an aoristic pluperfect. Example: I, 39, 1, tantus timor exercitum occupavit ut mentes perturbaret; such fear siezed upon the army that it dismayed all.

I, 20, 5; 25, 4; 31, 4; 39, 1; 52, 3; 52, 5 (3). II, 11, 1; 19, 7; 27, 1; 35, 1. III, 4, 1; 19, 3 (2); 22, 3. IV, 12, 2; 28, 2 (3). V, 17, 2; 18, 5 (2); 23, 3–4 (3); 33, 6 (2); 39, 2; 40, 7; 43, 4 (3); 43, 5 (2); 44, 1–3 (2); 51, 3; 51, 4; 53, 1; 53, 7. VI, 12, 4 (5); 17, 5; 30, 2 (2); 37, 2; 38, 5 (2); 41, 2; 41, 3 (2); 43, 4 (2); 43, 5 (4). VII, 17, 5 (2); 24, 5 (4); 28, 6; 29, 4; 46, 5; 76, 1 (2). In I, 13, 2, the *transirent* clause is simply a timeless substantive. In the two following the perfect stands in indirect discourse for an original true perfect, not aorist. I, 11, 3. II, 3, 5. Total, 75.

4. Conditions contrary to fact.

a. The imperfect in present conditions contrary to fact.

I, 34, 2. V, 29, 2. VII, 77, 6; 77, 13. Total, 4.

b. The imperfect in conditions contrary to fact where a pluperfect would be expected.

VII, 46, 1. Total, 1.

c. The pluperfect in past conditions contrary to fact.

I, 14, 2. VII, 88, 6. Total, 2.

5. *Quin* and *quominus* clauses (See Chap. V, IV)*.

I, 3, 6; 17, 4. V, 53, 5; 55, 1 (4). VI, 39, 3. VII, 11, 8; 36, 4. Total, 10.
Total for the chapter, C, 100.

CHAPTER VII.

TENSES OF REPEATED ACTION DEPENDING ON SIMILAR TENSES.

In the examples here included a clause containing a tense of repeated action depends on another in such a way that each act of the subordinate verb is a condition, result, purpose, &c., of an act of the principal verb. They are thus quite different from the tenses of repeated action given in other chapters, where a series of acts is related to a single act, or is as a whole related to another series without each act's being related to a single one of the other

*The only other *quin* clause in Caesar will be found under Chap. VII.

series. Except in conditional clauses this relation is of little importance, and is hard to distinguish from the single act. Some that might have been put here have been left under the corresponding categories of single acts. The conditional sentences showing this relation are probably all here.

1. The imperfect of repeated action depending on the imperfect of repeated action. Example: VII, 17, 4, Cæsar cum singulas legiones appellaret, petebant, &c.; when Cæsar addressed the legions one by one, they would beg him, &c.

A. VII, 67, 4 (2). Total 2. B. I, 39, 6; 48, 6; 48, 7. II, 1, 4; 20, 4. III, 4, 2. V, 40, 6; 45, 1. VI, 12, 7; 19, 5. VII, 4, 3; 67, 4. Total 12. C. I, 14, 5; 17, 5; 32, 4; 50, 4. II, 20, 1; 27, 4. III, 13, 5 (2); 14, 7 IV, 7, 3; 17, 7. V, 33, 6; 35, 4. VI, 15, 1 (2). VII, 14, 6; 16, 2 (2); 16, 3 (2); 17, 4 (2); 73, 6. Total 23.

2. The imperfect of repeated action following a pluperfect of repeated action. Example: IV, 17, 4; haec cum defixerat ut secundum naturam fluminis procumberent; when he had set each pair in such a way that it sloped down-stream.

B. IV, 17, 6. VI, 34, 2. Total 2. C. IV, 17, 4. Total 1.

3. The pluperfect of repeated action following an imperfect of repeated action. Example: I, 25, 3; cum ferrum se inflexisset, non evellere poterant; when the point had bent they could not pull it out.

B. I, 48, 6. II, 11, 4. III, 4, 4; 12, 2; 14, 6 (2); 15, 1; 29, 1 IV, 17, 4 (2); 26, 1; 26, 2; 26, 4. V, 19, 1; 19, 2; 34, 2; 35, 1 (2); 35, 3 (3). VI, 43, 2. VII, 22, 2; 22, 4; 28, 6; 48, 2; 73, 4; 81, 6; 84, 2. Total 29. C. I, 25, 3; 31, 12. II, 14, 5; 27, 3. III, 12, 1; 13, 7 (2). V, 16, 2. Total 8.

4 The pluperfect of repeated action following a pluperfect of repeated action. Example: V, 35, 3; cum in eum locum unde erant egressi reverti coeperant; whenever they had begun to retreat to the place from which they had started.

B. II, 7, 3. V, 35, 3. Total 2.

5. The repeated past future following a repeated imperfect. Example: IV, 16, 1; cum videret Germanos tam facile impelli ut in Galliam venirent; since he saw that the Germans were so easily induced to enter Gaul.

C. IV, 16, 1. Total 1.

6. The past future perfect of repeated action following a past future of repeated action. Example: V, 34, 3; Pronuntiari iubet quam in partem Romani impetum fecerint cedant; he commanded that in whatever direction the Romans should advance, they should retire.

C. V, 34, 3. Total 1.

Total for the chapter, A, 2; B, 45; C, 34.

CHAPTER VIII.

PRESENTS, PERFECTS, AND FUTURES.

These tenses correspond for the present time-sphere to the imperfect and pluperfect in the past time-sphere. Accordingly it has not seemed necessary to give a special heading and example for each category. A reference is made in each case to the corresponding category for the past time-sphere, where the headings and examples will serve *mutatis mutandis* for the divisions of this chapter.

Though there is theoretically an aoristic present bearing the same relation to the descriptive present as the aorist bears to the imperfect, it is difficult, if not impossible, to classify the examples satisfactorily on this basis, and all presents have been called descriptive. The true perfect corresponds exactly to the descriptive pluperfect, aorist to the aoristic pluperfect, the present subjunctive in the future sense to the past future, &c.

I. The descriptive present and present of repeated action.

1. Cf. Chap. II, I, 3. A. VI, 35, 9 (2). Total 2. B. VI, 35. 8. VII, 77, 16. Total 2. C. V, 54, 5. VI, 11, 1. VII, 38, 7 (2). Total 4.

2. Cf. Chap. II, I, 6. C. IV, 5, 3 (2). Total 2.

3. Cf. Chap. II, I, 7. C. VI, 25, 4. Total 1.

4. Cf. Chap. II, I, 14. A. VI, 8, 3 (2). VII, 38, 3. Total 3. B. VII, 38, 8; 50, 6; 77, 3; 77, 4; 77, 11; 77, 16 (2). Total 7.

5. Like 4, but with present of repeated action: B. VI, 22, 3. Total 1.

6. Cf. Chap. II, 1, 17. A. VII, 50, 6. Total 1. B. IV, 25, 3. V, 30, 1. VII, 50, 4. Total 3.

7. Cf. Chap. II, II, 3. B. I, 1, 1; 1, 3 (3); 1, 7; 2, 3 (3); 4, 4; 10, 1; 12, 1; 16, 5; 38, 5 (2). III, 8, 1 (3); 21, 3. IV, 2, 6; 3, 3; 10, 1; 10, 3; 10, 5 (2); 20, 1. V, 11, 8; 12, 1; 13, 1; 13, 2 (2); 13, 3; 13, 5; 14, 1 (2). VI, 11, 3; 13, 1; 18, 3; 20, 1; 20, 2 (2); 24, 4-6 (3); 26, 1; 27, 1; 28, 1. VII, 20, 12 (2); 23, 5; 50, 6; 75, 4. Total 51. C. I, 12, 1 (2); 38, 5. IV, 1, 9; 2, 1; 14, 3. VI, 25, 4; 25, 5 (2); 35, 9 (2). Total, 11.

8. Cf. Chap. II, II, 4. B. I, 1, 3. IV, 2, 2. V, 14, 2. VI, 13, 10; 16, 3. VII, 23, 5. Total, 6.

9. Cf. Chap. II, II, 5. A. II, 6, 2 (2). VII, 23, 1-5 (8). Total, 10. B. I, 1, 3 (2); 1, 4; 16, 5. IV, 3, 3. V, 13, 1. VI, 18, 3; 21, 5 (2); 30, 5. VII, 23, 5. Total, 11. C. III, 22, 2 (3). IV, 5, 2 (4). VI, 11, 3. Total, 8.

10. Cf. Chap. II, II, 6. B. IV, 2, 2 (2). Total, 2.

11. Cf. Chap. II, II, 8. B. III, 8, 1. IV, 10, 1. V, 12, 2. Total, 3. C. VI, 14, 4. Total, 1.

12. The descriptive present extending from the time of a principal verb to that of the future event of a future. B. VI, 14, 4. VII, 5, 6. Total, 2.

II. The descriptive perfect.

1. Cf. Chap. III, I, 2. A. VI, 35, 9. VII, 38, 2 (2). Total, 3. B. VII, 38, 3. Total, 1.

2. Cf. Chap. III, I, 8. B. VII, 38, 8 (2); 77, 7; 77, 9. Total, 4.

3. Cf. Chap. III, II, 2. B. III, 8, 1 (2). IV, 3, 3. V, 12; 2 (4). VI, 11, 1; 26, 1. VII, 57, 1; 77, 10. Here probably belongs also IV, 10, 4. Total, 12. C. VI, 25, 4; 25, 5. Total, 2.

4. Like 3, but following a present of repeated action. C. IV, 33, 3. Total, 1.

5. The situation of a perfect lasting up to the future event of a future. B. VII, 50, 4; 77, 15 Total, 2.

III. The aorist following a tense of the present time-sphere.

1. Cf. Chap. IV, I. B. IV, 3, 3. VII, 77, 12. Total, 2. C. I, 4, 4. VI, 31, 1. VII, 5, 6. Total, 3.

2. Cf. Chap. IV, III. B. VI, 8, 3; 8, 4; 20, 2. Total, 3.

IV. Futures of all kinds.

1. Cf. Chap. V, I, 1. IV, 2, 1 (2); 33, 2. VI, 13, 7; 20, 1 (3); 22, 3 (6); 23, 4 (2); 28, 3. VII, 20, 8; 20, 12; 77, 5 (2). Total, 20.

2. Cf. Chap. V, I, 2. VI, 23, 7. Total, 1.

3. Cf. Chap. V, II, 1, *c*. VII, 23, 4. Total, 1.

4. Cf. Chap, V, II, 2, *a*. IV, 33, 2. V, 30, 3. VI, 22, 4. VII, 77, 8. Total, 4.

5. Cf. Chap. V, II, 2, *b*. B (The indicative may appear here, though it could not in the past). V, 30, 2. Total, 1. C. IV, 2, 1. VI, 17, 3; 20, 1. Total, 3.

V. Corresponding to Chap. VII.

1. Cf. Chap. VII, 1. B. III, 18, 6. IV, 2, 3; 5, 3. V, 33, 1. VI, 13,2; 13, 5; 13, 9 (2); 13, 10, 13, 11; 15, 1; 15, 2; 16, 2; 19, 4; 23, 4 (2); 23, 6; 23, 7. VII, 21, 1; 84, 5. Total, 20. C. III, 22, 2. IV, 2, 2. VI, 14, 4; 16, 3; 18, 2; 27, 4. VII, 23, 3 (3). Total, 9.

2. Cf. Chap. VII, 2. C VI, 18, 3. Total, 1.

3. The present of repeated action following a future of repeated action. C. IV, 5, 2. VI, 23, 7 Total, 2.

4. Cf. Chap. VII, 3. B. II, 6, 2 (2). IV, 1, 5; 2, 2; 33, 1. V, 14, 5 (2); 21, 3. VI, 13, 5 (2); 13, 6; 13, 7; 16, 2; 16, 5; 17, 3 (2); 18, 3; 19, 1; 19, 2; 19, 3 (2); 20, 3 (2); 21, 4; 22, 2 (2); 23, 7; 23, 8; 23, 9; 27, 2; 27, 4; 27, 5; 28, 2; 28, 3. I include the following though the form may be present. V, 56, 2. VI, 15, 1; 19, 3. VII, 3, 2. Total, 38. C. III, 22, 2. IV, 5, 2 (2). VI, 16, 5. Total, 4.

5. Cf. Chap. VII, 4. B. V, 21, 3. Total, 1. C. VI, 27, 4. Total, 1.

6. The perfect of repeated action following a future of repeated action. C. IV, 5, 2. Total, 1.

7. I am in dcubt as to whether VII, 11, 4, *faciat* is to be regarded as a "mixed" condition, in which case it is a sort of future; or as the so-called subjunctive of repeated action, in which case it belongs under 1. I incline toward the latter view, although this subjunctive is rare in Caesar, and rare in the present at all periods. Total, 1.

VI. Miscellaneous.

1. A present following a present in a "balancing clause" (See Chap. X, II, 7). B. III, 19, 7. Total, 1.

2. A present following a present in the relation of "coincidence" (See Chap. X, II, 4). B. I, 1, 4 (2). II, 17, 4. Total, 3.

3. A construction which I find difficulty in properly classifying, but which I prefer to call a "potential determination" is, C, V, 30, 2. Total, 1.

Totals for the chapter, A, 19; B, 176; C, 82.

CHAPTER IX.

THE REMAINING TENSES IN SEQUENCE.

In this chapter are given all the indicative and subjunctive tenses in sequence which have not been given under the previous chapters. It includes therefore a very miscellaneous assortment of examples. I give at the end a summing up of the results so far reached.

I. Tenses whose lack of logical sequence is disguised by indirect discourse.

So far as Caesar is concerned, I feel safe in saying that the flattening out of logical distinctions in indirect questions and indirect discourse consists in a mere disguise of the lack of sequence in the original language, the resulting tense being always used strictly in accordance with its proper meaning. It is true that *repraesentatio* occasionally retains the exceptional tense, and examples of this will be noted in the following chapter; but *repraesentatio* is so common that it takes a very close examination to show when the tense is the representative of a non-sequent tense, and it seems fair to speak of even those cases as disguised. Beyond a doubt, more than this disguising takes place in other authors in these constructions. A perfect after a present may, though seldom, represent an imperfect in an indirect question, and there is then a true flattening out of tense distinctions. But I find no instance of this or any similar phenomenon in the Gallic War.

The disguising of tense distinctions by indirect discourse is, however, common enough, and results from two causes. First, the tenses of the subjunctive, being fewer in number than those of the indicative which they have to represent, have more work to perform than in the direct form, and the distinctions of tense are not so readily seen. But since the resulting tenses are nevertheless used in strict accordance with their proper meanings, the examples do not fall under this head but under one or another of the preceding chapters.

Second, in direct discourse the tenses for the most part belong to the ordinary past, present, and future time-spheres, for which there is a fair, though not complete, complement of tenses. By indirect discourse they are thrown back a step, so that we have an ante-past time-sphere, if I may so speak, a past time-sphere, and a past future time-sphere. This ante-past time-sphere has already been spoken of in Chap. II, and it has been shown that the subjunctives not in indirect discourse occasionally suffer in clearness from the lack of tenses to represent it. It works more trouble in

indirect discourse, because every past of tbe direct form is thrown back into it, and this happens very frequently. It is true that as most tenses in the direct form are in sequence, so they are still logically as well as formally in sequence in the indirect. But wherever the direct form had a present depending on a past, the indirect imperfect is logically out of sequence with the perfect infinitive or pluperfect on which it depends, though formally in sequence. And wherever the direct form had an aorist depending on a past, the indirect pluperfect is logically out of sequence with the past infinitive or pluperfect on which it depends, though formally in sequence.

No sure instance of the disguised present following a past has been found. In the direct form this relation occurs almost entirely where the present states a general truth or describes something still existing. But an imperfect is used with equal frequency in these cases in direct discourse. Therefore it is impossible to say of any given indirect imperfect whether it represents an original present or an imperfect, though *repraesentatio* might help one to a few examples. All the examples under this heading are of aorists.

1. The pluperfect or perfect subjunctive for an aorist indicative with *postquam* (See Chap. X, II, 1).

I, 31, 5. IV, 19, 2. VI, 10, 4. With ut meaing "ever since," I, 31, 5. Total, 4.

2. The pluperfect subjunctive for an aorist indicative with *prinsquam* (See Chap. X, II, 2).

I, 43, 7. Total, 1.

3. The perfect subjunctive for an aorist indicative with *quam diu* in "congruence" (See Chap. X, II, 6).

I, 17, 6. Total, 1.

4. The pluperfect or perfect subjunctive for the aorist indicative in "coincidence (See Chap. X, II, 4).

I, 18, 10; 30, 2; 31, 12; 35, 2. V, 27, 3; 27, 4. VII, 20,3 (2); 52, 3. Total, 9.

5. The pluperfect or perfect subjunctive for the aorist indicative following an aorist (See Chap. X, III, 4).

I, 36, 3 (3); 40, 12; 44, 9. II, 4, 7. III, 28, 2. VI, 42, 2. VII, 29, 2; 41, 1. Total, 10.

6. The perfect subjunctive by *repraesentatio* for an aorist subjunctive in result (See Chap. X, I, 1).

VII, 37, 4. Total, 1.

7. The perfect subjunctive by *repraesentatio* for an aorist subjunctive in concessive clause (See Chap. X, I, 2).

VI, 25, 4. Total, 1.

8. The perfect subjunctive by *repraesentatio* for an aorist indicative in conclusions.

VII, 33, 3. Total, 1.

II. Idioms in which the subordinate clause is regularly of the same tense as the principal clause.

In these idioms, when the principal verb is an aorist the subordinate verb is out of sequence and will be given in Chap. X, II; but when it is any other tense, the subordinate clause is in sequence.

1. "Coincidence" (See Chap. X, II, 4).

a. The imperfect or present subjunctive in indirect discourse for a present indicative.

I, 36, 6; 40, 12; 44, 6; 44, 9; 44, 10. V, 27, 11 (2). Total, 7.

b. The perfect subjunctive in indirect discourse for an aorist indicative.

I, 17, 6. Total, 1.

c. The imperfect subjunctive where the relation seems to be that of coincidence, but the mood of the *cum* clause seems to disregard it (the indicative being regular in such clauses).

II, 29, 5 (2). V. 54, 1. Total, 3.

2. "Pseudo-coincidence" (See Chap. X, II, 5).

a. The imperfect indicative following an imperfect.

V, 19, 3; 57, 4. VI, 34, 7. VII, 16, 3. Total, 4.

b. The past future subjunctive following a past future.

I, 35; 4. III, 11, 5. IV, 21, 8. V, 1, 1; 7, 1; 11, 4. VII, 8, 3; 35, 5. Total, 8.

3. The imperfect indicative in "congruence" (See Chap. X, II, 6).

VII, 81, 2. Total, 1.

4. The past future subjunctive following a descriptive imperfect in a "balancing clause" (See Chap. X, II, 7).

I, 44, 8. Total, 1.

III. Clauses which are properly out of sequence, but by happening to depend on presents are formally in sequence.

Caesar's frequent "*ut dictum est*," etc., is probably a perfect; but whether perfect or aorist it is out of sequence with a past verb. Sometimes, however, it depends on a present and then is, so far as form goes, in sequence (See Chap. X, III 1).

I, 1, 5. III, 20, 1, V, 3, 1 VI, 25, 1; 29, 1. VII, 23, 2; 58, 3. Total, 7.

IV. True sequence feeling triumphing over an idiom.

As Caesar has no idioms in the subjunctive which regularly violate sequence, none but indicatives are found here; and they are all in the *postquam*, etc., aorist idiom (See Chap. X, II, 1). Few good cases occur even here. In VII, 87, 3, the imperfect appears with *postquam*, the meaning calling for that tense. The few imperfects and pluperfects with *ubi* are, I believe, all generalizing and have been classified in the appropriate subdivisions of Chap. VII.

A relative clause is used four times with a meaning exactly equivalent to this idiom; but as the form is not the same the tense yields to the idiom only twice (See Chapter X, II, 1, *d.*), and the other two examples use the natural tenses.

III, 23, 2. IV, 18, 1. Total, 3.

V. Formal sequence observed where the sense might lead one to expect an exception.

1. It may be mentioned here that in a number of cases, which have been classified elsewhere, the imperfect of such a verb as *dicere* has been used where the tense would strictly be appropriate only if such a verb as *existimare* had been used, and the aorist might have been more accurate since *dicere* was chosen. Examples: (Indicative) VII, 75, 5, numerum non compleverunt quod dicebant, etc.; they did not fill up their quota because they said, etc., (because, as they said, etc., or, because they felt, etc.). (Subjunctive) V, 6, 3, Partim quod timeret, partim quod diceret.

2. Instead of the "*ut dictum est*", etc., (See Chapter X, III, 1) which seems to give the appropriate tense meaning, Caesar occasionally uses a pluperfect. On this use of the tense see Blase, Geschichte des Plusquamperfekts, pp. 13 ff.

II, 1, 1; 24, 1; 28, 1. IV, 57, 2. Total, 4.

3. A few doubtful cases may be mentioned for the subjunctive.

I, 50, 4, cum quaereret quam ob rem Ariovistus proelio non decertaret; when he asked why Ariovistus did not fight. But this is equivalent to such "persistent" imperfects indicative as I, 15, 4, Caesar suos a proelio continebat; Caesar kept restraining his men. II, 27, 5, non ut deberet; so it ought not to be thought. A present would have been appropriate enough here. but the writer's thought is busy with the past time. V, 10, 2, qui nuntiarent naves in litore eiectas esse quod neque ancorae subsisterent; to report that the ships had been driven upon the shore because the anchors did not hold. But here the pluperfect would seem more appropriate than the possible aorist. Probably it represents a kind of imperfect of repeated action, "because the anchors kept giving." V, 11, 8, eo cum venisset maiores copiae convenerant; when he arrived greater forces had assembled. One might possibly expect a cum venit as in VI, 12, 1, (See Chap. X, II, 9.) but the common narrative clause is used instead. Total, 4.

VI. Tenses in sequence used peculiarly for others which would also have been in sequence.

1. The imperfect where a pluperfect would have seemed more natural.

B. The first three indicatives put here are all due to an expression of time in in the clause, as in the independent imperfect for aorist in VII, 24, 3, eodem tempore eruptio fiebat; at the same time a sally was made (was going on). VII, 44, 1; 48, 3; 59, 2; 69, 6. Total, 4. C. In the two following subjunctives I see no good reason for the imperfect. II, 23, 3. VII, 33, 3. In I, 50, 4; II, 4, 1; 15, 3, cum quaereret reperiebat, we have the common imperfect in verbs of asking. In I, 41, 5, septimo die, cum iter non intermitterent, certiora factus est, we might expect a pluperfect; but the feeling may be "he marched for seven days, not interrupting his advance." Total 6.

2. The pluperfect where an imperfect would have seemed more natural.

II, 6, 4, Iccius, qui tum praefuerat, mittit; Iccius, who was in command, sent. But the tum seems to point to the time of the preceding assault. Total, 1.

3. The imperfect where an imperfect periphrastic would have seemed more natural.

VII, 26, 2, Id sese effecturos sperabant, quod palus Romanos tardabat; was sure to hinder the Romans. Total, 1.

VII. Miscellaneous.

1. Subjunctive questions in indirect discourse (not questions of propriety).

I, 44, 8 (2); 47, 6. II, 30, 4. V, 29, 5. Total, 5.

2. Aoristic pluperfect indicative depending syntactically on a pluperfect, but temporally on the principal verb.

II, 33, 2. III, 3, 1; 16, 2. IV, 6, 2. V, 8, 6; 20, 1. Total, 6.

3. I cannot satisfy myself as to either mood or tense force of VII, 72, 4, Turres circumdedit quae distarent. The subjunctive may possibly be characterizing, or perhaps merely parallel with the preceding tardarent, almost attraction. Total, 1.

Total for the chapter, B, 31; C, 64.

SUMMARY OF RESULTS SO FAR OBTAINED.

We have now finished with all tenses which are in sequence, except those in coordinate relative clauses. We have found 940 dependent indicatives and 1861 subjunctives in sequence. There remain for consideration in the following chapter only the exceptions in both moods. Of these there will be found 282 dependent indicatives and 13 subjunctives. Many of these will be found to appear in certain well defined idioms; so that we may say at once that most of the tenses in both moods are in sequence, though the proportion of exceptions is very much greater in the indicative than in the subjunctive. There have been given also 371 independent

indicatives which can fairly be said to be in sequence. As I have made no count of the great number of independent indicatives which are out of sequence the exact number of those in sequence is of little consequence. I regard the examples themselves, however, as very important, by way of showing how the same feeling operates in independent sentences as in dependent clauses.

I hope I may be believed to have shown that all the examples of the subjunctive so far given are in sequence not because of any more mechanical flattening out of logical distinctions than is to be found in the indicative, but that almost all the tenses are used in strict conformity with the tense meanings as laid down in Chap. I, and that in the very small minority the subjunctive shows no more divergence than does the indicative. I therefore regard Professor Hale's main contention as fully proved. The few exceptions to be noted in the following chapter will only confirm the theory that the tenses of the subjunctive are fully expressive of time.

CHAPTER X.

EXCEPTIONS TO SEQUENCE.

I. Exceptions in the subjunctive.

1. In result clauses.

a. The aorist subjunctive instead of an imperfect. It has already been noticed (See Chap. VI, 3.) that the imperfect in result clauses often comes very near, or is exactly equivalent in tense force to, an aorist. The surprising thing is not that there are exceptions to sequence in this idiom, but that there are so few.

II, 21, 5. III, 15, 4. V. 15, 1 (2); 54, 4. VII, 17, 3, (note here the following *sustentarent* with equivalent tense force). Total, 6.

b. The imperfect following a true perfect.

IV, 1, 10, in eam se consuetudinem adduxerunt ut haberent et lavarentur; they have brought themselves to such a habit that they have, etc., and bathe, etc. Both sense and sequence here call for a present, but the habit of using an imperfect after a perfect form is too strong. The case is quite different in III, 22, 3, and VI, 17, 1; for although our translatlon for the principal verb of these sentences would be "have", they are not perfects but aorists, and the following imperfects are regular. Total, 2.

2. The aorist following an aorist in concessive *cum* clause,

I, 26, 2. Total, 1.

3. The past future following a true perfect.

VI, 11, 4. Total, 1.

4. The present of a general truth following a past in indirect question.

VI, 35, 2 (2). Total, 2.

5. The list of exceptions in the subjunctive might have been swelled by counting the cases in which *repraesentatio* in indirect discourse retains the exception. One in result and one in a concessive *cum* clause will be found under Chap IX, I. But *repraesentatio* is so common in indirect discourse that it seemed fair to speak of these cases as "disguised." Yet I give here one case of an aorist subjunctive attracted from an aorist indicative causal *quod* clause.

VI, 31, 1. Total, 1.
Total for the section, 13.*

II. Tense idioms which bring about exceptions in the indicative. A large number of indicatives will be found to fall under one or another of these fixed idioms.

1. The aorist with *postquam, simul atque, ubi.*

a. ·Following an aorist. It is worth noting how strong the preference seems to be for confining the use of this construction to this situation.

I, 5, 2; 7, 3; 8, 3; 24, 1; 27, 3; 28, 1; 43, 4; 46, 4; 49, 1; 50, 2. II, 5, 4; 8, 2; 9, 2; 19, 6; 25, 1; 31, 1. III, 14, 1; 14, 2; 15, 2; 18, 3; 18, 5; 21, 3; 23, 7; 23, 8. IV, 19, 4; 25, 1; 26, 5; 27, 1; 28, 1; 37, 4. V, 3, 3; 3, 5; 6, 4; 9, 1; 56, 1; 58, 3. VI, 8, 6; 9, 1; 29, 1. VII, 3, 1; 12, 1; 12, 5; 26, 4; 28, 2; 51, 3. Total, 45.

b. Following a perfect participle (Compare remark on 5).

I, 12, 2; 16, 5. II, 10, 4. IV, 12, 1. V, 32, 1. VII, 58, 2. Total, 6.

c. Following other past forms.

II, 30, 3. VII, 82, 1. Total, 2.

d. In a relative clause equivalent in meaning to a *postqnam* clause (See Chap. IX, IV.).

IV, 18, 4. V, 26, 1. Total, 2.

2. *Priusquam* with aorist indicative.

I, 53, 1. V, 17, 3-4 (2). VII, 25, 4; 47, 3. Total, 5.

3. *Dum* with the present indicative. This construction also is almost entirely confined to situations where it can follow an aorist.

a. Following an aorist.

I, 27, 4; 39, 1; 46, 1. III, 17, 1. IV, 22, 1; 32, 1; 34, 3. V, 22, 1; 35, 7; 37, 2; 44, 11. VI, 37, 1; 42, 1; 57, 1; 66, 1; 75, 1. Total, 16

b. Following a perfect participle (Compare remark on 5).

VII, 82, 3 (2). Total, 2.

c. Following other past forms.

VI, 7, 1. Total, 1.

---

*Heynacher (Sprachgebranch Caesar's im bellum Gallicum) finds 36 exceptions. The difference is due to the fact that he has counted in those retained by *repraesentatio* in indirect discourse, while I have not done so. See Chap. IX, I.

4. The aorist following an aorist in the relation of "coincidence." For cases in which "coincidence" brings about sequence see Chap. IX, II, 1. Some of the past future conditions in Chap. V, II, 2, also stand in this relation.

IV, 13, 4; 16, 1, V, 8, 4. VI, 30. 3. VII, 57, 3. Total, 5.

5. The aorist in "pseudo-coincidence". For lack of a better name I prefer to call by this one the relation of, for example, *potuit*, in such phrases as *quam maxime potuit*, to its principal verb. For cases in which "pseudo-coincidence" brings about sequence see Chap. IX, II, 2. In this relation the tenses agree so thoroughly that even a variation between historical present and aorist is not allowed. But in the five examples in which the clause depends on a perfect participle the aorist is used, a fact which may possibly make it seem that in classifying other clauses depending on perfect participles I ought to have regarded the participle as an aorist rather than as a pluperfect.

a. Following an aorist.

I, 7, 1; 7, 2. II, 33, 4. III, 9, 2; 9, 8. V, 39, 1; 39, 2; 49, 7; 58, 6. VII, 9, 3; 43, 4; 55, 8; 63, 2. Total, 13.

b. Following a perfect participle.

I, 37, 5. IV, 21, 9; 35, 3. VII, 68, 2; 74, 1. Total, 5.

6. The aorist following an aorist in the relation of "congruence".

II, 11, 6. IV, 12, 5. Total, 2.

7. The aorist following an aorist in a "balancing clause".

VI, 30, 2. Total, 1,

8. The aorist in a *cum-inversum* clause.

VI, 7, 2; 8, 1. VII, 26, 3 (2). Total, 4.

9. The aorist in a *cum* clause of date. A clause which brings in from outside the matter in hand some event by which to date it is naturally likely to use an aorist.

VI, 12, 1. Total 1.

Total for the section, 111.

III. Indicative exceptions not resulting from a fixed idiom. Of these 1, 2, 3, and some under 4, result from the necessary relations of thought, leaving very few—a part of those under 4—for which I can see no necessity, though in most of them the exception seems natural enough. They are divided here according to tense usage rather than syntactical construction, though a division according to the latter would have been serviceable too. The dependent constructions included here, and the number of examples of each, are as follows: Relative clauses, 148; causal and concessive with *quod*,

etc., and *etsi*, 19; substantive *quod*, 2; *quam* after comparatives, 2. The relative clauses may be further divided as follows: Non-essential (parenthetical and the like, including *ut* meaning as), 117; determinative (telling what person or thing is meant), 24; generalizing, 7.

1. The perfect where Caesar uses such expressions as *ut ante dictum est.* This group might not unreasonably have been put under II, since it comes very near to being a fixed idiom.

I, 16, 2; 49, 3. II, 1, 1; 9, 3; 18, 1; 22, 1; 29, 1. III, 5, 2; 10, 1; 15, 1; 26, 2. IV, 4, 1; 16, 2; 17, 1; 28, 1; 35, 1. V, 2, 2; 6, 1; 19, 1; 22, 1; 49, 2; 56, 3. VI, 2, 1; 8, 9; 34, 1; 35, 3; 38, 1; 40, 4. VII, 17, 1; 25, 1; 37, 1; 48, 1; 70, 1; 76, 1; 79, 2; 83, 8; 85, 4. There is one instance of a similar present, VI, 24, 2. Total, 38.

2. The present or perfect following a past tense. This combination of tenses is used with great freedom by Caesar in describing places or people, giving a still existing cause for a past act, the expression of general truths, etc. But in Latin even more than in English such things may be spoken of also as they were at the time of the narrative; that is, in imperfects and pluperfects. This happens as freely in independent sentences as in dependent, so that such imperfects and pluperfects are not to be regarded as due to the influence of sequence. For a reason that will appear later I have given in separate lists the presents and perfects which are used in clauses with causal or adversative meaning, whether expressed formally by *quod*, *etsi*, etc., or only implied in relative clauses. Of the verbs included in these latter lists, in the independent sentences 9 are with *nam*, etc.; 1, without; in the dependent sentences, 15 are with *quod*, etc.; 2, with *etsi*, and 12 are in non-essential relative clauses.

a. A present following a past.

A. Without causal or adversative meaning. I, 10, 5; 12, 1. III, 1, 5. V, 3, 1 (3); 11, 8; 18, 1; 21, 3; 56, 2 (2). VI, 32, 3 (2). VII, 57, 1; 58, 3. Total, 15. With causal or adversative meaning. II, 17, 4 (2); 30, 4. III, 19, 6. VII, 3, 2 (4). Total, 8.

B. Without causal or adversative meaning. I, 8, 1 (2); 10, 1; 10, 5; 16, 5; 27, 4; 28, 4; 38, 1; 54, 1. II, 3, 1; 4, 10; 5, 4; 34 (2). III, 1, 1; 1, 4; 9, 1; 11, 1; 13, 4; 20, 1; 20, 2; 22, 1; 22, 2; 23, 3. IV, 1, 1; 1, 10; 3, 3; 6, 4; 20, 3; 28, 2. V, 1, 2; 3, 4; 24, 4; 53, 6; 54, 2. VI, 7, 8; 10, 5; 24, 2 (2); 29, 4 (3); 30, 3; 31, 5; 32, 1; 33, 1; 33, 2; 33, 3; 35, 5. VII, 4, 6; 5, 4; 7, 5; 8, 2; 24, 4; 55, 4; 59, 5; 68, 1; 75, 4 (2). Total, 59. With causal or adversative meaning. I, 2, 3; 6, 2 (2); 38, 4. II, 24, 4. III, 8, 3; 12, 1; 18, 6; 21, 3. IV, 5, 1 (2); 20, 1. V, 33, 4; 39, 1. VI, 29, 1; 35, 6. VII, 2, 2; 3, 3; 22, 1; 22, 2 (2); 26, 4; 30, 3; 35, 2; 40, 7; 64, 4. Total, 26.

b. A perfect following a past.

A. Without causal or adversative meaning. V, 56, 2. Total, 1. With causal or adversative meaning. I, 12, 4. V, 33, 1. Total, 2.

B. Without causal or adversative meaning. III, 9, 9. IV, 24, 1; 29, 1. V, 1, 2; 7, 3. VI, 31, 3. VII, 21, 1; 42, 2. Total, 8. With causal or adversative meaning. I, 16, 2. III, 26, 4. VII, 75, 2. Total, 3.

3. Imperfects and pluperfects depending on presents. In each of these cases it will be found that the imperfect or pluperfect is necessarily used because really in relation with the time of the narrative, though its clause depends syntactically on a present.

I, 6, 2. V, 54, 5. VI, 32, 4. VII, 82, 3. Total, 4.

4. The aorist following a past tense.

a. Phrases like "as actually did happen", and "as he afterwards learned". Here the aorist is the only thing possible.

I, 22, 1. II, 17, 2; 32, 4, 33, 2. V, 8, 6; 58, 4. Total, 6.

b. The aorist following an aorist in a relation somewhat like that of "coincidence". Here the aorist is more natural than any other tense.

I, 28, 4; 51, 1. II, 21, 1. IV, 8, 1. V, 2, 3. VII, 8, 3. Total, 6.

c. The aorist following an aorist in a sort of a summarizing generalizing clause, instead of imperfect or pluperfect following an imperfect. Here the aorist is not unnatural.

II, 21, 6 (2); IV, 14, 4. VI, 31, 3. (Here *erant* would have given the entirely wrong meaning, "who happened to be at the time"). VII, 62, 9. Total, 5.

d. Aorist where an imperfect or pluperfect would for some special reason have given the wrong impression.

I, 29, 3. (I think imperfect of periphrastic would have been strictly right, but too definite; the pluperfect would have meant "after they reached home", which is probably not the thing intended). II, 29, 4. (Almost a coordinate relative). IV, 1, 1 (2). VII, 5, 6. Total, 5.

e. The aorist where I should have expected an imperfect or pluperfect. The aorist here is sometimes used with an apparent wish to give emphasis or point to a statement.

II, 35, 4. III, 16, 2. V, 44, 4; 54, 4. VI, 42, 3. VII, 12, 2; 28, 5 (2); 31, 1; 75, 1; 84, 4. Total, 11.

5. The present following an imperfect subjunctive in present conclusion contrary to fact.

A. VII, 77, 6. Total, 1.

Total for the section, A, 27; B, 171.

Total for the chapter, A, 27; B, 282; C, 13.

CHAPTER XI.

COORDINATE RELATIVE SENTENCES AND CLAUSES.

By the term "coordinate relative" I understand all the relatives that may fairly be said to perform the functions of coordinating conjunctions; in other words, all those which may fairly be translated by "and he", "but he", etc. This use of the relative appears most commonly at the beginning of what to us seem wholly independent sentences. That the Romans had not quite the same feeling about them is shown, as will be said presently, by their treatment of them in indirect discourse. But besides these apparently independent sentences there are coordinate relative clauses much more closely connected with a main clause. That these were subordinate, not coordinate, to Caesar's feeling, is shown by his treatment of them in indirect discourse. Nevertheless, these clauses do not give the situation of affairs, or subordinate ideas, but state coordinate facts; and the same tense is naturally to be expected as in the main clause, just as the same tense is commonly used in clauses connected by coordinating conjunctions. It has seemed fair to treat the apparently independent sentences as really independent, for the purposes of this paper. Accordingly those which contain imperfects and pluperfects have been included among independent sentences in the statistics given in the preceding chapters; and those which contain aorists have not been given at all. In this chapter I give merely the statistics for them, not the examples themselves. Of the more nearly subordinate clauses, those which contain imperfects and pluperfects in consequence of their depending on main clauses with their verbs in the same tenses might have been given in previous chapters, among other dependent verbs whose tenses are in sequence; and those which contain aorists might have been given in Chap. X among other exceptions to sequence. But I have preferred to reserve all for this chapter. At the end of the chapter will be found the complete statistics including the examples here given.

I. Apparently independent sentences. For these, as has been said, only the statistics are given.

Present or perfect following present or perfect, 13.
Present or perfect following a past tense, 5.
Present subjunctive following a future, 1.

Imperfect or pluperfect following a past tense, 1.
Imperfect or pluperfect following an imperfect or pluperfect, 30.
Imperfect or pluperfect following an aorist, 18.

Aorist following a present tense, 4.
Aorist following an imperfect or pluperfect, 16,
Aorist following an aorist, 101.
Aorist following imperfect subjunctive in unreal condition, 1.

Infinitive in indirect discourse, 11.
Subjunctive for imperative in indirect discourse, 1.
With this number of infinitives in relative clauses should be compared the examples given under II, 1.

II: Clauses.

1. Coordinate relative clauses in indirect discourse. It is not correct, so far as Caesar's practice is concerned, to say that such clauses regularly employ the infinitive.

a. It has already been noticed that in the apparently independent sentence Caesar has eleven instances of the use of the infinitive in indirect discourse. The following examples of the subjunctive in sentences which to my feeling are quite as independent show that Caesar felt them to be dependent clauses.

I, 20, 3. II, 31, 4. V, 29, 7. VII, 14, 10; 20, 5; 39, 4. Total, 6.

b. The following examples are to my feeling coordinate relative clauses, not independent sentences. Caesar has no example of an infinitive in such clauses, showing that to him they were subordinate, not coordinate.

I, 31, 10; 37, 3; 45, 2 (2). II, 14, 2. V, 21, 2; 26, 4; 53, 1. VII, 5, 5; 14, 7; 20, 7; 29, 4; 44, 3. Total, 14.

2. With present indicative. These are all in sequence.

I, 1, 1; 1, 3. IV, 1, 4; 2, 3. V, 13, 1. VI, 13, 1 (2); 13, 2; 13, 8; 16, 4. Total, 10.

3. With imperfect indicative. These are all in sequence.

I, 16, 3. II, 1, 4. Total, 2.

4. With aorist indicative. These are all out of sequence.

I, 53, 3. II, 15, 2; 31, 2. IV, 4, 1 (2); 7, 2. V, 1, 3; 48, 10. VII, 63, 7. Total, 9.

In giving the following complete statistics I do not include the figures given in I of the present chapter. Aside from them we have found 952 dependent indicatives and 1881 subjunctives in sequence, and 291 dependent indicatives and 13 subjunctives out of sequence.

CHAPTER XII.

THE PROOF OF A SEQUENCE FEELING.

I hope I have now shown that the tenses of the subjunctive and indicative alike are used in accordance with definite meanings of their own, both in sequence and out of it; and that the choice of tenses is determined by the meaning just as much in one mood as the other, barring a few idioms.

But this does not prove that there is no such thing as sequence. We have yet to consider the reasons for the great disproportion between the exceptions in the indicative and those in the subjunctive.

Leaving out the idioms, Professor Hale's explanation is that in the mass the indicative constructions are less closely connected in thought with the principal clauses than are the subjunctive ones. This is undeniably good so far as it goes. Though most of the indicative constructions are as closely connected as the subjunctive are, yet the indicative relative clauses are all of such a nature as to be suitable for bringing in statements disconnected with the narrative, and hence show many exceptions. We have already seen that most of the indicative exceptions which do not fall under one of the fixed idioms are in relative clauses. But if we can compare any constructions which are to be found with like meanings in indicative and subjunctive, and with no closer connection of thought in the one mood than the other; and if in the indicative we find a considerable number of exceptions, while there are few or none in the subjunctive; we shall then be forced to assume that some other influence is at work. Such a set of examples is given best in Caesar by the causal and adversative clauses. When Caesar wishes to express a past reason for or against a past act, he uses with apparent indifference the subjunctive with *cum* or indicatives with *quod*, etc., with relatives, or independently with or without *nam*,* etc. But Caesar is very fond of giving a still existing reason for a past act, and the verb which expresses the reason must of course be in the present. Now in every case of this kind Caesar uses one of the

*This point seems so certain that I have not thought it necessary to make an independent count of the clauses with *quod*, etc. and *cum*, but have availed myself of the statistics of Heynacher (Sprachgebrauch Caesar's im bellum Gallicum). He finds, of *quod* causal with the indicative, 136; of *quod* causal with the subjunctive of indirect discourse, 44; of *quoniam*, 16; of *etsi* and *tametsi* with the indicative, 23. In all 219; but this number includes the clauses which are out of sequence as well as those in sequence. Of *cum* causal with principal tenses he quotes Proksch as giving 18. With imperfect and pluperfect he says he once counted some 70, but has come to find but 20. Probably most counts would fall some where between the two limits, and if one counted, as would be fair for my purpose, all those in which there is any causal feeling, probably there would be found more than 70. Of *cum* concessive he finds 18 sure cases and some doubtful ones. In all, at the least possible calculation, 56; and including those fairly to be counted for my purpose, at least 106.

indicative constructions, avoiding the subjunctive (See Chap. X, III, 2). I can see no reason for this except that he had a feeling that the subjunctive tenses ought not to be used in connections which we call out of sequence.* It must be noted however that he has one aorist subjunctive exception (See Chap. X, I, 2) and another in indirect discourse (See Chap. IX, I, 7). It must be admitted that this number of examples in a single construction is not a large foundation on which to build a theory. But on them, supported by such statistics as I have been able to secure for these and other constructions in other authors, and further supported by theoretical considerations, I venture to offer a theory as fairly probable.

I believe that while there was no sequence feeling which could force a subjunctive tense to be used inconsistently with its true meaning, or could wrest those tenses from their true meanings except in few constructions, there was a feeling, existing for the subjunctive and not for the indicative, which made a failure in sequence seem strange in the subjunctive but not in the indicative. That consequently, whenever the relations of thought made an exception to sequence necessary, there was an unconscious tendency to avoid subjunctive constructions and use indicatives instead.

I believe that this feeling exerted an unconscious influence upon the whole form of many sentences, with the result that the non-sequent ideas were often thrown into indicative relative clauses rather than expressed, as they would otherwise have been, in some entirely different subjunctive constructions. But this is too delicate a matter to be reached by statistics. There are, however, a few constructions of the indicative which correspond so closely to those of the subjunctive that a comparison can be made with ease and, as I think, with decisive results.

Best of all, and for Caesar the only one, is the causal-adversative relation, which has already been discussed.

Something might be done with the expression of general truths in indirect questions. The single sentence in which Caesar has a

---

*It may be objected that there is strictly no such thing as a separate causal-adversative use of the subjunctive. That it is only a special case of the *cum* clause which is used to give the attendant circumstances. the situation. That it can therefore be used only to give the attendant circumstances or the situation resulting from a past act, and is not the natural construction to use when one wishes to bring in a cause, etc., from a different time-sphere. My reply would be two fold. In the first place, I believe this is largely true and for the origin of the clause I believe it is quite true. But this is only a particular instance of what I believe "sequence of tenses" is in all constructions. I believe *all* subjunctive constructions were fitted, at least at their origin, to express only such thought relations as were in sequence. But in the second place, the ground of the objection is wholly true only at the origin. For that the causal-adversative construction was differentiated from the temporal clause is shown by the fact that it spread into the primary tenses, while the temporal subjunctive did not. And Caesar's two instances of the use of the aorist in this construction suffice to show that he *could* use other tenses than the imperfect and pluperfect when he liked.

present depending on a past is of this kind (See Chap. X, I, 4). It has already been said that the imperfect in such expressions is not, in one sense, to be accounted for by sequence, for it is used in independent sentences as well as in dependent clauses. But I believe that, if enough examples were at hand to prove it, it would be found that the proportion of exceptional subjunctives is smaller than of exceptional indicatives; and in that case I should say that the sequence feeling had led to the choice of one tense out of two which were equally possible so far as meaning was concerned.

A result may be expressed by an *ut* or by an independent sentence with an illative conjunction. In an author fond of stating present results of past acts I should expect to find a larger proportion of exceptions in the independent sentences. Here, however, the sequence feeling has a greater resistance to overcome, since, to avoid an exception, it would be necessary to break up what should perhaps be a single sentence; and the results could not be expected to be as striking as in some other cases.

In some cases there would be a possible choice between a substantive result and a substantive *quod* clause, and I should expect some evidence from comparing these cases.

Something might result from the study of relative clauses, for a rhetorical determinative, for example, might occasionally be used instead of a characterizing clause. But this again is almost too delicate a matter for statistics.

Besides such proof by statistics, I believe a sure theoretical ground can be given for expecting to find such a sequence feeling in existence.

The original meanings of the subjunctive have been spoken of in Chapter V. From constructions with these meanings I assume that the constructions showing all the other meanings have been derived. I accept Professor Hale's explanation of the processes, so far as they have yet been given out; but it is of little consequence for my argument whether or not one accepts his theories in all details, provided one agrees with the main proposition.

The subjunctive originally expressed various feelings,—will, wish, "ideal certainty," etc. When used before the dependent stage these feelings must, in each instance of their expression, either have grown out of the situation spoken of and have been expressed by a tense of the same time-sphere (true parataxis), or else have expressed the speaker's present feelings, being a sort of digression from the matter in hand (true independence). From this true parataxis was developed hypotaxis, in which, so long as any con-

struction retains the original meaning of its mood, the tenses will almost or quite invariably be in sequence. Of course, *repraesentatio* may at any time cause the substitution of the tense that would have been used by the actor; but this is no more an exception to sequence than the historical present is. For example, a command or purpose would be felt as growing out of the situation spoken of, and would be in a tense of the same time-sphere as the verb of commanding, etc.: "he commands, he is to go;" "he commanded, he was to go," or by *repraesentatio* "he commaded, 'he is to go.'" And the consecutive idea must be similarly connected in thought with the situation: "he is so good as that he would help you" (in a time future to the present); "he was so good as that he was likely to help you" (in a time future to the past). The parenthetical purpose clause would, of course, show many exceptions, from its very nature, but I can hardly think of other such constructions. Consequently, whatever tense constructions are assumed to have existed before the derived meanings of the subjunctive sprang up were practically all in what we call sequence, and this could hardly fail to start a habit which would make itself felt as soon as the other meanings appeared.

But in the indicative clauses no such thing was to be expected. The indicative must from the start have been used to express facts from all times, and two facts from different time-spheres could and would easily be brought together in the relation, for example, of cause and effect; and these clauses could be connected by conjunctions and relatives. So while the subjunctive had, by the very nature of its meanings, to be in sequence, the indicative just as inevitably had many exceptions. The tenses of both moods were still used with entire freedom, but in one the conditions were favorable for the growth of a sequence feeling, in the other they were not.

If so much be admitted I do not see how the rest can be disputed. Certainly I do not see how one who agrees with Professor Hale's theory of the result clauses can consistently deny sequence elsewhere. This theory is that the past future subjunctive in such a sentence as "he was so good as that he would help" went nearly or quite over into such an aorist meaning as "that he did help", but that because the imperfect would be used in the original sentence the habit still remained in the developed construction*. What

*Professor Hale feels that this is too strong a statement of his position. His belief is rather that to a Roman the imperfect carried always much of the "such as to" idea, while the aorist means "so that he did". His treatment of the construction is given in A. J. P. VIII, pp. 49-53. I find there no quotable passage to bring out this point, though there are indications of it here and there.

is this but sequence? And, too, it is sequence acting under the hardest possible conditions, since it had to keep a tense form after the force had become nearly or quite equivalent to that of another tense. If this explanation of the origin of the use of the tense is possible (and I accept it) then surely it may be admitted that all along the line, wherever a developed construction arose, there must have been the habit at the start of using it only in sequence; and that, as nothing happened to break up this habit, it must have continued. For in no other case, except in the breakdown of the *priusquam*, etc , clause, where precisely the same thing happened, did the habit have so much pressure to resist; since only in those clauses, did the developed construction take on an aorist tense meaning.

The chief constructions in which this development appears are: From "ideal certainty",—clauses of result, characterizing clauses, causal and adversative clauses, and *cum* clauses; from the volitive,—the clauses of propriety and the concessive clauses with *ut*, *ne* or *quamvis*; from a yet uncertain source,—indirect questions and indirect discourse. Professor Hale's *Cum*-Constructions gives the process of development of all the first group from the subjunctive of "ideal certainty". In all of them except result and some characterizing clauses it will be seen that the act or state of the subordinate clause is regularly used to describe a situation, so that the imperfect and pluperfect simply take on the meanings of the corresponding indicative tenses instead of the aorist. However, having once taken on the meanings of the corresponding indicative tenses, there seems to me to be nothing to keep them from being used out of sequence except the habit already spoken of. So, too, the constructions derived from the volitive take on meanings equivalent to those of the descriptive indicative tenses, and seem to be held in sequence only by habit. Although the origin of the subjunctive in dependent questions and dependent clauses of the indirect discourse is still uncertain, at least there seems no reason for supposing that anything happened in their development which would interfere with the growth and persistence of the habit.

On the the other hand nothing happened in the growth of the indicative constructions to make a similar feeling arise for this mood. More than that, habit did settle down on certain nonsequence idioms in the indicative; for example, the aorist in *postquam*-clauses in contradistinction to the tenses of the stage in *cum*-clauses. These idioms must have had a tendency to check the rise of a sequence feeling if any had threatened.

To sum up then in the briefest possible form the results of this paper: I believe that in Caesar every tense of the subjunctive and indicative alike has its own meaning and is never wrested from that meaning by a rule of sequence. But I believe also that Caesar had a feeling of sequence that led him to avoid irregular uses of the subjunctive, and gave him a tendency to use an equivalent indicative construction if possible, or otherwise to recast the sentence. I believe further that other writers will show much the same preciseness of meaning in the tenses, and the same tendency to avoid irregular subjunctives.

THE RESULTS OF AN EXAMINATION OF OTHER AUTHORS.

I append a bare summary of the results of two carefully written and verified papers prepared at my suggestion as Master's theses in the University of Kansas. Both studies were intended to test the theory that where an exception to sequence was logically necessary and there was a choice between indicative and subjunctive constructions the Latin writer preferred the indicative.

Miss Mary E. Frost, in 1898, made an examination of the usage of Tacitus as shown in the *Annals*, I-VI, with the following results: In causal clauses and independent sentences with causal meaning, 235 indicatives in sequence, 74 out of sequence; 79 subjunctives in sequence, 3 out of sequence. In adversative clauses, 7 indicatives in sequence, 3 out of sequence; 49 subjunctives in sequence, 3 out of sequence. In result clauses and independent sentences with result meaning, 10 indicatives in sequence, 86 out of sequence; 42 subjunctives in sequence, 10 out of sequence.

Mr. Tenny Frank, in 1899, made a similar examination of the usage of Sallust (both the *Catiline* and the *Jugurthine War*), with the following results: In causal and adversative clauses and independent sentences of similar meanings, 107 indicatives in sequence, 22 out of sequence; 25 subjunctives in sequence, 0 out of sequence. In result clauses and independent sentences with result meaning, 3 indicatives in sequence, 22 out of sequence; 21 subjunctives in sequence, 0 out of sequence.

Mr. Frank furthermore, by the use of Merguet's "Lexikon," examined Cicero's usage in causal and adversative clauses as shown in the Verrine Orations, with the following results: In causal clauses, 84 indicatives in sequence, 24 out of sequence; 85 subjunctives in sequence, 1 out of sequence. In adversative clauses, 9 indicatives in sequence, 4 out of sequence; 22 subjunctives in sequence, 0 out of sequence.

Some Prehistoric Ruins in Scott County, Kansas.*

BY S. W. WILLISTON.

For the past fifteen years or more the existence of certain remarkable ruins in Scott county, Kansas, has been known to the people of the vicinity, and to certain others who have visited the locality, attracted by their fame. I first heard of them while engaged in geological work on the Smoky Hill valley in 1891, but found it then inconvenient to examine them, though my interest was much excited. While in the vicinity the past summer, I siezed the opportunity, in company with a friend, Mr. W. O. Bourne, of Scott City, to visit the immediate site of the ruins and make such brief examination of them as our time would permit. Since then, Mr. Bourne has very kindly made a number of inquiries of various persons who had examined these and other ruins in the vicinity, and has sent me his notes and correspondence. It is to be hoped that Mr. Bourne or others will continue the investigations, in the hope of reaching more certain conclusions concerning their origin.

The ruins, if they may be dignified by that name; are situated in the valley of Beaver creek (wrongly called Ladder Creek on the maps), in the northern part of Scott county, twelve miles due north from Scott City, and about ten miles south of the Smoky Hill river. At this place the valley of the creek, which here runs north, is less than a mile wide, surmounted on either side by high bluffs of Tertiary material. The immediate valley is excavated in the Cretaceous chalk. The result is that here, as elsewhere in western Kansas where like geological conditions obtain, that the underflow through the porous Tertiary sandstones over the impervious chalk floor comes abundantly into the valley, furnishing a considerable stream of water. Perhaps no stream in the western part of the state offers more favorable conditions for irrigation than does this in its lower part. In the driest years there is always an abundance of water in the stream, and the deep pools along its course are al-

*Paper read before the State Historical Society, January 17, 1899.

ways well supplied with fish. Nowhere have I ever taken as many in as short a space of time as I have from the pools in this same Beaver creek in years gone by. About a half mile above the site of our present ruins, the Tertiary underflow comes to the surface along the side of a hill in such perpetual abundance that it is utilized in the irrigation of a considerable tract of land. The place is widely known by the people in the vicinity as the "Big Springs."

These two facts—easy facilities for unfailing and extensive irrigation, and a fish and beaver producing, perpetually flowing stream —are undoubtedly explanatory of the ruins.

The ruins visited by us are situated near the middle of the valley, close to the stream, and away from any possibility of ambush by hostile savages. They occupy a small knoll of ground and consist of a low, rounded heap of soil and stone, perhaps seventy-five or a hundred feet in diameter, the soil wholly overgrown by buffalo grass. The rocks are the coarse sandstones furnished by the Tertiary outcrops of the surrounding hills. They are present in considerable abundance, but not sufficiently so to furnish material for a superstructure of the size that our dwelling certainly was. A small excavation has been made near the middle of this mound by previous explorers, perhaps two feet in depth. A brief continuation of this excavation disclosed to us the original floor of the dwelling covered with a darker humus of decayed organic matter, and containing numerous fragments of charred corn and corncobs. The original walls of the structure are standing only to the surface of the mound, and are lined throughout smoothly and evenly with "native plaster" two or three inches thick, such plaster as is now used in many of the sod houses of the plains. That the whole structure had been composed of sods, save probably the roof, is assumed from the large amount of disturbed earth in the whole mound. The extent of the mound, and the walls, so far as they have been traced, indicate that the original dwelling was about forty feet in extent in either direction. Other estimates much larger than this have been given, but I do not think the basis for such is wholly satisfactory. It had been divided into separate rooms, each lined with plaster. We found at least two rooms, but other explorers have given four or five as the real number. The full extent and shape of these rooms will only be definitely determined by considerable excavation. The rocks seem to be more abundant at one extremity of the edifice, from which I suspected that they had been used in the structure of a fire-place and chimney—this is a conjecture only.

So far as I can learn, no metal tools or implements of any character have been found either in the ruins themselves or in the vicinity. The only implement of any kind seen by me was one found in the immediate vicinity, consisting of a large shallow sandstone, into which fitted a smaller sandstone with a convex surface, the two undoubtedly used in grinding or pulverizing corn.

The most interesting fact, however, connected with the ruins is that the corn is not the modern white man's corn, but the primitive, aboriginal corn. Fragments of the cobs, as I found them, were not larger than one's finger, and had only a few rows of kernels upon them. The kernels were larger than those of popcorn, smaller than our field corn, with rounded surfaces, each individual kernel but little compressed by its mates. This corn is so very distinctly different from any now grown in the state, that it at once proves the antiquity of the structure. The corn, if not grown by the aboriginees, must have come from seed furnished by them. This corn is found in considerable abundance, quarts or even pecks of it may be obtained with a little labor. Fragments of charcoal are also found in the soil, which would lend credence to the theory that the building, while yet inhabited, had been destroyed by fire, the roof falling inward. This corn has also been reported from other places in the vicinity.

The corn evidently formed the staple food-product of the inhabitants, and I have no doubt whatever but that it had been grown in the immediate vicinity. A farmer living near by told us that he had discovered what he thought to be the remains of old irrigation ditches. This I could not corroborate myself, but I have not the slightest doubt but that irrigation had been practiced here in the growing of grain, for which the facilities could nowhere else be excelled.

Upon the whole these ruins remind one forcibly of a modern sod house, built by a thrifty settler and intended both for roomy convenience and for permanent habitation. A compact and warm structure built upon a slight mound in the immediate vicinity of a never failing stream within a half mile of voluminous springs of the coolest, purest water, in a region capable of easy and inexhaustible irrigation, what modern settler in that part of the state could ask for more? Fragments of buffalo and antelope bones also indicated that meat, as well as food and drink had been abundant and of the best quality.

The foregoing account is derived from our investigations. By the kind aid of Mr. Bourne, as already stated, other and exceedingly

interesting facts are here added to complete our present knowledge of these remarkable ruins. The following notes are by Mr. J. F. Moreau of Scott City, a gentlemen very much interested in the geology and science of the plains:

"I visited the ruins on Beaver Creek about March, 1898, and dug in them. I found a half ear of corn about four inches long, and also about eight inches of charred corn, resting upon the cemented floor. The building contained about four rooms, with thick walls at one time, I found pottery, quite a number of flint arrow heads, one quite small, about three-quarters of an inch in length made of agate and very perfect. I found also a good deal of colored pottery, and a half of a clam shell about two inches by four which had apparently been cut or sawed."

"In hunting for other ruins I found two stones, lying six feet feet apart, which would indicate a grave. In excavating we found the soil very hard, and at a depth of about eighteen inches discovered charcoal and burned sticks. These were on a small mound at some distance from the building described."

"Just south of Big Springs we found the ruins of another building, the west wall of which we thought to have been an old altar. This altar appears to have been cut from the rock while in its original position. At its base we found what was thought by Dr. Bond to be a part of a human femur, but the bones were so badly decayed that it was impossible to say just what they were. They seemed to have been partially burned. This building was apparently constructed in much the same way as the other. This building was nine by eleven feet in size, the walls about two feet thick, with one doorway. The stone at the end was eight feet high by five feet in width."

The following are extracts from a letter by Mr. L. R. Starr of Salina:

"All that I know of the ruins on the Beaver is what Harris Hathaway told me. He and Mr. Stromer while hunting antelope came across the ruins, and noticed that the prairie dogs had brought to the surface kernels of charred corn. I never heard of there being metallic instruments or tools found there. I do not know of any graves ever having been discovered there. Some one told me that Roack's folks had found beads and crosses there. South of the Big Springs, if one will dig down two or three feet, he will find charcoal and ashes, indicating a long time for that amount of soil to accumulate over them."

These last mentioned charcoal and ashes might have been made long before the building of the structures, inasmuch as the Springs

must have been used by the Indians for many years. A letter from Mr. G. W. Hathaway, a gentlemen living a few miles north on the Beaver, states that he first saw the ruins in January, 1882, and he thought that there were five rooms in them. He knows of nothing ever having been found in them except charred corn and pottery.

How old are these ruins? I have spent the larger part of six seasons on the plains of Kansas, since 1874. I have lately seen a sod structure that was abandoned in the sixties. I have seen many sod houses that have been abandoned for from ten to fifteen years. I have studied the effects of erosion on various materials in this part of the state. In consideration of all of the evidence thus presented to me I have not the slightest hesitation in saying that the structure I examined could not have been built within the past seventy-five years, and I do not think within the present century. The surface of the mound examined by us presents to the ordinary eye no evidence of structure. The partly disintegrated masses of stone, largely covered with buffalo grass, are out of place in the valley away from their outcrops, and must first have attracted attracted attention to the mound. It was the charred kernels of corn brought to the surface by the prairie dogs which first led to investigation of the ruins.

Who constructed these houses? The inhabitants of the vicinity have the theory that they were built by early Jesuits, and that here was the site of an early Jesuit mission. This would explain their origin admirably; the roomy well-built dwelling and a small chapel near by would have served the purposes of a mission well. Unfortunately, a gentleman well acquainted with these matters tells me that there is no history of any such mission in western Kansas, and, as it is well known, the Jesuits kept most faithful histories of all their early missions. Without such historical evidence the Jesuit theory must fall flat.

Was it the habitation of early trappers? I think not. The size of the building shows that it was the habitation of a considerable number of persons, and trappers and hunters of the early days were not gregarious. If the smaller building was really a chapel, it is, of course, quite evident that the persons who built it were not trappers or hunters.

Was it a colony of Pueblo Indians? I think not. A small number of the Pueblos would never have dared to venture on the grounds of their more warlike enemies.

I believe that the structure was made by white men, and that it was built at least as early as the beginning of the present century.

It may have been Coronado who was here, but that is a conjecture. If beads and crosses have certainly been found here, one need not hesitate in ascribing the structure to the early Spaniards, whoever they may have been.

Whoever it was who built these dwellings and lived here so long ago, it is, I think, very evident that here are the oldest sod houses of the plains, here the first place in Kansas where irrigational agriculture was practiced. I believe that thorough investigation will definitely decide who constructed the buildings. So far but very little has been done. I shall be very glad if this preliminary description of the ruins shall induce others to undertake more serious investigations.

Editorial Notes.

AMERICAN INDIANS; by Frederick Starr; pp. 227, illustrated; Boston, D. C. Heath & Co. "This book about American Indians is intended as a reading book for boys and girls in school. While intended for young people and written with them only in mind," it is hoped that it may interest older readers. Professor Starr's name is a sufficient guarantee that the information in this volume is reliable. Probably the numerous illustrations will hold the attention of young readers when the severely plain style and encyclopedic method might repel them. For older readers the bibliographical notes will be found useful.

THE SIR ROGER DE COVERLEY PAPERS. With introduction and notes by W. H. Hudson; pp. 208, illustrated; Boston, D. C. Heath & Co. A handy and helpful volume not only for students but for general readers as well. The Introduction contains brief and well written sketches of Steele, Addison and Budgell, and of the publication of the Tatler and the Spectator. The print is good, and the Notes contain the desirable information for making the reading intelligible.

AUS DEM JAHRHUNDERT DES GROSSEN KRIEGES. With introduction and notes by L. A. Rhodes; pp. 158; Boston, D. C. Heath & Co. No work of Gustav Freytag's needs commendation. The present one, though condensed, offers a particularly valuable preparation for the reading of "Wallenstein." Professor Rhoades contributes a proper quantity of carefully prepared notes.

BAUMBACHS WALDNOVELLEN; FROMMELS EINGESCHNEIT; STILLE WASSER (Erzæhlungen von Krane, Hofmann, Wildenbruch). With introductions, notes and vocabularies by Wilhelm Bernhardt; Boston, D. C. Heath & Co. These three small volumes are added to the list of publications by the industrious Professor Bernhardt. They are pleasant bits of good prose for second or third year sight-reading, or for still earlier use, perhaps, in the place of a reader. The new cloth binding which Heath & Co. are putting on their smaller volumes adds much to their attractiveness.

WILDENBRUCH'S LETZTE. With introduction and notes by F. G. G. Schmidt; Boston, D. C. Heath & Co. This is still another booklet of the same class as the last mentioned, but without vocabulary, which college instructors will regard as an advantage.

SECOND YEAR IN GERMAN; pp. 388; by T. Keller; The American Book Co., New York and Chicago. The plan of this volume, which aims to combine the study of German grammar with progress in knowledge of literature and ability in translation, is to introduce in each of its thirty lessons a short piece of good German, upon which are based observations on various topics of the grammar. At the same time conversational exercises are introduced, partly based on the selection read and partly independent. The result is a book fitted doubtless to the precise method of instruction pursued by the author, but which would contain much waste material for a teacher whose method differed much from that of the author. Yet an examination of it might prove suggestive to many teachers who would not use it with their classes.

MINNA VON BARNHELM. With introduction and notes by A. B. Nichols; pp. XXX, 163, illustrated; New York, Henry Holt & Co. The extensive use of this play in college classes warrants the existence of several good editions, and Mr. Nichols' will compare favorably with any. The form adopted by the publishers is a model of convenience and neatness, and the editor's work is judicious in quantity and commendable in quality. The half tone reproductions of Chadowiecki's illustrations add much to the attractiveness of the edition.

ROSEGGERS WALDSCHULMEISTER. With introduction and notes by Lawrence Fossler; pp. X, 158; New York, Henry Holt & Co.

LEANDERS TRÆUMEREIEN. With introduction, vocabulary and notes by Idelle B. Watson; pp. 151; New York, Henry Holt & Co. Professor Fossler introduces to the school world a new portion of the work of the charming Rosegger,—a bit of contemplative romance and nature-worship which will be found suitable for third year students, convenient either for sight-reading or for filling out an incomplete session's work.—Leanders Træumereien are too familiar to need comment. They may serve a similar purpose as the above volume for first or second year students. Both volumes are neatly bound in pasteboard.

GOETHES EGMONT. With introduction and notes by Max Winkler; pp. LI, 276.

KLEISTS PRINZ FRIEDRICH VON HOMBURG. With introduction and notes by J. S. Nollen; pp. LXXII, 172,

GRILLPARZERS SAPPHO. With introduction and notes by C. C. Ferrell; pp. XXXIII, 143.

GOETHE AND SCHILLER CORRESPONDENCE With introduction and notes by J. G. Robertson; pp. XLIX, 210.

ALTES UND NEUES; a German reader. With notes and vocabulary by K. Seeligmann; pp. 125.

DEUTSCHE GEDICHTE. With notes by H. Mueller; pp. 71.

GERMAN COMPOSITION. By W. Bernhardt; pp. 230. All the above, Boston and Chicago, Ginn and Co.

Professor Winkler has done a genuine service to the college study of German literature in the preparation of an edition of "Egmont," which leaves nothing essential to be desired. The introduction is a thoughtful appreciation of the work from the point of view of its author and his circumstances. The notes are full and helpful. It was a very good notion to append to the text Schiller's essay on "Egmont's Leben und Tod," and his criticism of Goethe's drama.

In publishing "Prinz Friedrich von Homburg" Professor Nollen has stepped outside the conventional lists of classic works for college classes. Instructors in German will be grateful for the undertaking, for though Kleist's drama cannot rank with the great works of the greatest writers, it is pleasant to have a variety to choose from. The editor has given, along with the customary study of composition and sources, a helpful sketch of Kleist and his literary achievements. The notes are of an unusual character in the space given to literary parallels, but are for all that good and useful.

Another deviation from the familiar schedule of standard plays is Professor Ferrell's edition of Grillparzer's "Sappho." It will to the average college reader constitute the introduction of an author generally known only by name, excepting through a few short pieces. The material given for the interpretation of the drama is ample.

A volume of the Goethe-Schiller correspondence carefully edited was certainly

a desideratum, and Dr. Robertson's work is all that could be desired. Aside from the usual notes on words and things, such features as the parallel chronologies of the two great authors will prove helpful.

Mr. Seeligmann's "Altes und Neues" is a handy little reader, containing a variety of good selections in the easiest German style. It will be a welcome substitute to vary the customary course. Mr. Mueller's "Deutsche Gedichte" is a companion volume to "Altes und Neues," presenting a good selection of thirty-four short poems, good for reading and memorizing.

Professor Bernhardt calls his book "A Course in German Composition, Conversation and Grammar Review." As might be inferred from this combination, it is constructed for the use of teachers who use the "Natural" method. The thirty-two lessons consist of prose selections, with grammatical comment and drill and suggested conversation and composition based upon the same.

French Lyrics. With an introduction and notes by A. G. Canfield; pp. XXII, 382; New York, Henry Holt & Co.

The University of Kansas is warranted in a feeling of especial pride in the handsome volume bearing the name of Professor Arthur Graves Canfield as editor. His colleagues could expect of him nothing else than the most accurate scholarship and refined and just taste. It is pleasing to be able to report here that the colleagues of his special department elsewhere have already conceded these and many other good qualities to this volume. The simplest and most summary judgment, from a high authority, is that "this is the best collection of French lyrics yet published."

Schillers Wilhelm Tell. With introduction and notes by W. H. Carruth; pp. LXXXII.

Lessings Nathan der Weise. With introduction and notes by G. O. Curme; pp. XLVII, 300.

Goethes Iphigenie auf Tauris. With introduction and notes by C. O. Eggert; pp. LXI, 180.

Goethes Egmont. With introduction and notes by Sylvester Primer; pp. LI, 174.

Freytags Die verlorene Handschrift. With introduction and notes by Katherine M. Hewett; pp. XLVIII, 223.

Goethes Hermann und Dorothea. With introduction and notes by J. T. Hatfield; pp LIV, 187.

Schillers Jungfrau von Orleans. With introduction and notes by Willard Humphreys; pp. XLV, 259.

New York and London, The MacMillan Company.

The putting upon the market within the space of a year of a series of German texts like the preceding, edited by leading instructors throughout the country, is an achievement which speaks not only for the enterprise and power of the great publishing house which has accomplished it, but also for the growing value and advanced standing of the study of modern languages in America. It is true, as more than one of the editors here represented confesses, that the Germans have already brought to light about everything there was to discover in connection with these classic works. What remained for American editors to do in most cases was to sift out too petty details in the history of the composition, to supply many necessary details in textual interpretation, and above all to give a just emphasis to the matter they had collected, so as to guide both teacher and student into the soundest appreciation of these great masterpieces. That there is a kind of symmetry in

the works of the series, and a rational proportion of the various commentative ingredients, is due to the genial yet prudent judgment of the editor-in-chief, Professor W. T. Hewett, of Cornell University. The publishers have left nothing undone on their part to make these text-books the equal of those in any line. They are printed on fine, heavy paper, tastily bound, and supplied with handsome half-tone illustrations and, wherever needed, with maps.

Space will not permit a detailed review of the separate volumes, but it will inform the inquirer to know that each volume contains, aside from the text, an account of the sources of the work, the historical basis, if any, the history of the composition, an estimate of its place in the product of the author and of his time, a discussion of the form, if in verse, copious notes, variants, a bibliography and an index. "Tell," "Nathan der Weise," and "Die verlorene Handschrift" contain biographical sketches of the authors.

There is scarcely ground for complaint that classic German texts have not been accessible in cheap and handy editions. The handsome volumes of the *Cotta Bibliothek der Weltlitteratur* at one mark (25 cents) are marvels. But the *Sammlung Gœschen*, (G. J. Gœschen'sche Verlag, Leipsic, Germany,) has certain advantages which especially commend it to those interested in the subjects included. The volumes are very tastily bound in flexible covers, and are of a size convenient for an overcoat, or even a sack coat, pocket. The publisher's price of 80 pfennigs makes it possible to deliver them in America at 25 cents, or even less in quantities.

Moreover, the *Sammlung Gœschen* includes many subjects not represented in other collections; among them are handbooks of various physical and mathematical sciences Within the field of philology the publishers have not limited their collection to reprints of literary masterpieces, but have wisely included the necessary apparatus for introduction to these works. So we have a volume of selections from Old High German literature, accompanied by a grammar and a translation into modern German, by Professor Schauffler, of the Gymnasium in Ulm. Professor Althof contributes to the series a new translation of *Das Waltharilied*, with an introduction and copious notes. The edition of the *Nibelungenlied* gives nearly the entire epic, and contains within the same covers a brief Middle High German grammar and a vocabulary, the editorial work of Prof. Wolfgang Golther. Another volume contains, along with the bulk of Walther von der Vogelweide's lyrics, selections from other Minnesingers, and a vocabulary; this volume is edited by Prof. Otto Guentter. The volume on the *Hofepos* contains Hartmann's *Der arme Heinrich*, Wolfram's *Parzival*, and Gottfried's *Tristan*, all three condensed, of course, the latter very greatly; here, too, a vocabulary is supplied, the work by Professor Marold, of Kœnigsberg. Dr. George Ellinger edits a very desirable selection of lyrics from the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, by named authors as well as those anonymous poems called *Volkslieder*, in which the German is so rich. The text has brief explanatory notes. Dr. O. Lyon undertakes to give a grammar of the German language in the space of 139 small pages, a condensation which inevitably necessitates the omission of much that the student would most desire. Yet the little volume may serve a useful purpose as a handbook for review. The *Deutsches Wœrterbuch*, by Dr. Detter, of Vienna, might prove a disappointmeot to those who bought it not knowing that it is merely an etymological dictionary. As such it seems to have been prepared with much care, and map serve a good turn when the "Kluge" is not handy.

It should be mentioned that the *Gœschen Sammlung* includes also editions of standard eighteenth century writers. The print and paper are very good.

A history of German literature for 20 cents, and a complete one at that, including authors of the last decade of this century, by Professor Max Koch, is a marvel combination of cheapness and excellence. The volume contains 284 pages.—Along with this go Professor F. Kauffmann's *Deutsche Mythologie*, 119 pages, Dr. Jiriczek's *Deutsche Heldensage*, 192 pages, Dr. R. Guenther's *Deutsche Kulturgeschichte*, 174 pages, Dr. F. Kurze's *Deutsche Geschichte im Mittelalter*. These together make a tolerable library of German literature and allied subjects. The student who travels with one of these always in his pocket and uses it in his spare moments may soon become well informed.—Dr. Borinski's *Deutsche Poetik* is broader than its title implies, containing in addition to a study of metrical form a discussion of the various forms of imaginative composition (Dichtung) —Another German subject is *Das Fremdwort im Deutschen*, by Dr. R. Kleinpaul It contains a large amount of interesting material, showing how foreign words have grown in German into their present forms.—Dr. M. Hoernes, of the University of Vienna, outlines *Die Urgeschichte der Menschheit* in 147 pages, aided by 48 creditable illustrations. Dr. Meringer, of the same institution, devotes 134 pages to an exposition of *Indogermanische Sprachwissenschaft*. Really the book is not simply theoretical, but is a brief comparative grammar, all the more intelligible for its brevity.—The account of *Rœmische Litteraturgeschichte*, by Hermann Joachim, is said by the "Staatsanzeiger" to be, "a brilliant intellectual performance."

